

# WEREWOLF

## STORYTELLERS HANDBOOK



A Storytelling and Chronicle Resource for Werewolf: The Apocalypse™





# LEGENDS OF THE GAROU

## Krieger Wyrmlife and the Death Bear

Arne Kleppens — or Wind-Never-Slows to his tribe — sits huddled under a threadbare blanket. His wolf's skin shuts out the cold, but only barely. Soon he will howl to his packmates and they will change places with the other Guardians, and then enjoy a mug of something warm. Arne smiles to himself — one of the Kinfolk brought in chocolate from Italy. That would warm him quite well.

He stands and shakes himself, throwing the blanket into the snow. He paces, trying to lumber his body. From the valley in the glacier behind him, he hears howls of approval — Brings-Life-to-the-Old-Tales has finished his story. Arne wonders what it was this time. Perhaps a retelling of the fall of the Thousand Oak Sept? No, too bleak. The winter has already been long and unpleasant. Maybe one of the bawdy tales of Micah Mule-Slayer, the famed Ragahash womanizer? Probably not: the Gair's Hammer Sept has visitors tonight, and they might not appreciate so risqué a story.

Arne marvels at the skill of the Moon Dancers. Brings-Life is a master storyteller, and younger Garou from septs all over Europe come to tell him stories and hear his advice on re-telling them. But he shares the limelight graciously, and more often and with the

sorrowful howls of the wolf-born Galliard Last Snow-fall, or with the frenzied violin of Dunya Monarch's Grace. Arne himself is a half-moon, and has no skill for such things. He merely sits and marvels, a weight lifted from his mind, for while a Galliard tells a story, he does not have to worry about truth or falsehood.

He steps forward and howls to the ice and moonlight. He hears four answering howls — his pack, the Ice Runners, coming to join him. From behind him he hears three brief, clipped howls ending in a short bark. On nights as cold as this one, the Guardians change places every hour or so in order to keep from freezing. Arne has heard stories of days past when the sept boasted no fewer than four packs of Guardians. Now his pack and a scattering of Eastern and Adren are the only Garou who take up the Warning Horn and wait in the snow.

Four wolves appear from the ice, and the pack trots towards the fire. Arne lifts his head and smells the hot chocolate waiting for them. The thick syrup of that scent contrasts with the clean bite of the ice and the chalky aroma of the fire. As they near the crude table, Arne sees that the stories have not ended for the night, and that one of the visiting Garou has decided to try her hand at tale-spinning. She does not seem to be well

received, however, and her audience appears restless and annoyed. Arne reaches the table and changes to his natural Homid form, pulling his recently-dedicated coat tightly around him. Lena, the Kiofolk woman who brought the chocolate, is already pouring four mugs of it for the Ice Runners (the pack's Ahroun does not indulge in sweets). Arne nudges Lena gently.

"What story is she telling, dien?"

She shakes her head. "I don't know. Something about a war and bears, about how the Garou committed some kind of great wrong against Gaia."

Arne nods. While his own knowledge of the War of Rage is sketchy, he has heard that a growing number of cubs feel that it was a mistake, especially with regards to the bear-changers — what were they called? Grizzlies! Gurrals! An angry growl from one of the sept's Ahroun answers the question.

"The Gurahl were tainted! That is why the war began!" The moot-fire is far enough away that Arne can't tell who says it or even what the reply is. He only hears more growls and sees a burly figure stand in defiance of the speaker. Such a breach of protocol will certainly merit punishment later, perhaps even a censure by Falcon, though Arne admits that the caern's totem doesn't seem as quick to enforce such rules as the stories portray. The booming, yet still calm voice of Brings-Life-to-the-Old-Tales ends the argument.

"You are both wrong," he says, and the wind dies down to hear him. Arne sips his chocolate quietly, straining to hear. "Yes, the Gurahl deserved their fate, but no, they were not tainted. Their story is one I am often called upon to tell to cubs who come seeking the truth behind the War of Rage." He pauses. Arne savors a mouthful of the thick drink, eyes closed, willing the old Galliard to tell the story. He expects that every Garou in the sept is thinking the same thing. "Shall I tell—"

The clamor drowns out the rest of the question. The Garou do not applaud, instead they howl and shout their approval. When Brings-Life-to-the-Old-Tales tells one story in a moot, the sept considers itself fortunate. If he tells two, they feel blessed.

Arne stands and wanders closer to the moot-fire, and sees the old storyteller take up his favorite seat — a rock that sits near the fire and is therefore nicely warmed. He takes on the Crinos form so as to wield the Garou tongue more precisely — some stories, he insists, can only be told properly in this language. He points to the visiting storyteller, nearly in tears of frustration at having her story cut short.

"Just listen, young Moon Dancer, and perhaps you will learn to tell your tale so as not to offend. For now, all of you be quiet and attend. I am not the young

Garou once I was, and my voice may not hold out in this chill." Arne smiles. The man's voice would carry through a blizzard. The Galliard arranges himself on the rock, pulls a chunk of wood from the fire, and scratches a glyph into it. Arne squints through the smoke and recognizes the "bear" glyph. He cocks his head in confusion, and then hears a nearby Garou hiss, "Gurahl!" He holds the charmed wood above his head for the sept to see, and his voice harmonizes with the wind and crackle of the fire. "Let me tell you a story."

• • •

The fire blazed skyward, and Krieger Wyrmlife saw the moon bathed in its light. Luna is *ouesh* in blood tonight, he thought, as am I. Then he lifted his head towards her and let out a howl of victory. He raised his arms towards the burning glade in triumph. In his right hand, he clutched a handful of teeth. In his left, he held the severed head of his foe. Tonight, and from now on, Krieger was immortal. Tonight, he had beaten the Death-Bear.

He strode away from the glade. His weary, bloodied body slowly slipped into its human skin. Krieger found he was limping slightly, the bear's teeth had nearly severed his left leg at the knee, but he was almost completely healed. The minor cuts and bruises over the rest of his body were already closing, but the scar that would form on his leg would win him glory. He would wear it with pride.

He opened his palm and stared down at the still-bloody teeth that lay there. He would string those teeth on a cord and wear them around his neck. Then he would always have the power of the Death-Bear close to him.

Somewhere above him, an owl shrieked. It startled him, and then he chuckled quietly. The battle, the true battle, had also begun with the screech of an owl.

It had happened when Krieger was but a Clith, a cub just starting out on the warrior's path, that his uncle and mentor died in battle. The great Ahroun's wounds appeared slight, but the bear's claws festered with a strange poison that caused the Garou's muscles to seize and his blood to grow cold even as he tore the beast in two. The poison also preserved the Garou's body in mockery of Gaia's cycle; he lay on the battlefield, unchanging, as though he might sit up at any moment.

How young Krieger had howled when he heard the news! It took four other Garou to restrain him, so great was his rage. As anger turned to grief, he stood by his mentor's body before the Gathering for the Departed and wailed to Luna the unfairness of it all, that the mighty warrior be taken by such an unworthy foe. As the sept left the grave, Krieger

heard a Ragabash mention in passing that it was a shame that no bear-changers lived nearby, as they knew the secret of death.

Krieger followed this Ragabash and asked him what he knew of the bear-changers. "Nothing," replied the no-moon, "except what I said. But even that is only a story. I have never met a Gurahl, and it is said they are solitary creatures."

"So who would know of them?" pressed Krieger.

The Ragabash only shrugged and padded off. Krieger sat down against a tree and thought, trying to remember the stories of the Moon Dancers. He wished now that he had listened during the stories, rather than always looking ahead to the revel. He knew he had heard tales of the Fera, but couldn't remember them clearly. He could ask a Galliard, he reasoned, but that would mean explaining what he meant to do.

At that moment, in the tree above him, an owl gave its lonely call, and Krieger thought of the bizarre wolves from the East, who spoke of a land barren and covered in white heat, who followed the night-hunting owl as their patron. These Garou must know something of death, Krieger realized, for their very totem was its harbinger. Though Krieger knew only slightly more of these Garou than he did of the Gurahl, they seemed his best chance for success.

"Very well," growled the young warrior. He stood and peered up into the darkness at the owl. "Hear this," he called to it, "my mentor died honorably in battle, but before his time, and this should not be! If it takes me my entire life, I will find these bear-changers, these Gurahl, and I will have the secret of death from them!" So swearing, he slashed his chest with his claws and flung several drops of blood at the owl. The owl took flight, startled, but now wore a red-brown splatter around its neck. It flew off into the night, and somewhere, great Owl noted Krieger's words and turned his attention back to other matters.

Krieger returned to the sept much changed. No longer was the young Ahroun brash and quick to fight. After the night of his mentor's funeral, he was attentive and thorough. He listened to the elders of the sept when they spoke of ancient lore and traditional wisdom. He sat at the Galliards' feet when they told stories by the moot-fire, and when the time came to join a pack, he declared himself alpha and none thought to challenge the canny warrior.

I could tell you, gathered friends, of Krieger's pack and their exploits. Surely, you have heard the story of their fight with the beast called Hgagogg, the slime-covered monster that flowed without form and caused all who saw it to go mad — all but Krieger's pack, bound together by their totem and their love of

Gara. Perhaps, at another moot, I shall sing the song that the pack's Galliard — called Wind-Carries-Her-Voice — composed on the eve of the pack's victory over the dragon Mazarak. And surely, no-one here today still recall the night when Stone-Softens earned his name, when the Ragabash talked the very rocks into moving for the pack.

But not tonight. Tonight's story is Krieger's and I mention these other tales only to show you what this pack was capable of. It was a pack composed of Silver Fangs, and it embodied their tribe perfectly: noble, honest, brave, and skillful. In fact, many Garou of the time — and many lore-keepers since, have found it strange that the pack chose not Falcon as their totem, but Owl.

But it isn't strange at all, truly, is it?

After years of glorious deeds, the pack had stopped adventuring. Instead, they chose to become leaders and teachers at various septs, and young Garou — much more populous in those days — challenged each other for the right to study under one of these renowned warriors. Krieger, himself, took on the role of sept leader, at the Sept of Morning's Kill, the very sept in which he had undergone his rite of passage, that same sept that held his mentor's remains. He saw to his duties as leader with the same life and skill with which he'd led his pack, but the other Garou of the sept noticed him take long walks in the forest surrounding the sept. When asked, he said only that he was searching, but would never say what he searched for.

Then came the night of a full moon, and the sept held its moot, told its stories, and danced its revel, as every month. But Krieger was distracted. The night before, he'd seen an owl, and even though many years had passed since his vow, the owl had a splatter of brown around its neck. He allowed a young Ahroun to perform the moot rite — as practice, he said — but all through the moot, Krieger was watching the trees, looking for the owl. During the revel, he saw it again.

The owl perched on a low-hanging branch and stared at Krieger, silently, almost sadly. Krieger reached out and touched the owl's feathers, and found, to his amazement, that the blood around its neck was still wet. "How is this?" he whispered, but the owl did not answer. It simply took to the air, flying like a dying whisper into the forest. And Krieger followed, the blood hot in his veins, his old vow fresh in his soul.

The sounds of the other Garou grew distant. The shadows grew deep and cold as Luna's light struggled to push its way past the leaves. And still the owl flew on.

Krieger glanced around and realized that, although he had grown up here as a cub, he had never been this far into the forest before. The brush here showed no

signs of being trampled, not by wolf, man, or any other beast. He heard no rustling from the forest, and could no longer hear his fellow Garou on their revel at all. And still the owl flew on.

Krieger paused to take the wolf's skin, and with the wolf's ears listened for his fellows. With the wolf's nose, he sniffed and found that no predator claimed these woods as territory. And then he ran to catch up to the owl again, for it had not stopped and it flew so silently that if he had not kept his eye on the bird, he surely would have lost it.

He scrambled up a tree to a sturdy branch and watched as his cloud-quiet guide perched on a neighboring limb. The owl regarded him blankly, its honey eyes watching him as though keeping him in place. And then Krieger heard rustlings above him. A slim, dark figure crept down the trunk of the tree and sat next to him.

Krieger sized up the intruder. His skin was mud-brown, his features strange and exaggerated. Even his hair, long and braided, was night-black. Krieger spoke to the foreigner, asking him his business, but the man only laughed and said something quietly, in an odd tongue that Krieger had never before heard. To his shock, he heard laughter from surrounding trees, and found himself out-numbered and cut off from aid, the dupe of an ambush after so many years as a warrior.

Krieger prepared himself to die and reached for his weapon, but the man stopped him, speaking in the Garou tongue. "No need, friend. Forgive us not introducing ourselves to your sept, but Owl told us that the bond we share should be kept to the quiet night. And so here we are."

It never occurred to Krieger to ask by what name these strange Garou were called. He learned only one name—Warning-Spans-Rivers—that of the Garou he spoke with. Now, of course, we know these Garou as the Silent Striders, the noble wanderers who grace us with news of far-off lands. When Krieger met them, they would not yet have suffered their exile—but that is not tonight's story. Krieger eagerly entreated the Garou to continue, to tell him what these foreign wolves knew of the Gurahl.

"The Gurahl?" asked the man. "Why, the bear-changers and my tribe know very little of each other. In fact, the only time we meet is when one of us dies, and—" a sudden shriek from the owl interrupted the man's speech.

"Yes," said Krieger, so eager to hear that he near fell from the tree, "that is what I wish to know. These Gurahl have power over death, I'm told, and—"

"Oh, no." Warning-Spans-Rivers shook his head vigorously. "No, no, brother. Nothing—nothing

holds such power. Death comes to all, call it by what name you choose. The Gurahl simply know how to fight the Death-Bear." Again, the owl called. Warning-Spans-Rivers looked up sharply, and then turned to Krieger. "I would rather thirst forever than that you had asked me this, friend Silver Fang, for I have already said more than is proper. I ask you—seek not to find the Gurahl to ask for resurrection. That is not what Gaia intended." And with that, he and his companions dropped to the ground and ran off.

Krieger was not one to take defeat easily. He knew he could not force the Garou to give up their secrets—not when he faced their entire pack—but he also knew that Warning-Spans-River knew more than he'd said. He did not follow the Garou that night, but the next morning summoned his pack. He told them very little, only that he had discovered a great force for Gaia that had previously been left untapped. If they could harness this force, he said, no Garou need ever fear death again.

The others were skeptical, but followed him. The trail of the strange Garou was cold, but no better tracker has ever walked the earth than White-Fire, the pack's Thourge. She questioned Krieger about what they were tracking, but he answered (somewhat truthfully) that he did not know. The pack pressed on, through the darkest parts of the forest, and then on across the plains.

I could tell you, my friends, of what befell them on their journey, but those are stories in themselves, and already the fire burns low. One important thing, however—throughout the journey, during which they traveled ever East, Krieger searched for the owl. He never saw nor heard the strange messenger. Krieger worried, but put it out of his mind. He would find his answers soon.

The air grew dry and the ground slowly changed to sand beneath the pack's paws. White-Fire used her fetish drum to call up water, and the pack feasted on serpents and lizards and whatever else they could find, and still they pressed on. The trail was even harder to follow here than in the forest, and the Garou were unused to the terrain, but Krieger urged them on, obsessed with finding the answers he had promised himself he would find.

Finally, Stone-Softens, lagging behind as he often did, called out to his pack. Some distance across the sand, they saw one of the strange, black Garou. Krieger recognized him as Warning-Spans-Rivers, and the pack charged.

Warning-Spans-Rivers waited until they arrived, and then greeted them respectfully, each by name. "And to what do we owe this honor, *rhats*?" he asked.

"Before," growled Krieger, ignoring the Garou's good manners, "you would not tell me of the Gurahl, though you clearly knew more than you said. I could not demand truth from you then, but now my pack is with me."

With a sigh, the desert wolf replied, "You wish to see a Gurahl? There is one nearby. Follow the smell of humans, but hide yourself well. And," he said, trotting away "remember what I told you about meddling with death."

Brushing off his pack's questions about the Garou's cryptic warning, Krieger led them towards a human settlement. It was a longer run than he'd guessed, and by the time they saw the human's tents and smelled their beasts, the sun had set and the moon rose high above the dunes.

White-Fire did not know how to track a Gurahl, since she had never seen or smelled one before. The pack spread out around the village, and waited. Krieger himself lurked near a tent, decorated and obviously meant for someone of importance.

As he watched, a man emerged from the tent and looked around, as though just awakening. He walked towards the edge of the camp, looking over the brush as though waiting. Krieger sniffed; something about the man was wrong. He was old; his hair — what little remained — was gray, but he walked upright and proud. Krieger was still puzzling over this when the

man stumbled forward. The harsh birdcalls of children's taunts echoed from the tents, and Krieger realized that one of them had hit the man with a stone.

The man turned, and spoke with a voice that carried such awful power that even Krieger shrank back. The taunts quieted, then began anew, loud, angry, even desperate. Krieger could see the children now, but could not count them. They stood among the tents, throwing jeers and stones. The man, for his part, didn't seem fazed or afraid, simply annoyed.

Krieger wondered if he should step in and stop this, but before he could decide, the man threw his hands to the sky as if in prayer. Instantly, the ground shifted, and a hideous, pained roar shook the night. What stood up from the ground, sand spilling off it like a robe of glass, was undoubtedly a Gurahl.

The beast stood higher than many of the trees in Krieger's home sept. The children stood, transfixed in fear, the beast's roar flooding their own insults and taunts back at them. The Gurahl's master — for hadn't he summoned up the bear from the sand where it slept? — stood on, smugly, as the beast's paw slashed downward.

By the time Krieger had recovered enough to give the anthem of war, the Gurahl's claws had done their work. Blind with rage, Krieger tore into the bear's flank, just as his packmates appeared from the night to join him. Krieger smelled children's blood from the



sand, Garou blood from the creature's claws as it slashed Stone-Softens' gut open, but something was missing. He released his grip on the bear and jumped back, barking for his pack to do likewise.

He had scarcely begun to give the order when one of the bear's paws swatted him, casually, as one might flick snow off one's shoulder. The mighty Silver Fang Ahroun found himself flung nearly a quarter mile, landing headfirst in a sand dune. Shaking himself, he raced back.

The fight had not gone well. Stone-Softens lay at the bear's feet, lifeless and disemboweled. White-Fire struggled to free herself from a tent, but her struggles were weak, and Krieger saw that her left arm had been torn from its socket. In sick horror, Krieger looked for his other packmates, desperately hoping they were alive and able to fight—or flee!—but then the lifeless corpse of Bryce the Just, the pack's Philodox and beta, landed at his feet. Bryce's body was cold, his skin white... and bloodless.

Recoiling, Krieger realized what had made him uneasy about the man and the Gurahl. When the stones struck the man's bald head, there had been no smell of blood, and likewise, only the taste of dead flesh had greeted Krieger when he bit into the bear.

Its maw stained with Bryce's blood, the Gurahl turned its attention to Krieger. He backed away, looking for a place to run or hide, and tripped over a body in the sand.

As the Gurahl bore down on him, he locked eyes with Wind-Carries-Her-Voice. The Galliard was badly wounded, perhaps dying, but reached out her hand to her alpha and leader and called upon a mighty Gift. Fueling it with the last of her life's blood, she whispered to him to speak of her well at the Gathering for the Departed. The bear charged, moving much too quickly for something so huge. It sank its teeth into Krieger's leg, just above the knee, nearly separating it from his body, but by then they were both engulfed in Luna's light. Krieger and the Gurahl both vanished from the desert...

...and appeared back at the Sept of Morning's Kill, both confused and angry. The beast looked about for her master, but saw only strange trees and the full moon high above. Krieger, though, did not waste time looking. He drew his klaive and howled the Warning of Wyrn's Approach, and leaped at the beast.

The Gurahl was assuredly much stronger than Krieger. Even as the other Garou of the sept arrived, it flung him into a tree so hard that the trunk splintered. And still Krieger fought on. He drove his klaive into the bear's stomach, howling the name of Stone-Softens, and laid the creature open. To his horror, not

blood or viscera came pouring out, but only foul air and black, vicious-looking worms. The beast hatted his klaive away and picked him up in a crushing embrace, but Krieger seized its head in his paws and called upon Falcon, squeezing until the bear's skull cracked. It dropped him and ran, and Krieger gave chase.

The other Garou of the sept watched, but could do no more—just as humans stand immobile or fall into fits when they see us, the noble Garou of the sept were terrified of the Gurahl so that they could not aid their leader, only try and keep up as he chased it into the forest.

Finally, the beast stopped, at bay in a thick glade, and turned to fight. But Krieger was no longer wounded and in mindless rage. He strode into the glade evenly, and the two opponents circled each other. But the bear was weakening. The wound in its stomach had not healed, and it stumbled as though confused. Krieger, however, never faltered once. The moon shone down on him, and just as the bear charged, Luna granted him a great Gift.

The bear hit him with enough force to crush this boulder on which I sit, but Krieger did not budge, for he had become Luna's very avenger, a warrior whose skin, claws, and fangs were made of pure silver. The Gurahl realized its mistake—too late!—and howled, perhaps for its master, perhaps merely in pain. No matter. Krieger tore through its flesh and burst through the monster's back, holding its testering heart.

The Gurahl gave one final lunge, and died.

Krieger looked at his sept, standing awed around him, and spoke. "Hear me, brothers. Tonight I have slain this beast, this Child-Slayer, who has killed my pack." The others growled and gasped at this news. "I must purify this creature's remains with fire, and I would mourn my pack alone. Leave me, but dig in a circle around this glen so that the fire does not spread to the caern." And the Garou ran off to carry out his orders, the Galliards already composing their songs about Krieger Wyrnfoe and his battle with the Child-Slayer.

Krieger did burn the creature's body. He kept the bear's teeth, as I said before, as a trophy. He took the bear's head and burned it at the Gathering for his fallen packmates. But there was something else he kept from that horror, of which he told no one.

After the Gathering, he stole to the Graves of the Hallowed Heroes. He found a grave marking that few of the young Garou at the sept would recognize, and began to dig.

In moments, the body of his mentor lay before him. The poison that killed him still kept him undecayed, and Krieger could barely smell death

upon him. He pulled his uncle's corpse from the sacred earth, opened its mouth, and squeezed the Gurahl's heart over it.

The last bit of blood from the heart of the Child-Slayer dripped into his mentor's mouth. Somewhere nearby, the owl screeched. But there was nothing Owl or his servants could do.

• • •

Brings-Life-to-the-Old-Tales paused. The night had become utterly silent. The wind hadn't gusted since he began. The listeners huddled together, some with lips quivering in rage. The Child of Gaia Galliard who had begun the tale of the Gurahl had tears on her cheeks. Arne stared at the fire, without a thought, only the picture in his mind of Krieger trying to raise his mentor from the grave.

"Sadly, Krieger's blasphemy was successful. His mentor did indeed walk again, but not for very long. You see, he — it — returned as a mockery of life, much like the Child-Slayer itself, and this time, Krieger had to sacrifice his life to destroy it.

"Krieger was buried alongside his pack, and the rest of the sept never knew the full story. Only Owl — and perhaps the Silent Striders — knew the truth. How I came to know is a story I'm afraid I must never tell.

"Krieger Wyrntoe thought that he fought the Death-Bear itself that night. He didn't. He fought a

dead creature, raised from its grave by powers beyond itself and enslaved by the man in the desert. It was a powerful foe, to be sure, but not really a Gurahl. Only what a Gurahl can become, for such is the fate of anyone, skin-changer or not, who attempts to reverse Gaia's cycle. The Gurahl were not tainted, but the sept of Morning's Kill did not know the full story. They attempted to find answers, but as Krieger had not told them of his pack's journey, they did not know where to look. They found Gurahl, and demanded answers, but the bear-changers had none to give them. The Garou thought they were lying, and besides, they knew what horrors the Gurahl could wreak. Thus began the War of Rage."

The old Galliard stirred the fire with his staff, sending sparks into the air. The Garou shifted — the revel was coming, and they knew it. Brings-Life stared at the fire, and spoke so softly that the assemblage leaned forward to hear him. "Sometimes," he whispered, "a story doesn't really end." He stepped off of the rock by the fire, and took his place with the other elders.

The silence was broken not by cries of approval, but by Bloody-Snow, the young Ahroun acting as Wyrn Foe, as he darted among the Garou, howling, snarling, and biting. The revel had begun. Arne looked at the elder Moon Dancer, afraid he might be offended by the lack of adulation, but he was not. It wasn't that kind of story, Arne decided.

# WEREWOLF<sup>TM</sup>

## STORYTELLERS HANDBOOK

WEREWOLF CREATED BY MARK REIN • HAGEN

## Credits

Authors: Bruce Baugh, Jackie Cassada, Lisa Clark Fleishman, Jeffrey C. Grabowski, Kyle Greenham, Larry Hickey, Heather Heckel, Shannon Hennessey, Robert B. MacIntosh, Matthew McFarland, Deena McKinley, Nicky Rea, Sean Riley and Adam Tanworth  
Werewolf and the World of Darkness created by Mark Rein-Hagen

Storyteller game system designed by Mark Rein-Hagen

Developer: Edmar Jakobs

Editor: Aaron E. Miles

Art Director: Aaron E. Miles

Art: Langoor Foss, Leif Jones, Steve Prescott, Jeff Kohnert, Alex Shikman & Isaac Mungold, Ron Spencer, Drew Tucker

Cover Art: Dan Brereton

Layout, Typesetting and Cover Design: Aaron E. Miles



735 PARK NORTH BLVD.

SUITE 128

CLARKSTON, GA 30021

JSA

GAME STUDIO

© 2002 White Wolf Publishing, Inc. All rights reserved. Reproduction without the written permission of the publisher is expressly forbidden, except for the purposes of reviews. All for playing character sheets, character sheets, and other personal use only. All the White Wolf Vampire, Werewolf, Mage, and other White Wolf Dark Ages, Mage the Ascension, Hunter the Reckoning and World of Darkness are registered trademarks of White Wolf Publishing, Inc. All rights reserved. Werewolf the Apocalypse, Wraith the Oblivion, Changeling the Dreaming, Werewolf the Wild West, Wraith the Great War, Werewolf Storytellers Handbook, Book of the Weaver, Book of the Wyrm, Book of the Wicked, Subsidiaries a Circle of Pentecost, and the White Wolf Publishing, Inc. Book of the Wyrm, Book of the Wicked, Subsidiaries a Circle of Pentecost, and the White Wolf Publishing, Inc. All rights reserved. All characters, names, places and text herein are copyrighted by White Wolf Publishing, Inc.

The mention of or reference to any company or product in these pages is not a challenge to the trademark or copyright concerned.

This book uses the supernatural for settings, characters and themes. All mystical and supernatural elements are fiction and intended to be used for entertainment purposes only. This book contains mature content. Reader discretion is advised.

For a free White Wolf catalog call 1-800-454-WOLF

Check out White Wolf online at

<http://www.white-wolf.com>, [alt.games.white-wolf.com](http://alt.games.white-wolf.com) and [rec.games.trp.storytel.com](http://rec.games.trp.storytel.com)

PHOTOGRAPHY: JSA

# WEREWOLF

## STORYTELLERS HANDBOOK

### *Contents*

<i>Legends of the Carou: Krieger Wyrmfœ and the Death Bear</i>	<i>1</i>
<i>Introduction</i>	<i>12</i>
<i>Chapter One: The World of the Carou</i>	<i>29</i>
<i>Chapter Two: The Battlefield</i>	<i>78</i>
<i>Chapter Three: The Chronicle</i>	<i>110</i>
<i>Chapter Four: The Adversaries</i>	<i>130</i>
<i>Chapter Five: Breaking the Mold</i>	<i>162</i>
<i>Chapter Six: Odds and Ends</i>	<i>204</i>



# Introduction

*(The art of the novel) happens because the storyteller has the experience of men and things, whatever he has found, not only what he has passed through himself but even events which he has only witnessed or has been told of — has moved him to an emotion so passionate that he can no longer keep it in his heart.*

Murasaki Shikibu, *The Tale of Genji*

Let's face it. You wouldn't be reading this book unless you had an interest in being a Storyteller and improving your game. Well, you've come to the right place, and players can benefit from reading it too. Though the book points out many of the things that Sellers should or could be doing to enhance play for a troupe, players can learn a few ways they can ensure the Storyteller's fun and help her do her job more easily as well. Ultimately, however, it's the Storyteller who makes our game a game, so we address it *first* to you.

The Storyteller has the hardest, yet often most rewarding, job in any troupe. It's similar to being the director and the entire technical crew as well as the supporting actors and extras on a movie set. Players, as the featured actors, can go wild in character creation and development and experience the pleasure of seeing those characters triumph despite overwhelming odds, go down in a noble death in a good cause. But Storytellers, real team players, portray everything that allows the players' characters to do that. Whether coming up with a high suspenseful moment or devising an intricate chronicle, the

Storyteller has to embrace the role of writer, set designer, and director to make her tale come alive for the players that experience it. Many become prop masters, lighting technicians, and sound engineers. They bring special touches to the game with everything from pictures of evocative items to an alarm clock set to ring twice during a tense mystery, signaling that time's up for those who must solve the puzzle or creating a mood with lighting and appropriate music or sound effects.

As if this weren't enough, the Storyteller must play the parts of significant allies and antagonists, important background characters, and even entire crowds (as the other members of the pack's sept). And in *Werewolf* this may require the flexibility to portray everything from a monstrous corporate CEO to a tiny, mischievous spirit.

Ask for this the job of acting as the interpreter for the rules and the arbitrator for disputes. Even the written rules leave room for interpretation and players are creative people who like a lot of license. Then, with

with rulings the Storyteller makes, and such rulings tend to cover things that dice rolls really should not determine. A reputation for being both fair and a good

can go a long way. But even that falls by the wayside if players feel their favorite character got the shaft. So let's add a dip-stick's credo to a Storyteller's: as a Storyteller, it is to take on

Even after the Storyteller uses meticulous planning and crafts a game to bring things to bear the action in a night's play or several intense sessions, the players may miss obvious clues, jump to the wrong conclusion,

just plain decide to go the other way. Such is the thrill of the game: such is the challenge. Good Storytellers can't incorporate the idea of ad-libbing, which can be as entertaining as acting in a live television broadcast when you don't know the lines or even what show you're on. They can adapt to the whims of the troupe and present them with something interesting to do even if it's so far off the planned encounter it takes the troupe into a completely new storyline. No one promised this game came with directions!

Some of the best, most entertaining sessions occur when players take an extreme wrong turn, a turn of position. Fiction writers often speak of their characters reaching from the writer's plans for the main going off on tangents. Why should Storytellers expect different? "You have a troupe of people who are the people to write the story as they go along? You have to be prepared to scrap what doesn't fit and grab onto ideas your players want to experience. If you can change things enough to fit in the player theories of what's really going on, they not only feel smart, but they figured it out, but think you're a genius for setting things up so well."

Still, with this incredibly demanding work laid on your doorstep, you might wonder what you get out of all this. After all, Storytellers don't get to be the heroes of their own stories; they have to play the villain, who often

is hated and hated. Don't get paid for all that hard work and don't even get experience points. What could possibly induce an otherwise sane person to do this?

Well, be it a reward or to see other people react to the stories you create.

For the person others turn to when questions about the game arise. And it's satisfying to know you've done a fantastic job bringing a whole cast of characters to life. But mostly, it's just plain fun. For the person who wants to be the creative force behind the ongoing game, Storytelling is worth every effort expended.

This book is designed with you in mind. We're here to help Storytellers hone their chops. We present up-ethers of ideas and advice, a few tips for novices, a sonar thoughts for veteran Storytellers seeking a new direction or looking back on the roots of the game. As

an art form, Storytelling is ever evolving, so this book doesn't include a set of heavy-handed rules. We want to help you improve your skills as a Storyteller, not dictate the one and only way it should be done. Troupes and Storytellers are individuals, each with their own style and preferences. So don't feel you have to take everything said as gospel. If something from the book works for you, great. Use it without blessings. If it isn't right for you, don't feel like you have to incorporate it just because we said so. You're the only one who can say what you really need. You're the director. You're the only one entitled to yell, "Cut!" when you capture the scene the way you want it. It's a game. Enjoy it.

## *The Most Important Aspect...*

So, your troupe has gathered to play a session of Werewolf. You've all set aside a certain amount of time to play and everyone anticipates having a good time. But why are you playing Werewolf and not some other game? Your troupe could be playing badass barbarians or mystical mages instead. They could portray space marines or alien warrior workers. If the players just wanted to kick out the jams with over-the-top combat, you could run a game of mega-kick robot mechs. But they're investing their time and energy in acting out the roles of beast-men instead.

Partly, your troupe comes to play your game because they know they can expect certain things from you, or they hope they can count on you, in the case of first timers. Your stories reflect your own personality, or your story as a Storyteller to some degree. Some Storytellers prefer straight-ahead, action-adventure while others specialize in convoluted mysteries; the characters must unwind. Many Storytellers rely on a stable of tried-and-true supporting personalities and excel at such portrayals. Others prefer to focus on the troupe and keep outside personnel to a minimum. In most good chronicles, whenever you run a game, your story unfolds around a few characters, with them as the central focus. Said, there are exceptions: games that enmesh the characters in situations that seem far too large for them to have any effect on, yet eventually prove to be vulnerable to their efforts.

Regardless of your style and the scope of your game, one thing is a most important factor in a

game: the dedication to preserving that which daily threatens to fall prey to the mounting toxins of modern life, a dying breed.

If the players are just portraying characters that are basically human with the occasional foray into berserk battle mode, they're missing the point. While Garou have both human and wolf sides, they're more than the

sum of those parts. It's part of your job as the Storyteller to help them find the place where wolf is a little different and the same time, you need to help them understand the wolf while maintaining the humanity that sets them apart from normal wolves. Most players have no trouble gleefully grabbing a handful of dice, snarling out a challenge or two, and whaling on the opposition with their dice. It's a little different from the Pubertal nature. But still, you.

Anyway, unless they are very sick or injured beyond endurance, wolves don't normally give in to rage. They fight for their food and to preserve themselves and the pack, but it's a state we Wolfers usually resist. Rage is a human emotion. The thing that distinguishes human hatred and fury from that of Garou is that the Garou possess the supernatural ability to become the embodiment of their rage by taking Crinos form and letting their anger override their saner selves for a time. In directing your character, you should try to focus on both aspects of the characters, sometimes calling the wolf to the fore, and other times seeking to bring forth the human. Never forget, however, that the characters are first and foremost Garou, and the blending together of the two aspects is what drives your stories.

### *The Most Important Rule*

Every book in the Storyteller System invites the Storyteller to change, modify, improve, omit or throw out any rule that doesn't work for her. Most Storytellers find at least a few rules they can't care for and some they feel need tweaking. That's fine with us. We encourage you to drink things through and make your game what you want it to be. Use our rules as a starting place, not the final word on the subject. Experiment. Play a game or two without any rules at all, allowing everyone to describe what they're doing and the options become they'd like to see arising from those actions. You may decide to discard some rules while adhering to others. We've generally found that some rules are needed simply to add dynamics in. Without rules at all, there is often a lack of conflict. But if it works for you, go for it.

The only rule we absolutely want you to follow is one that is fun, at least at times. Picture this. The game goes down into pagging through the book to find the exact wording for each rule. A hero player insists on knowing precisely how many pounds a werewolf in Crinos form can lift. You find yourself arguing about correct names for Geth or Fenris. Someone brings up the idea that werewolves need twenty miles of territory to be able to hunt and you respond that a fifteen-mile-wide wilderness area is so unrealistic. Unrealistic? Like nine-foot women populate the real world. When this happens, it's time to lock the book away for awhile. Go to a movie. Read a book. Take a

walk. Down the river. It is your fun and remember that this is a game. It is supposed to be an amusement. While some people might find it an awe-inspiring stimulation, some people find it a distinct turn-off. That's why we want you to remember the most important rule and the only one we really insist you follow.

#### *Have fun*

If you aren't having fun, something needs fixing. Feel free to tinker with things that aren't too straight. After all, we haven't been ordained to hand down gospel. We've found certain things that work for us that can pass a long, but in the end it's your game. It will be what you want. So long as you're having fun, we promise we won't come by your house looking for a Werewolf. Enjoy.

### *How to Use This Book*

This is a book primarily for Storytellers, who have the job of creating worlds, engineering stories and reconciling the rules and the characters with what has been created. Here we offer our advice gleaned from our own experiences and clarify a few things that may provide better insight into the world of the Garou. There may be a few secrets or surprises lurking within these pages, but there are certainly ideas for creating a better story. Use what you like. The intention is to provide you with the information you need to serve your story well.

**Chapter One: The World of the Garou** takes a look at the structural bones of the Garou and their culture, the becoming, Garou senses, Renown, spirituality, the Lunar rites and several other important aspects of Garou's defenders. It contains a form designed to help you convey the experience of life as a werewolf to your players, from the Garou's internal passions to the practices of their society.

**Chapter Two: The Banquet** deals with more immediate issues, the things to consider when bringing the world around the Garou to greater life. Topics include detailing the city and the wilderness, using human cultures and myths to greater effect, and roleplaying animals and spirits.

**Chapter Three: The Chronicle** continues enough concerns advice on bringing a chronicle from the moment you sit around the table to generate characters to the final dramatic climax that leaves everyone satisfied.

**Chapter Four: The Adversaries** details the enemy, explaining how to use antagonistic forces including the Thin People, Black Spira Danzlers and other dangerous opponents to best effect.

**Chapter Five: Breaking the Mold** is a guideline to deviating from the usual Werewolf game in various ways, whether exploring historical settings, novel

Apocalypse chronicles, aternate takes on werewolves, and a collection of crossovers.

Finally, **Chapter Six: Odds and Ends** contains a few more laneous elements to help you run a Werewolf game, from a look at the Kanu—the incarnate “tomor” of Gaea—to an expanded listing of potential sources of inspiration for the game.

## *How the Game Is Played*

Now that we’ve reiterated the idea that the game is what you make of it, we do need to say a few words concerning the particular themes to be found in Werewolf and how you can learn to handle an ongoing chronicle. We’ve identified certain themes that occur again and again, and these may help you by pinpointing things you need to consider in your own games.

Beyond finding common themes, however, the most important thing you can learn about running any game is to find out what your players want. Even if you follow every suggestion we make, use every possible enhancement presented here and plan your game meticulously, unless the players are having fun, the game will fail. Naturally, trying to devise a game that doesn’t also interest you stifles it. If your heart’s not in it, you can’t run it good, and, especially over the long haul, so how do you pick up yourself and keep the rest of the troupe interested? Ask your players what they’d like.

run. What do they enjoy? What frustrates them and makes the game less enjoyable? What would they like for their characters to accomplish? If you’re thinking “roving trouble” this time, and they’re prone to “becoming the head of the sept,” someone’s not going to be happy. These two aren’t necessarily exclusive, but you’d have to make it clear that their work as toadshooters will pay off with a jump in status that will lead to becoming movers and shakers in the sept. You might also talk to them about what you want to do as a storyteller. Let them know what it is you expect from them and the kinds of stories you’d like to tell. Knowing what each side wants will help you

run stories to please everyone. Letting them help you create the stories you all want will make your job that much easier. Of course, themes aren’t the only measurement of what players want. If you have a couple of players who like high-water combat combatants, some who prefer deep personal discussions or the sneaky approach, and a couple who like to explore the Gifts and rites, you need to provide opportunities for all of them to experience the kind of game they prefer. If you open your game to include all these elements, you can always let the ones who aren’t interested in certain parts go “offstage” to do something else while you run things for the others. Of course, players who actively partcipate in all of it would naturally get more experience. Then again, if you can make it all appealing through creative description,

interactions and throw in a few twists to the usual way such things go, you just might win the reluctant participants to like the parts they thought they wouldn’t.

As long as you give them what they want, they’ll even forgive you for setbacks and disappointments and use it to become stronger characters rather than complaining when everything doesn’t initially go their way. In fact, this may be one of the few games you’ll ever run in which the characters already know they are, in all likelihood, doomed from the start. After all, no one can really expect the game of savage horror to serve up light twiggy fluff. The enemies aren’t at the game, they’re already mask and ravaging as they go. The defenders are too few and expect to go down fighting. Will their sacrifice be enough to save the world? That’s part of the horror—and the appeal they won’t ever know, or sure.

## *Major Themes*

Certain themes come with the territory when you decide to run a Werewolf game. Listed below are two of the most obvious and two that may not be so apparent initially. All of them do interweave with various elements in defining what the game is all about. If you’ve been playing Werewolf for a while, you’ve undoubtedly touched on one or more of these, but I hear repeating, if only to remind you of the roots you can return to for inspiration again and again. Of course, you don’t have to use a hammer to drive the point home. Subtly inserting us a hint of these is usually most effective and ties your chronicle together even when stories seem independent of one another. You will find many other themes within your stories as well, so don’t take this list to say what to include or exclude in a chronicle.

### • Warriors Doomed to Eternal Struggle

The most obvious theme surrounds what the Carouate are and what they consider themselves to be. Whether they call themselves warriors or defenders, the Carouate embody Gaea’s need to fight for survival. Forever at war with the forces tearing Gaea’s creation apart, the Carouate can never win their fight. And they know it. Eminently suited for battle, even the Carouate’s supernatural Rage cannot fully defeat their enemies. For those enemies are so numerous it’s almost pointless to oppose them. Time and again, the Carouate throw themselves into the fray, expending their best and brightest in stopgap measures that cannot coalesce into a resounding victory. The Wyrms slither onward, gaining ever more allies and powers, causing such corruption and destruction that ten Carouate lifetimes would not be enough to repair the damage. Like the hydra of legend, wherever one of the Wyrms’ tentacles is severed, two more spring forth to continue the fight. The Carouate, however, possess limited numbers and few resources. Every Carouate lost in battle sounds the death knell for their kind, for each Carouate

peaceful. All Garou know that they are a dying breed. All know that their enemies are legion. They feel the jaws of the trap closing around them and know that slowly, inevitably the Moon is winning. The wonder they feel into Human.

The sense of futility and defeat underlies every story to some extent, no matter how glorious it may be shown. How can the Garou fight with honor, fight to spite the fact that their battle is over before it begins? This is where much of the human comes in. Created to be great warriors, the Garou cannot simply give up. They must strive for victory, expending the last ounce of strength to strike a blow for Gaia, fighting until their last breath emerges in a death rattle curse against the foe.

This doesn't mean that the struggle should be presented as completely hopeless, after all you want to give your players ample reason to return to your chronicle on a regular basis. Somewhere within themselves, the characters need to come to an understanding that despite everything, despite the pain and loss of death, somehow it may all make a difference. If nothing else, they may be worthy of a song.

#### • Savages Within the Civilized

No Garou can escape either the savage or the civilized aspect of her being. Just as those Garou born human must embrace their wolf heritage, even the most fanatic lupus Garou have a human side, whether they admit it or not. The metas may be the most aware of the drawbacks and blessings of their dual nature, as they experience the earliest years of their lives trapped in Crinos form, which blends the two sides most fully. In order to act as Gaia's defenders, the Garou call forth the most savage portions of themselves, losing their Rage to wreak vengeance on those who harm their Mother. Yet to remain dedicated to their goals, Garou look to community, ceremony and alliance with spirits—all requiring a high degree of civilization—to keep them focused and spiritually renewed.

As a Storyteller, you need to give the players the chance for their characters to explore both sides. Lead city-focused characters into the countryside and encourage them to explore the wolf within. Let them feel the hot, savage joy of the hunt. Find reasons for country Garou to enter the city and discover their human sides. Let them see that there are things worth saving in an urban environment. Play with the idea of us versus them, bring out both sides at once. Graphic descriptions of what happens during combat go a long way toward spotlighting the savagery of the Garou. On the other hand, when helping the players visualize rites and moots you don't have to focus on boring elements, but should bring out the passion that underlies the Garou's existence. Have fun describing barbarous or an in-a-like por-

tions that must be enacted to correctly perform rites. Do for ways of bringing more civilized elements into the insavagery of the pack's dealings.

#### • The Individual Versus the Pack

One of the main tenets of Werewolf is the concept that characters bond together in a pack or the members of the same sept. A few chronicles may be exceptions to this rule, but for the most part, group normalcy functions best in groups. Pack mentality determines certain behavior.

Place within the social structure of the pack and sept. Those of higher rank expect those of lesser rank to respect and obey them, while lower-ranked Garou demand that those of higher rank be just and true leaders.

While this unity makes the Garou strong, it also causes some friction as individuals strive for recognition of their efforts. It often seems that the individual players' needs are not being the most important thing, instead of the most admired within the group. Such players give for Renown at all costs, sometimes ignoring other aspects of the game to gain power. Higher rank, more Cottes, easier rites and above all, a sort of title within the sept. While there's nothing inherently wrong with wanting to gain recognition and increase the character's abilities, it should not be done at the cost of meaningful group interaction. Rather than confronting such a player directly, however you as the Storyteller can use the idea of the individual in conflict with his group as a theme to play up in your stories. If approached in this way, you can stress the idea that the characters should strive for truly dual success within the structure of the pack. To true Garou, the sept and the pack are far more important than the individual, and the survival of the group takes precedence over that of a single werewolf. A quick look at awarding Renown makes this very clear. Nonetheless, as an underlying theme of the game, that singular characters have the desire to excel and prove their prowess, which is sometimes in conflict with their assigned roles with the group. Bringing the two into accord can be the basis for interesting chronicles.

To some degree, this dichotomy carries over into and spotlights the idea of civil conflict. Despite their best intentions, Garou tribes often find ways and means to appease or get along with their tribes. In this case, the idea of the individual is expanded to include individual tribes in conflict with other tribes, keeping the whole of Garou from sliding into a state of enemies. Highlighting the distinction of antagonism between tribes can reinforce the individual versus pack theme and vice versa. In an age when every Garou is desperately needed to fight Gaia's enemies, this becomes a powerful theme to weave into any chronicle.

#### • Corruption and Cleansing

This is such a compelling theme it might seem almost too obvious to mention. But Mary Werewolf comes to mind

While this does the same as the previous example, it is not as clear as the previous example. The previous example was more explicit in its use of the `if` statement to check for the presence of the `name` attribute. The previous example was also more explicit in its use of the `if` statement to check for the presence of the `name` attribute.

*[The page contains faint, illegible markings.]*

[illegible]

The first part of the paper discusses the importance of the
 *Journal of Management Education* in the field of management
 education. It highlights the journal's role in providing
 a platform for the dissemination of research findings and
 the advancement of the discipline. The second part of the
 paper focuses on the journal's commitment to diversity and
 inclusion, emphasizing the importance of representing a
 wide range of perspectives and experiences in the
 management education field. The third part of the paper
 discusses the journal's efforts to promote the use of
 research findings in the classroom, highlighting the
 importance of evidence-based practice in management
 education. The fourth part of the paper discusses the
 journal's commitment to the advancement of the
 discipline, highlighting the importance of ongoing
 research and scholarship in the field. The fifth part of
 the paper discusses the journal's commitment to the
 development of the management education field,
 highlighting the importance of ongoing research and
 scholarship in the field. The sixth part of the paper
 discusses the journal's commitment to the advancement
 of the discipline, highlighting the importance of ongoing
 research and scholarship in the field. The seventh part
 of the paper discusses the journal's commitment to the
 development of the management education field,
 highlighting the importance of ongoing research and
 scholarship in the field. The eighth part of the paper
 discusses the journal's commitment to the advancement
 of the discipline, highlighting the importance of ongoing
 research and scholarship in the field. The ninth part of
 the paper discusses the journal's commitment to the
 development of the management education field,
 highlighting the importance of ongoing research and
 scholarship in the field. The tenth part of the paper
 discusses the journal's commitment to the advancement
 of the discipline, highlighting the importance of ongoing
 research and scholarship in the field.

### Results

1. **Introduction**  
 2. **Background**  
 3. **Methodology**  
 4. **Results**  
 5. **Discussion**  
 6. **Conclusion**  
 7. **References**  
 8. **Appendix**  
 9. **Index**  
 10. **Table of Contents**  
 11. **Figure 1**  
 12. **Figure 2**  
 13. **Figure 3**  
 14. **Figure 4**  
 15. **Figure 5**  
 16. **Figure 6**  
 17. **Figure 7**  
 18. **Figure 8**  
 19. **Figure 9**  
 20. **Figure 10**  
 21. **Figure 11**  
 22. **Figure 12**  
 23. **Figure 13**  
 24. **Figure 14**  
 25. **Figure 15**  
 26. **Figure 16**  
 27. **Figure 17**  
 28. **Figure 18**  
 29. **Figure 19**  
 30. **Figure 20**  
 31. **Figure 21**  
 32. **Figure 22**  
 33. **Figure 23**  
 34. **Figure 24**  
 35. **Figure 25**  
 36. **Figure 26**  
 37. **Figure 27**  
 38. **Figure 28**  
 39. **Figure 29**  
 40. **Figure 30**  
 41. **Figure 31**  
 42. **Figure 32**  
 43. **Figure 33**  
 44. **Figure 34**  
 45. **Figure 35**  
 46. **Figure 36**  
 47. **Figure 37**  
 48. **Figure 38**  
 49. **Figure 39**  
 50. **Figure 40**  
 51. **Figure 41**  
 52. **Figure 42**  
 53. **Figure 43**  
 54. **Figure 44**  
 55. **Figure 45**  
 56. **Figure 46**  
 57. **Figure 47**  
 58. **Figure 48**  
 59. **Figure 49**  
 60. **Figure 50**  
 61. **Figure 51**  
 62. **Figure 52**  
 63. **Figure 53**  
 64. **Figure 54**  
 65. **Figure 55**  
 66. **Figure 56**  
 67. **Figure 57**  
 68. **Figure 58**  
 69. **Figure 59**  
 70. **Figure 60**  
 71. **Figure 61**  
 72. **Figure 62**  
 73. **Figure 63**  
 74. **Figure 64**  
 75. **Figure 65**  
 76. **Figure 66**  
 77. **Figure 67**  
 78. **Figure 68**  
 79. **Figure 69**  
 80. **Figure 70**  
 81. **Figure 71**  
 82. **Figure 72**  
 83. **Figure 73**  
 84. **Figure 74**  
 85. **Figure 75**  
 86. **Figure 76**  
 87. **Figure 77**  
 88. **Figure 78**  
 89. **Figure 79**  
 90. **Figure 80**  
 91. **Figure 81**  
 92. **Figure 82**  
 93. **Figure 83**  
 94. **Figure 84**  
 95. **Figure 85**  
 96. **Figure 86**  
 97. **Figure 87**  
 98. **Figure 88**  
 99. **Figure 89**  
 100. **Figure 90**  
 101. **Figure 91**  
 102. **Figure 92**  
 103. **Figure 93**  
 104. **Figure 94**  
 105. **Figure 95**  
 106. **Figure 96**  
 107. **Figure 97**  
 108. **Figure 98**  
 109. **Figure 99**  
 110. **Figure 100**  
 111. **Figure 101**  
 112. **Figure 102**  
 113. **Figure 103**  
 114. **Figure 104**  
 115. **Figure 105**  
 116. **Figure 106**  
 117. **Figure 107**  
 118. **Figure 108**  
 119. **Figure 109**  
 120. **Figure 110**  
 121. **Figure 111**  
 122. **Figure 112**  
 123. **Figure 113**  
 124. **Figure 114**  
 125. **Figure 115**  
 126. **Figure 116**  
 127. **Figure 117**  
 128. **Figure 118**  
 129. **Figure 119**  
 130. **Figure 120**  
 131. **Figure 121**  
 132. **Figure 122**  
 133. **Figure 123**  
 134. **Figure 124**  
 135. **Figure 125**  
 136. **Figure 126**  
 137. **Figure 127**  
 138. **Figure 128**  
 139. **Figure 129**  
 140. **Figure 130**  
 141. **Figure 131**  
 142. **Figure 132**  
 143. **Figure 133**  
 144. **Figure 134**  
 145. **Figure 135**  
 146. **Figure 136**  
 147. **Figure 137**  
 148. **Figure 138**  
 149. **Figure 139**  
 150. **Figure 140**  
 151. **Figure 141**  
 152. **Figure 142**  
 153. **Figure 143**  
 154. **Figure 144**  
 155. **Figure 145**  
 156. **Figure 146**  
 157. **Figure 147**  
 158. **Figure 148**  
 159. **Figure 149**  
 160. **Figure 150**  
 161. **Figure 151**  
 162. **Figure 152**  
 163. **Figure 153**  
 164. **Figure 154**  
 165. **Figure 155**  
 166. **Figure 156**  
 167. **Figure 157**  
 168. **Figure 158**  
 169. **Figure 159**  
 170. **Figure 160**  
 171. **Figure 161**  
 172. **Figure 162**  
 173. **Figure 163**  
 174. **Figure 164**  
 175. **Figure 165**  
 176. **Figure 166**  
 177. **Figure 167**  
 178. **Figure 168**  
 179. **Figure 169**  
 180. **Figure 170**  
 181. **Figure 171**  
 182. **Figure 172**  
 183. **Figure 173**  
 184. **Figure 174**  
 185. **Figure 175**  
 186. **Figure 176**  
 187. **Figure 177**  
 188. **Figure 178**  
 189. **Figure 179**  
 190. **Figure 180**  
 191. **Figure 181**  
 192. **Figure 182**  
 193. **Figure 183**  
 194. **Figure 184**  
 195. **Figure 185**  
 196. **Figure 186**  
 197. **Figure 187**  
 198. **Figure 188**  
 199. **Figure 189**  
 200. **Figure 190**  
 201. **Figure 191**  
 202. **Figure 192**  
 203. **Figure 193**  
 204. **Figure 194**  
 205. **Figure 195**  
 206. **Figure 196**  
 207. **Figure 197**  
 208. **Figure 198**  
 209. **Figure 199**  
 210. **Figure 200**  
 211. **Figure 201**  
 212. **Figure 202**  
 213. **Figure 203**  
 214. **Figure 204**  
 215. **Figure 205**  
 216. **Figure 206**  
 217. **Figure 207**  
 218



lovers may corrupt the Garou either directly or indirectly. What if a character's lover demands time he would usually spend with his pack? The pack bond is strong, but

with a lover can lead a Garou to neglect his duties. What if the lover has been carefully groomed to seduce the Garou? By the time he learns that his apparently loving partner is a trap laid for him by Deceit, it may be too late for the Garou to extricate himself. Any of these can prove fodder for a story or two while emphasizing that corruption isn't something limited to the Wyrm.

And what about cleansing? Garou who have become diseased or corrupted may not be so vulnerable through a simple rite or two. First, the Garou must recognize that she has become corrupt and take steps to rid herself of it. This may involve journeys or trials she must endure, but the main focus is on her internal struggle. Does she really want to cleanse herself for does she secretly revel in her corruption? And what if it's not a cure at all? Can she reach beyond her internal darkness and still remain dedicated to the clan and the struggle? Who judges what constitutes taint and what is simply a fault? These themes can be brought out at any time your more mundane "clean up the Wyrms' spawn" sessions. Playing one off against the other will actually strengthen and develop both stories.

### *Enhancing the Game*

Storytellers are faced with a difficult task: making the story come alive for their players in an age of visual distraction. The GM is responsible for presenting the visual aspects handed to them on a platter, but in a game, you must help your troupe create their own picture of what is happening through description and whatever other aids and notes you can find to do so. Below are a few of the ways you can enhance the game for your troupe so they come out of a session feeling as though they've helped create a great story.

#### *Appropriate Setting In and Out of Game*

To really make your scenes come alive, you need an appropriate setting. Outside of the game world, this means you need a comfortable place to play where possible distractions remain in the background. Having a space where there is seating that allows everyone to see one another and places for paper, books, pencils and dice (if you use them) makes it far easier on you to keep the players' attention directed toward the troupe. Lighting plays an interesting role as well.

Keeping the lights low or playing by candlelight creates a wholly different mood than strung-in-neath blazing overhead lights. Dimmed, swatche-

light, or dim light in a cave or heavy forest, brighter light for a daylight scene in the city. This is part of reliving the scene by disguising what you lack.

Few troupes have the luxury of having the setting, but playing as soundtrack of trees swaying in the wind or birdcalls or rain can evoke an outdoor feeling. Don't forget the sense of smell either. Spraying fog with a perfume scent can call forth visions of mist. Pictures of the setting or special items help others visualize what it is they're seeing or experiencing, and music can help set the mood.

Though it may never actually happen, it's a good idea to have a "kit" of some kind. Rat trap, potato chip bags, or for the dramatic candy. During a poignant scene or someone else's big speech it is the mood and wrecks the game. So ask a few minutes before time if it's consumables or find some way to work them into the story.

One overlooked aspect of preparing for the session is to gather any items needed for the characters to perform rites they know. Even having a pen and ink at hand is a subtle, but a fetish in helping players establish such things in the troupe. You might even want to mark out an area in which the troupe is to take place the time the players gather within it. Don't be afraid to experiment with aids like these. We really aren't creating any real rituals, just using props to enhance your fun.

#### *Big Versus Little Picture*

Obviously you want to focus on the characters as they move through the story, but occasionally you can expand the game by looking at the big picture rather than the personal one. Whether it's a mood on the battlements or even during a challenge, it can help your game to describe things happening outside the characters' immediate range of influence. Consider the following: Fangs of Vengeance rashes in a life-and-death struggle against a Nexus Crawler. Naturally, you'll want to get into the low-down and dirty depiction of this epic battle. But it means more if she can see the rest of her pack cut off from her under siege and dying unless she can immediately kill and come to their rescue.

Likewise, if the pack is part of a sept-wide ritual on a Black Spirit Dance, you'll take up much of the time describing and running their individual battles. Still, by pulling back from their centers, you can be effectively describing things happening elsewhere. You not only make the ritual mean more, but give them a sense of being part of something larger and more important. It is such stories that bear the noble sacrifices most often. Remember, presenting their personal actions within the context of the larger picture also encourages players to go beyond their villain goals and work for the sept or pack as a whole, the good

## Playing to the Max

You have to use supporting cast (the player characters can't exist in a vacuum—you may as well maximize their potential and use it wisely). Making occasional kicks for the player characters or allowing them to just take care of things the players can't be bothered with is one of roleplaying opportunities and shortchanges the roleplay. Use your Storyteller characters to pull the way when necessary or to force the characters into making hard choices. Give a supporting cast member the same traits as a difficult player character and highlight how much of a pain she is to give the player a hint about the character. It's been said often that you need to make each one unique in some way. Even more important than making them unique, however, is to make them come alive. If the characters don't hate your villains and want them to die a slow, painful death, they aren't being utilized as well as they might. And if a Storyteller character goes back to the pack, they should feel something for that person. They aren't cardboard cutouts or pushovers. They aren't in the game to provide the characters with easy solutions. Sometimes, they should even seem like trouble more than they're worth. Still, if you're using a supporting cast to depress the players and their characters, when a favorite cast member dies, you're doing it right.

## Branch Out

Even playing a character can feel given time and beyond. Create the environment. Perils and other adventures of the game. Throw your troupe into a story that ostensibly has nothing to do with Garou. Take them on a spiritual journey. Find ways to make the lupus embrace the human and vice versa. Take the Bone Gnawers out of the city and lure them Garou into.

Provide the characters with moral quandaries. Use your imagination and challenge your players. Just remember: the best way to enhance your game is to have fun and provide fun for everyone else.

## FAQ

### Or, Things You Always Wanted to Know About Werewolves

#### Werewolf Physiology

• Is there such a thing as a "Garou gene?" Can it be detected with DNA analysis? Can werewolves be cloned?

It really is no. The factor of being Garou is largely spiritual, it's something that some Gifts and spirits can pick up on, but not science, the blood tests or anything like that. A Garou character reads it just like any other. Pure Breed is not anything more than a stronger penchant to carry the genetic traits of your ancestors, scientifically speaking.

Thus, werewolves can't really be cloned through science, you'd get a clone of the breed form person, but no werewolf traits. Metis can't be cloned at all, nor can a metis ever truly be successfully transplanted. A Raging mother takes a womb with spirit power and Rage to successfully bring a metis to term.

• Can werewolves regenerate severed limbs?

If the injury that severed a limb or digit didn't leave a Battle Scar, then yes. However, a severed head doesn't grow back; decapitation kills a werewolf pretty readily.

• If you sever a werewolf's arm or head, does it revert to breed form or remain in the form it was previously in?

It reverts to breed form, just like the old legend about a hunter chopping the paw off a wolf that attacked him, wrapping it up and taking it home only to find he was carrying a human hand. Werewolves don't make good trophies unless they're metis, and the Changeling's perspective is that werewolves are the most interesting of all the supernatural creatures.

• Are werewolves considered Kinfolk to their First Change?

No, they are not. They're werewolves from the moment of birth. For instance, if they have kids with another Garou before undergoing the First Change, the progeny will be metis.

• Can werewolves breed and produce offspring with dogs?

Short answer: No. Long answer: Not if the pregnancy will result in human or hybrid babies (i.e., if female Garou mating with a male dog), and in no case will any of the puppies be shapeshifters. For a viable mating that might produce a Garou, the animal partner must be a wolf-dog hybrid or at least 75% wolf, and even then the chances of a werewolf offspring are low. Even though wolves (and Garou) can produce viable offspring by breeding with dogs, the difference between wolf spirits and dog-spirits is so vast that dogs—in fact, any domesticated animal—cannot produce shapeshifter offspring.

• Do matings between Garou and Fera produce metis?

Nope. Metis are the result of two shapeshifters with incompatible spirit halves mating. It's kind of like incest, only on a spiritual rather than genetic level. If a Garou mates with a member of another Changing Breed, the spirit halves are incompatible, hence, no metis. The child is the breed of the mother, though, so mean that the child can't be of the father's shapeshifter race. (The exception: lupus mother's pups can't be Baster even if their father is Baster.) The chances for "breeding true" are drastically reduced in such a mating, anyway, there's only a 5% chance that a child will breed true to the mother's race, and only a 5% chance

of breeding true to the father's race. If being of the mother's race is impossible, there's still only a 5% chance of breeding true to the mother's race. Hence such pairings are far from honorable in the sense of "taking a good mate and trying to breed true."

### *Character Creation and Traits*

• Other core rulebooks have Merits & Flaws/ Natures & Dispositions, but not Werewolf. Why not?

Merits and Flaws are optional rules. There was room for anything but the not-so-optional "you need these to play" rules in the main rulebook. For rules for the Umbra, so Merits and Flaws were left out. In the revised version of the list, I felt free to keep using the ones listed in the *Werewolf Players Guide*, they generally work just fine with Revised rules. The same holds true for Natures & Dispositions; these are particularly optional, because werewolves regain Willpower according to their auspice, not their nature.

• If a werewolf is born under a lunar eclipse, what auspice is he?

Despite what you may think the lunar eclipse is to the mysterious "sixth auspice." Lunar eclipses occur only during the full moon, hence, werewolves born under an eclipse are going to be Anurim.

• Older supplements talk about a Background rules: Past Life. What is that?

The Background: Ancestors, which was more accurately named. The name was changed to "Ancestors" to reflect what the Background actually did. It wasn't about remembering past lives, it was about contacting ancestor-spirits, hence the change for clarity.

• I have a supplement that gives first-edition Renown awards. How do I convert these to second or Revised edition Renown?

There's no hard and fast rule, much as some would like. An old form Glory Renown of 500 doesn't neatly convert to one temporary dot of second-edition Glory. You have to compare the relative scale of the Renown award and adjust accordingly. The *Werewolf Storytellers Companion* has a set of guidelines for this.

• The Uktena tribal description says that their totem grants a talent for disguise to its followers, but the totem description doesn't match up. Was there an omission?

No, the item description accurately describes the Uktena. It encourages his followers to learn the skill of disguise (read: Performance, Subterfuge & Stealth), not grants them the power. Sorry.

• The core rulebook says the Stargazers' initial Willpower is 5, but the *Storytellers Companion* says 4. Which is right?

It should be 4.

• If a werewolf joins a pack, but doesn't pay any points into the Totem Background, does he get the full benefits — traits and ban, pack tactics, the "opener of the way" rule — of being a member of the pack?

Said character can learn to use pack tactics as usual, and he can be "led" into the Umbra by an opener of the way. He cannot be nominated as the opener of the way, however, and he doesn't share in the traits, traits or ban until he's made a commitment to the totem (via spending experience).

• Does a dot of Totem cost two or three experience points?

Two.

• When rolling Rage, Gnosis or Willpower, do you roll temporary or permanent ratings?

Usually permanent, although some Storytellers prefer temporary. Either way is fine. The exception is Rage, you always roll temporary, permanent whichever is higher.

### *Gifts and Rites*

• What happened to the Gifts of previous editions that didn't make it into Revised, such as Scent of Sweet Honey?

The decision regarding Gifts is that they're bought and valued by Rank Two or higher Bone Chasers. They would have to have been at Sweet Honey, for instance. Simply assume that said Gifts aren't quite as popular these days, characters who had them before can still use them, of course, and the Storyteller can still use whatever Gifts you desire. They're just not as important as before.

• Do Garou that renounce their auspice lose their Gifts or keep them? The book's inconsistent.

They keep them. A Gift is a trick you learn, kind of like tying your shoe, and the power to perform that trick resides within the Garou. You can't "unlearn" a Gift although you can lose the ability to use it if you lose all your Gnosis or R.

• If the Rite of the Opened Bridge or Rite of Caern Building fail, the ritemaster (and possibly others) take damage, but what sort of damage?

Lethal damage.

• When the Rite of Accomplishment is performed, is it only to convert temporary Renown in one category, or can it convert in two or three all at once? For instance, if a werewolf has 10 temporary Glory and 10 temporary Wisdom, can he have both converted to permanent at the same moon?

The youngster has to choose between Renown type separately, but generally speaking the Rite can be extended to cover each Renown type desired. In such case through the ritemaster's control of each Rite.

type separately, hence, a Kit of Accomplishment covering both Wisdom and Honor would require a separate roll for each. I prefer real tails, the entire rule fails, hence, some prefer to undergo each rite separately.

- Also under the Rite of Accomplishment, it says "three moons," which is translated into "the next month and a half." Shouldn't this be more like "three months?"

Ax, we've yes, it should.

### Umbræ

- Spirit combat seems pretty rough. A Scrag with a Rage of 10 is difficulty 10 to injure and still rolls 6 dice to soak damage! How are you supposed to kill one of these guys?

Yeah, the spirits. We recommend that for all werewolves you adopt a rule that a spirit has a soak pool of Willpower - 2 (a minimum, a spirit with Willpower 2 has better have Armor if it wants to soak damage) and that the difficulty to injure one is Rage + 2 (a minimum of 3). And go ahead and drop the Scrag's Rage to 6. The counselors of the Wyrm shouldn't be that tough.

- Does the soak pool granted by Armor replace the Willpower soak pool (if any), or add to it?

As to the Earth elements, it's still pretty hard to know what they use their Gnosis for.

- In the previous edition, werewolves rolled Gnosis to soak damage in the Umbræ. Is this no longer the case?

As to anger, I guess they use Scrag as is is. As to the will, prefer giving high Gnosis. As to the more it seeps in the Umbræ, often continue to use the soak rule, though we don't mind.

### Combat

- Do klaives and grand klaives really do the same damage?

As to anger, I guess they use Scrag as is is. As to the will, prefer giving high Gnosis. As to the more it seeps in the Umbræ, often continue to use the soak rule, though we don't mind.

- The rules for soaking damage, regeneration and silver by form are confusing. How exactly does it work by breed?

All werewolves soak having damage as normal in all forms. Homids can soak lethal and aggravated damage in any form, except Homid in Homid, a homid can soak bashing damage as normal but not lethal or aggravated damage. Lupus cannot soak lethal or aggravated damage in Lupus form at all, but they can soak lethal in all other forms. Metis soak in homid if damaged in homid in all forms.

Regeneration follows the same rules. A homid cannot regenerate in Homid and a lupus cannot regen-

erate in Lupus; in these forms they simply heal as mortals do. However, they can handle silver without Gnosis loss in their breed forms, and silver does not cause aggravated damage to a homid or lupus in breed form. A metis regenerates in all forms, but also loses Gnosis from carrying silver and takes aggravated wounds from silver in all forms.

Those who feel that this is a bit complicated can simply allow werewolves to soak all damage equally well in all forms, but we don't recommend letting them regenerate in all forms and as they're metis (who can't handle silver and can breed form to make this advantage a little more even).

- Some questions on frenzy. If a Garou whose Gnosis exceeds her permanent Rage spends a Willpower point during a berserk frenzy, can she distinguish between allies other than her packmates and enemies?

Yes.

- If a Garou whose Rage exceeds her permanent Gnosis spends a Willpower point during a berserk frenzy, can she distinguish between her packmates and others?

Yes, although she cannot accurately identify the Storyteller will tell them they are attacking an enemy, but not which enemy. She will only be able to distinguish between packmate and not packmate.

- If a Garou's Rage is equal to her permanent Gnosis, can she distinguish between her packmates and enemies?

Yes. The frenzy section should read "a Garou whose permanent Gnosis equals or exceeds her permanent Rage will not attack her packmates unless she is the Thrill of the Wyrm."

- You can only spend half your permanent Rage in a turn for the purpose of gaining extra actions. Is the fraction rounded up or down?

Up.

- In the description of the Fur Gnat maneuver, it's stated that someone attacking the exposed area has their difficulty raised by two. But the example states it as a +1 difficulty penalty. Which is right?

The maneuver is right, not the example.

### Setting

- Can't I play a White Howler/male homid or lupus Black Fury/homid Red Talon by having an accident of birth or genetic quirk?

No, because that's not the way tribes work. Tribe is a matter of adoption more than genetics; a male homid Garou who's born to a Black Fury mother doesn't count as a Black Fury from birth. It's simply

Carou, the effect is brilliant and the undergrowth is full of Passage and is accepted into a tribe. Thing is, Pegasus won't accept him so any Rite of Passage meant to bring him into the Furies automatically fails. Same with her old Red Tailors. Griff now isn't a Jewit. As for White Howlers, they just aren't a tribe any more—there is no more tribal totem, so a White Howler Rite of Passage would automatically fail. You have to be initiated into a tribe to be a member—birth alone isn't enough.

• **How many werewolves are there in the World of Darkness?**

The answer is as big as you. The stock answer is "not enough." But generally speaking it's assumed that each tribe numbers between about 500 members at the low end (such as the 5 fingers) up to maybe 2000 at the high end (Bone Crawlers, for instance)—and notably more in the case of Black Spiral Dancers. Although Vampire has a neat trick of vampires on humans that lets you see how many vampires are in a given city, Werewolf doesn't work like that; the biggest concentrations of Carou population are often well away from cities, in the middle of wolf country. When determining the population of a local sept, a good rule of thumb is to work out the default number of werewolves to cover a given sept roles, rotate guard shifts, and have a couple of packs who are more or less full-time in the field—then halve that number. It's the best way to get across the very bad situation the Carou are in.

• **One of my players has an old Stargazer character. Should I still let her play that character, now that the Stargazers have left the Carou Nation?**

Of course! Not all Stargazers have packed in and headed for Tibet. Let her roleplay out the difficult choice she faces between tribe and sept, and let her experience the consequences of whatever she chooses. Will the other Carou trust her, or assume that she's just going to leave sooner or later? If they don't trust her to stay, will that affect her decision if she gets treated like a second-class citizen? This can make for a fantastic story.

• **In the Setting chapter, it says that werewolves undergo their First Change at around 10-16 years old (if homid) or 1-2 years old (if lupus). However, on page 104 it says you begin play at 14-18 years old (if homid) or 2-3 years old (if lupus). Is this a contradiction?**

No, necessarily. Characters may well have undergone their Rite of Passage and some training between their First Change and the time they begin play if they were too young to be trusted in the field at the time of their Change. This depends on the character, of course.

• **On page 32 of the main rules, it says metis can undergo First Change early in life, around the same time a human child begins to walk, but on page 96, it says metis don't shapeshift until eight years of age. Which is right?**

Page 96 should read "typically cannot shapeshift until eight years of age." Some metis prodigies learn to shapeshift while toddlers, but must wait until they're eight or so.

### *Miscellany*

• **Here's an art question: Why don't female werewolves have breasts in Carou?**

The Carou is not a mimesis for giving birth or nursing. Breasts would get in the way. The Carou does have breasts and nipples, of course, but they don't become evident unless the werewolf is lactating. Carous, who often pump out the mother's nursing infant's cab. If there isn't a direct need for milk, the breasts aren't noticeable through the Carou coat.

And by the way, a Carou has only two breasts. The number of mammary glands depends on how many offspring a mother is likely to have, since metis are typically born in ones or (rarely) twos, as with humans. A Carou has only two mammary glands, as with humans.

• **Where can I find official stats for the White Howlers?**

There aren't any. This is the tribe that's been around the longest time; there's really no chance of running into one of theseicks, even in the time of old Werewolves. The Dark Ages. If you really need one, you can take it with a box of Fennia and Ahroun Gifts.

• **What about the Bunyip?**

Some general Gifts and totems of the Bunyip are presented in *Rage Across Australia* (reprinted in *Rage Across the World*, Volume 2).

• **And the Croatan?**

See *Croatan Song* for details on what the tribe was like in the time they were still around. Modern-day stats for them don't exist for all the obvious reasons.

• **Wasn't there supposed to be a Werewolf video game?**

Twice. Both were abandoned and vanished into the void of time, never to be heard from again. Ask us no more.

• **Is Gata really Lilith?**

No, everything has to be shackled to the Vampire mythology, you know.



# Chapter One The World of the Garou

Victor ran through the body of the terrifying creature, followed by another and another, until it was shuddering violence. After a young female wolf was standing among the people in the dream.

har's Leta from Tan. someone said in Sasha's ear.

"she's really talented."

Victor Paleyev, "A Werewolf Problem in Central Russia"

## *Becoming Garou*

The First Change is seen by many as the defining moment in a werewolf's life—it's the moment when he realizes that he isn't a human or wolf but something other. Certainly, it forms a markerpost in the werewolf's life as the moment he discovers his true nature. However, actually becoming Garou takes longer than the few seconds that a transformation requires. It's a slow process of adapting to dramatic physical changes as well and a cataclysmic shift in the character's lifestyle.

A young Garou needs to adapt a body that can do things he never expected. He needs to learn to walk, run, and rest in bodies that are entirely unlike the one in which he has spent his life to date. He has to adapt to leaving his old life behind. Then the young tab is taught to fight. He's indoctrinated into a whole new society with its own myths and legends. He learns about a whole new aspect of reality that he can enter and explore. His teachers are far from kind and understanding; instead, they're often brutal and ruthless. Then, just as the

character is beginning to find acceptance amongst these strange and nonconformist type people, he is pushed away from the safety of his new home on a mission that is dangerous at best, and deadly at worst, with a group that's just as inexperienced as he is.

The introduction to Garou life is never easy, it's true, worth telling though, especially if you are running a chronicle for players that are new to Werewolf and its concepts. They get the chance to learn as their characters do, which is usually far more effective than absorbing knowledge from assigned reading. Even if your players know Werewolf pretty well, it gives them the opportunity to reinforce some of the key ideas of the game in their minds right at the outset. So, how do you go about it?

Well, as you, the Storyteller, sit down to work out how to tell the tale of a newly changed werewolf, there are several things you should bear in mind. A new werewolf doesn't so much become Garou as become aware of his true nature. The First Change is not



Probably the best way to convey this sense of equilibrium to your players is by increasing the difficulty of rolls for physical or sensory actions made in a form other than their own (and for a few very common through the portion of the story that deals with them becoming used to their new abilities). A modifier of +1 for Crinos and +2 for the two forms that aren't related to its birth form (Harud and Ghibro for lupus, Lupus and Hsipo for homid) is likely reasonable. Meas, of course, would suffer no penalty in Crinos, +1 for Hsipo, and Ghibro, and +2 for the two werewolf forms.

You can also help facilitate it by actually creating certain pieces of information in your descriptions of what characters sense when they're in forms other than their own. However, if a sort of manipulation should be agreed with the players before the game gets underway.

### *A New Mind*

The lupus Garou undergirds the most profound mental changes when she becomes aware of her nature. The change marks her transition from instinct-based thought patterns to full reasoning intelligences. It's a dramatic change in her whole perception of reality. Human beings take years to develop reasoning abilities as they grow from babies to children. A lupus werewolf has to go through this process in a matter of six weeks at the most. Even though it's more a matter of accessing previously unused capabilities than gaining new ones, it's still a challenging shift in consciousness.

However, even a human werewolf has some major adjustments to cut away if it's going to deal with. A werewolf isn't simply a mass of human thought processes wrapped in a powerful and mutable frame — it's a whole new way of thinking. It's a mindset that accepts the reality of the spirit world, implicitly (in reality, thus far) and which commands the werewolf to a life of battle. Make no mistake: all werewolves are warriors, even the Ragabash, Theurges and Galliards, and their mindset is designed to help them pay their part in Garou's defense.

There are few cultures on the planet where the warrior ethos is central to the society in question — and the odds are that the characters in your chronicle don't come from them. Even wolves themselves are "inherently warriors" — hunters, yes, but actual committed warriors? No. Coupled with this is the sudden knowledge of a new language, the inherent tongue of the Garou, which they have to develop and accept their understanding of in those initial weeks.

Perhaps the most fundamental element of the First Change is a whole new sense of justice to work with, the birth of her Rage. A werewolf's Rage is one of the most fundamental and defining parts of the game, and it's

something that requires some close storytelling attention in the early sessions, until such a time as you're sure that your players have a handle on it. This can be problematic, though, as Rage can be looked upon as an intense controlling emotion, or the werewolf feels and doing a player what her character feels is tricky business at the best of times. However, in the early stages of the game, it may be worth asking it to help the player translate those Rage dots in her character sheet into what her character actually feels. Keep track of the levels of Rage each character has — not only to be opposed to the player's growing anger, but also lack of control.

It's important to establish Rage as a feeling, just as a source of supernatural power, and the sooner you can do so in a chronicle, the better.

### *Kin Rearing*

Many years ago, the transition from human to werewolf would have been somewhat easier. Kin far less relatively knowledgeable about all ways of the First Change than members would train their children that seemed likely to change in all ways of the tribe to prepare them for the experiences they undergo. This practice is still in use here and there, although some tribes forbid such "childing" of young cubs, and many Kin alone ones have lost all knowledge of what they once were.

Thus, many of the difficulties outlined in this chapter will be eased by a life spent preparing to be Garou. The challenges facing werewolves in most of the chronicle is already prepared for some of the changes to his thought processes and way of life, and he has been exposed to the local if not the reality of the Umbra.

However, the amount of coaching can prepare the cub for the physical and sensory learning curve he goes through once he starts changing forms. Neither can talk of the Umbra and spirits really prepare him to actually travel into the Penumbra, and those first encounters with spirits.

Such characters are increasingly rare as the Apocalypse approaches, and unless you have a player who's already well-versed in the game's setting, which makes a character from such a background most of the characters in your game unlikely to fit the broad outline given here. Since the change is more dramatic and therefore often more satisfying for a cub that's growing out of his true nature, most players will be happy to release potential "hidden knowledge" for a more gripping personal story.

## A New Life

For a homid, the period before the change is teenage angst writ large. Most teenagers go through a stage of believing themselves to be different — special, even. They feel alienated from their peers. For most, this is just a phase they go through. This is not the case for a young werewolf. Both before and after the change, people sense that there is something different about the cub. Some shy away from her, instinctively shunning the predator in their midst. Others become more confrontational, seeking to cow the perceived threat. Of course, these reactions are not reasoned ones; they occur on an instinctual level, much as exposure to a werewolf in one of the obviously supernatural forms causes the Delirium. These social hand caps don't disappear the moment the cub changes either. As the werewolf starts to come to terms with what she has become, the predator will probably be closer to the surface and less under control than it will be later in her life. As the Storyteller attitudinal to you to make the reactions of the human Storyteller characters in your game fit this mould.

For a lupus character the reactions of her packmates is not a more clear-cut. Wolves operate under a social hierarchy system that is more rigidly defined than that of humanity. As the cub approaches her First Change, the other wolves usually start to perceive her as a threat, even if they are kin in the end, the werewolf to be is likely to end up in a position where she must challenge for dominance and the alpha position, or be driven out as a lone wolf. The former option is likely to trigger the change in and of itself, the fierce combat for prime position may well drive the Rage of the cub high enough that the change overtakes her, and she recovers surrounded by the entrails of her packmates.

The lone wolf has a curious double position within wolf society: she is either pitiable, or the hope for the future. The young alpha stragglers aren't capable of challenging the alpha, but that desire a pack of their own often leave the pack, and hope to pair up with a mate who will also left a pack. However the "alien" nature of the werewolf to be usually prevents the young Garou from gaining, leaving her to wander on her own, a dangerous prospect that triggers the change.

In either case, the character feels like an outcast, already by the time she changes. Others are able to sense the inherent difference of the character from the rapping out peer group before she can, and both humans and wolves, being social creatures, sense the threat. The primary advantage of all this pre-change suffering is that once the character has accepted what she has become, she should find it easier to leave her old life behind. After all, her old life had become a misery, why stay with it?

This is certainly an angle to play up in your story, as it will give the character greater motivation to accept and spend time with the experienced werewolves that find her — however bizarre they initially seem.

## Garou Society

Even after the cubs have accepted their new nature, dealing with werewolf society is going to be a significant culture shock for them, unless they are born metis. One of the few advantages metis have is that they are aware of the workings of Garou society from whole lives. Those werewolves born amongst the humans and the wolves have no such advantage.

To a lupus sense of the ways that Garou society work are going to see a more animal. You can use words like "dominance" and "submission" when describing the actions of other werewolves to players of lupus characters. These are social interactions that lupus characters understand esperefly. After all, it has been part of their day-to-day existence for their whole life.

The same can't be said of the homid. Instead of seeing one werewolf submitting to another, he is going to see bizarre social interactions that are not going to make much sense to him until he becomes adept at reading body language. You can even omit the descriptions of key physical signals if you don't think the character has the knowledge to understand or even recognize them yet. Only once they've come to understand some of the aspects of society or had it explained to them, can you start to introduce these rules into your narrative. Even once they come to understand it, they might find it hard to accept. Modern society, in particular Western culture, teaches equality as one of its guiding principals. The werewolves have little truck with this idea, coming as they do in a hierarchical society with defined roles. Many characters, almost always homids, will have a hard time adapting to this. The other Garou in the caern will always be willing to "educate" them when they step out of it. Lupus characters, used to a simple structure as a pack, may have more problems accepting this than homids who have the school and work experiences to teach them to survive in hierarchy.

For the metis, of course, all this comes naturally. It's always been Garou, so he understands how the relationships work. What is harder for him, though, is that fact that people from outside the community he was raised in are suddenly accorded more respect than the metis himself. The poor creature might know more about the werewolf culture and the set-up of the particular caern than the other new cubs put together. In most caerns, that won't matter a lot, and the metis remains stigmatized and his ignorant cousins ignore the attention. Play this up in the reaction of the Storyteller characters to the different cubs. It's possible

that the other characters might start turning to the metis for advice. By all means let them, but be prepared to let a Storyteller character upbraid them for paying so much attention to an affront to Garou.

## *Spirituality*

For all the facts and lore of Garou raised in their families, one of the most profound mental shifts they have to make is accepting the spirituality of the werewolves, in two senses of the word. Not only do they have a belief system that is both fundamental to werewolves and of course utterly opposed to many of the religions of the mundane world, they also meet the spirits that form a core part of that system in person.

Hearing elder werewolves talking about the spirits is probably the first way the characters encounter the idea. Most Garou use a mixture of reverence and acceptance that will come across as little different from the way truly religious humans talk. The real shock comes when venturing into the Umbra for the first time. Here, the characters face direct evidence of the reality of the spirit world and the Garou belief system. You should take the time to describe those first voyages into the Umbra in vivid detail, taking care to emphasize the differences between the velvet shadow and the physical world.

Humans, at least, may be intellectually prepared for the idea of a different world. That doesn't mean actually going there has any less impact on them. This is a profound spiritual experience, one that should promote both a feeling of awe and of homecoming, or a great crisis of faith. The human was previously very religious. Lupus face a slightly greater challenge. They're only just coming to grips with whole new thought processes, and now they have to come to terms with a reality that is markedly different from the physical world that their previous existence was centered in. That said, they have a greater affinity for the Umbra, and when they have come to terms with the idea, they should adapt more quickly. After all, for all werewolves, regardless of breed, the Umbra is as much their home as mundane reality. While it may have been dormant all their lives, they possess a spiritual side that is more at home in the earth's shadow than it is in the reality of their birth.

The characters can't avoid it, either. Meetings with spirits are crucial to knowing their first powers, and indeed most Gifts thereafter. While there will no doubt be elder werewolves on hand to help them deal with the spirits, it is still the character that must do the work. Within a few first tasks Garou are going to meet a spirit directly representing any of the great powers, their first meeting with a spirit, even if it is one they will later come to regard as low-powered, and

somewhat inconsequential, should be a profound experience. As the Storyteller, you have two things to bear in mind during this sort of scene. First,

plant-shaped humans, they are creatures with their own identity distinct from humanity. (Furthermore, as in portraying spirits effectively, see Chapter Two.)

Second, the characters are much like clubby British tourists in a land whose customs they have little clue about, certainly no more than they would glean from a basic guidebook, and whose language they have only a loose grip on. And here they are, trying to beg favors from a being with no real sense of the value of the favor you are part of and represent. With this mindset in place, you should be well set to deal with the characters as a spirit might.

## *Settling In*

As the first months of life as one of the Garou pass, the penalties, both roleplaying and mechanical, should pass. Certainly by the time the pack is deemed worthy of a Rite of Passage, each member should be comfortable with their forms and senses, have a working understanding of Garou society and be able to approach spirits without offending them utterly.

The tone of your storytelling should shift from the strangeness of Garou society to the weirdness and humor of the creature that the werewolves now face. As they return from the Rite of Passage, the pack should feel in some way that they are coming home. Mentors who were once terrifying and alien now seem more familiar. A creature human or wolf-like would seem strange, but they are seeing those worlds through different eyes and minds than they were scant months before. Your job now is to emphasize the taint of both Weaver and Wyrm in human society as the young cubs grow to a greater understanding of the world around them. For details on that, read on.

## *Senses*

Garou are not wolves or humans, but rather the children of both, creatures of savagery and civilization. They live in the material and the spirit world, at home in each, yet strangely disconnected from each one. Most spend the rest of lives searching for meaning through the endless battles that their very nature drives them to fight. In many respects, perception is reality, so in order to understand werewolves, we must know their senses. By focusing on the different ways werewolves remain aware of the world around them, the Storyteller can add depth to the description of a scene and give a greater sense of reality to her chronicle and stories.

Everything that we perceive  
Most people focus on sight and hearing, the form of

thinking. During deployment, they can "see" the enemy without using either a radio or eye. More rarely, an individual may rely on hearing, remembering the words and listening to the experience, able to locate parts of the system while the visually oriented person may describe things that weren't ever described by the Storyteller. A very small percentage of people focus on one of the other senses for their primary perception. For this reason, many Storytellers forget to use other senses in their settings. The sense of smell has a stronger memory trigger than any of our other senses. Touch can change our body chemistry immediately. Perception does become reliable.

Wolves rely on sight, but in some cases the primary sense. Wolves are not wild dogs, they live in packs that are like mistreated cousins, not mauling each other. A wolf has a sense of smell many times more powerful than that of a bloodhound. If a wolf catches a scent, he knows not only that he smells a human being, but also what that person last ate. He can also remember it and track the scent for hours. In some ways, a wolf's sense of smell almost works like psychic intuition. With a wolf, the wolf learns enough to know events that have taken place many hours before.

Werewolves have powerful senses. They constantly check their environment aware of possible trouble. They can leap into the air to be sneaky, help them notice dangers. In an urban setting, the constant flow of noises and sensations can cause some, especially the young, to go mad from the noise, the sights, and the smells. The opposite is also true. Many a Garou can seek out the quiet and strange noise of the world as disturbing. Some Garou, deafen their senses, choosing to ignore the world around them. Often, these are children, many a woman have difficulty stepping back into the spirit world.

Even when werewolves are in Homid form, their senses are stronger than those of normal humans. Garou pay more attention to their sensations than humans do. A werewolf doesn't eat only dinner, but also breakfast and lunch. Her predatory instincts guide her to eat things out of the ordinary. She tastes her food carefully, savoring and giving attention to the flavors instead of inhaling the meal unconsciously. The smell of the world holds meaning for her, and she may unconsciously interpret them instead of ignoring the anomalies of the modern world. A Garou craves much feeling the breeze on her flesh, detecting subtle changes in the temperature and humidity.

Senses change as forms change. A Garou in the light senses smell to some degree. Instincts count, but the more familiar the world, usually as prickles on the neck or a

### *But There Are No Rules for This!*

Some Storytellers may balk at this bias and tendency to describe Garou senses as perfect. It is true when really there's no rules assisting Perception checks for any forms but Lupus. It's okay really. Even if your players are reading this book and we know certain characters and people are cheating this very side bar for "secret information" even as we speak, you don't have to cave in to any demands to lower difficulties or grant extra success on Perception checks. The idea here is to use description to show the players how even as their characters shift shape, the texture of sights, sounds, and smells seems to rearrange itself, not to grant the characters omniscience thanks to their uncanny senses. Use the material here for descriptive flavor, to catch their attention on a few details to make it easier to find actual clues. If the players really want to take better advantage of their werewolf senses, encourage them to raise their Perception, Alertness, or Primal Urge Traits. It's as good a method as any to encourage how a werewolf learns to perceive her environment.

That said, if you want to give players a room standard Difficulty modifier for Perception checks, it's a good idea. For example, a Garou in Homid form might have a +1 bonus to Perception checks as sight in Homid or smell in Lupus, which is welcome. It might make your players more interested in experimenting with all their forms, as all the werewolves likely would be.

Feelings in the gut. Sometimes these instinctive feelings are positive, conveying trust. Some werewolves believe that they can tell Kankou apart from the rest of humanity by a glance or with a scent. In Canis form, the sense of taste improves. Meat becomes much juicier and fresh or stale liquids may do the same. Night vision also improves, although some werewolves believe that they have trouble seeing certain colors in Canis.

The Caninos may have the most acute mix of senses found in any form, but a werewolf's ability to interpret those senses becomes a big problem. Rage always burns in the heart of a Garou in Canis form. The instincts that help a werewolf stay alive have narrow focus, suddenly all demand the hunt: craving the taste of hot blood, and the sound of snapping bones. Making violent desires to test the strength of their news and bones of their prey quickly overtake all other senses. Any unusual movement instantly attracts the attention of a Canino. The dark hells are difficult yet Caninos often see the bright colors of their human

heritage. Eyes see things at distances how wide the range of humans or wolves. A Crinos' ears perk up and determine the direction of the faintest sounds. High sounds beyond the normal human range, such as the hum of electrical appliances, dog whistles, even distant fire, reach the werewolf's ears. A Carou sometimes aware of deeper vibrations as well, even feeling the deep rumble below the world. Like many animals, a werewolf can sense impending natural disasters, like earthquakes before they happen. Smell is as powerful as sight for a werewolf in Crinos. An enemy doesn't need to meet the werewolf to know a werewolf is close. Touch heightens, although feelings of pain diminish. A werewolf feels every brush of air against its fur. How many claws and blades are dodged because the Crinos feels them before they make contact?

Still, the constant rush of adrenaline, the roar of blood in the ears, and the pounding rage within the heart of Crinos make perceptions blur. Sometimes, everything becomes a threat and control is a constant battle. An angry tone of voice becomes a direct threat. Sudden movements are unexpected attacks. A Carou can taste the flesh of her opponent before the first bite. While rage varies with individuals, every werewolf in Crinos carries a threatening edge.

Hispo form brings a werewolf much closer to her Lupine heritage. The dire wolf can see much farther than humans and retains the ability to distinguish colors. A Hispo has excellent night vision making her capable of detecting even slight movement in near dark conditions. Yet Crinos could not catch a Hispo form, nor rely so much on sight as much as hearing and smell.

A werewolf in Hispo form can detect even small noises over great distances. She can filter even small sounds and quickly determine their sources and direction. Certain sounds reach the dire wolf from away. How a wolf wake a Hispo from sleep even if they are inaudible to human ears.

Very little gets past a Hispo's ears, but even less gets past her nose. In dire wolf form, a werewolf may seem to possess almost spatial awareness. Her sense of smell allows her to remain aware of everything going on around her. Shots in the wind have some effect on this sense, but surprising a werewolf remains fairly difficult. Furthermore, she can recognize scents and foot trails that may be days old. A werewolf can track to oversee the human who are chased near her lair and identify him weeks later. The scent works just as well as actually having seen the individual. Many werewolves are especially sensitive to the smells of blood and the sounds of violence.

In Lupus form, the sense of smell fades. Although it's stated above, a werewolf can piece together pictures of

past events with her sense of smell. For example, at a caern, she could recognize which members of her sept had been present and when. Now, the wolf's ability to smell is not infallible. Natural events, like storms and snowfall can wash away or bury scents. Strong odors, anything from toxic chemicals to animal manure, can overpower an animal's sense of smell. Sprays or disguises their scents. On the nature front, a werewolf can be a problem, though Rogarash have been known to introduce new hounds to them just for a quick laugh. This form has excellent hearing. They can see well at night, but Carou in Lupus often have trouble telling the differences between colors. Unlike actual wolves, most Carou can see in color in all their forms. Although storywriters may wish to change this for their characters, they think it will make play more fun.

Werewolves have other senses as well. The common if exists werewolves in a number of ways. Even without "picking," Crinos can feel changes in the spirit world. Members of a pack can tell when they enter an anisepic lab, but at they've even caught the scent of the dead air. When a spirit in the other side passes through a werewolf, she feels something, cold or a sense of warmth or strength if it's friendly or cold and dread if it's a potential enemy. These senses are real and powerful. Werewolves with strong Crinos may experience

Carou have powerful racial memories as well. Some werewolves actually experience the memories of their ancestors, but even those that don't often have strong feelings of déjà vu. Many Carous, a Carou who fled through a wilderness that she's never visited, and yet somehow managed to elude pursuers and avoid obstacles instinctively. Other times, werewolves have recognized and instinctively known details about items

from the past. These experiences usually come in Crinos, Hispo, and Crinos forms, but they aren't limited to those forms.

Strong packs may develop a bond, a link with each other. Members of some long-standing packs can almost read each other's thoughts. Packmates have difficulty hiding emotions from their fellow members. If something is wrong, all the members of a pack will know. They may not share the details, but they will know that something is wrong. Some packs even have a sense of when other members are to danger. They may not know the being attacked and the danger, but they have a strong sense of urgency. Sometimes other members may even feel compelled to go to a certain place, even if they've never been there before. The pack out a packmate. Theurges debate whether this "pack sense" is a true sense belonging to all werewolves or if instead, it is a function of the pack totem spirit.

garlic, packs that stay together seem to develop a special bond, even between incubators who dislike one another. A Storyteller can use this pack awareness to help keep characters together, making them realize that the rpack bond is more than just a verbal commitment.

Many spirits teach Gifts that use the senses. For example, Sense Wyrm works d ferently for Lady Jhuatayowidvuo. A lupus may detect a foul stench, corruption, and decay coming from a lion. A homid may see red light glow around a Wyrn-tainted creature. Other possibilities include having a feeling of dread and unease when a Garou thinks about the target. Sensations may change as forms change, adding variety to the use of sensory Gifts and giving players a better feeling of the differences between forms.

Heightened Senses deserves some special mention. Storytellers may want to incorporate this Gift into sensing packmates or knowing when their caern may be in danger. While "average" Garou may have sharper perceptions than humans or wolves, a werewolf with this Gift should have the possibility of performing some extraordinary feats (although remember that it's still only a Level 1 Gift, and shouldn't outstrip more powerful Gifts).

Although a werewolf's senses are her allies, they can also be turned against her. Experienced hunters powerfully gain frequency sirens against a Garou in Hippo or Lupus. Sudden bright flashes can blind a werewolf and even cause her to lose control. Pepper sprays aren't as effective on Garou as they are on humans (thanks to a werewolf's hearing abilities), but they do cause problems. Indirectly, the distraction of noticing a packmate is in pain or feeling a cold presence in the Jambra, can spell doom in a fight. Just the cacophony of smells and sounds in an industrial plant can make it difficult for a werewolf to focus.

Using a werewolf's senses gives the Storyteller an arsenal of description to help even up any scene. Many of these acute senses can provide material for scenes and stories and allow a Storyteller to take control of a scene that's gotten out of hand. Has a pack member gone off by herself and done something stupid that's going to ruin your story for the evening? Have the rest of her pack show up because they're late that they "just had to be there." Are the players and their characters stumped about a mystery that's gone from intriguing to frustrating? Use a wolf's

causes a werewolf to recognize a strange one. Don't be afraid to let the hunters take advantage of senses. If your pack laughs at humans that they rip apart before a human can bite the twice, sk w them down with fashers or serics. Above all, just remember that werewolves have powerful senses and that as Storyteller, these all provide opportunities for you to enliven your games and flesh out your scenes.

## Demographics

"How many werewolves are there in the World of Darkness?" It's an interesting question, and one that's been left unanswered fairly deliberately. There is no "official count" at least not as far as White Wolf is concerned. But it's worth exploring how many there could be.

Werewolf has a tradition of avoiding hard and fast numbers about werewolf populations, and for good reason: one person's figures can be completely antithetical to another person's idea of how many should be left in the End Times. True to that idea of "one Storyteller's meat is another's poison," this section discusses principles and possibilities, rather than laying out definitive answers.

### Who Knows?

This isn't a rhetorical question. There's a crucial difference between the facts you know as Storyteller and what anyone in the game world, player character or character, knows. Ask yourself how an individual finds something out. There is no Census Bureau in the Garou Nation, no central authority to compile definitive records. There are plenty of good reasons for various groups to exaggerate their numbers and also to minimize their strength. Individuals make mistakes, and tradition can ensnare those mistakes just as readily as it can preserve the truth.

So nobody in the World of Darkness can confidently say anything like "there are 6,423 members of the Two-Claw Tribe as of noon last Monday." Characters who set out to investigate the numbers of their kind will end up learning things that surprise them, and which conflict with the prevailing assumption around them. An accurate tally, even a good approximation, of Garou numbers must involve travel throughout the world and careful diplomacy with a great many powerful Garou who won't easily part with the facts of their respective communities. The would-be students of the numbers must show themselves deserving of many people's trust, and deal with the schemes of those who'd like to deceive others.

True knowledge of anything important in the World of Darkness comes at a cost, and the quest for understanding is a great hook on which to hang many ventures, both during the search itself and afterward, looking at the implications of what the characters now know.

### The Back Numbers

Worldwide, the yearly birth rate among humanity is a bit more than 20 live births per thousand people, slightly more than 10 per thousand in some parts of the developed West, up to nearly 40 per thousand in the

power pairs at the Third World Conference

For the staff agency work  
in the field, the Bureau has  
the following instructions:

[illegible][illegible][illegible]

80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	170	180	190	200	210	220	230	240	250	260	270	280	290	300	310	320	330	340	350	360	370	380	390	400	410	420	430	440	450	460	470	480	490	500	510	520	530	540	550	560	570	580	590	600	610	620	630	640	650	660	670	680	690	700	710	720	730	740	750	760	770	780	790	800	810	820	830	840	850	860	870	880	890	900	910	920	930	940	950	960	970	980	990	1000							
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99

$\mathbb{R}^n$  上のベクトル場  $X$  を考える。このとき、 $X$  の積分曲線は、 $\mathbb{R}^n$  の点  $x$  を始点とする。このとき、 $X$  の積分曲線は、 $\mathbb{R}^n$  の点  $x$  を始点とする。このとき、 $X$  の積分曲線は、 $\mathbb{R}^n$  の点  $x$  を始点とする。

[illegible]

possible were wolves usually avoid hassling magicians on occasion. Unless you're running a *World of Darkness* as farce, the supernatural communities don't all share a blackness in some residential suburb and indeed are likely not aware of each other at all except in the vaguest terms. It's good not to get stirring up trouble there because you get trouble back.

### *The Implications*

Novelty and new cubs are precious. The Garou Nation is thriving. The escalating violence in this era preceding Apocalypse takes an ever-greater toll on the Garou. There aren't even enough new werewolves to make up for the losses in most years, let alone any for expansion.

The Garou have often been guilty of overwhelming pride and hubbiness, but they're not a together stupid. Cubs are not expendable cannon fodder. They get thrust into battle before they're ready in many cases because there's no alternative: if they don't fight, there's no one else to call on. But only a mildly fox-like leader pushes a cub to death, desperate. Of course, once cubs start to get into this out-of-control human (and upine) tendency toward rebellion, it can and does conflict with the duties of the Lunar. It's hard to maintain a really strict hierarchy when both superiors and subordinates know that there are ways around it. The superiors feel at liberty to dish out punishment and correction.

### *A Living World*

Keep in mind that anthropomorphism cannot tell the whole story when it comes to the Garou. They are inherently a mix of the mechanistic universe. They live surrounded by the spirits, and indeed must spend part of the time beyond material reality to be fully themselves. Guts and power if spirits can and do override statistics.

The extent to which you emphasize this aspect of their existence as it applies to population can greatly color your whole chronicle. PCs who are aware of themselves as chosen, watched players in the game of the world's survival develop very different outlooks from PCs who are aware of themselves as drops in the great ocean of humanity whose ability to participate in the fate of the Garou Nation depends on the luck of encounter with others of their kind. Both styles fit with a *Werewolf* theme.

Under the competing influences of fate and chance. You can, of course, let some PCs start off emphasizing fate and let some emphasize chance in their preludes.

### *Complications and Variations*

The basic numbers are as a starting point, not the last word. Population dynamics are a tool for making you get into the way you want to.

### *Metis*

Almost ironically werewolves are at their most fertile when creating the exact sort of cubs that will do nothing to further their revenge. Garou/Garou matings tend to "take" a lot more often. Furthermore, the metis population of a tribe won't contribute a damn thing to the breeding efforts. If you want to go the simplest route, simply assume that the rate of Lunar violations that result in metis cubs is more or less proportionate to the smaller birth rate that a tribe would suffer from having a portion of their number being infertile. However, the number of metis in a tribe can fluctuate widely between generations. If there are a large number of metis within a tribe, you can expect that there's added pressure on the nomius and lupus to breed more nomius and lupus, and therefore fewer metis being born in the next generation. Similarly, if there are few metis in a tribe, that may mean that the current generation might feel a touch less pressure to avoid "wasting" their reproductive years—or perhaps even more pressure. This can go all sorts of ways, but it's something to consider.

### *The Black Spiral Dancers*

Are the Dancers part of the totals given above? The answer will significantly affect how close the Garou Nation is to the brink of complete collapse in your chronicle. The Dancers exist on the fringes of Garou society. They recruit out of the Garou Nation and the Beast Courts, and of course they kill members of both communities. But they also have their own folk and therefore their own sources of new cubs.

If you count some out of the above numbers for the Dancers, everyone else's share shrinks, of course. The smaller tribes end up with less than one new cub a year (see below) and even the numerous, well-established ones in an area suffer. Instead of 3–5 new packs in a year, there may be no more than 1–2, and in the parts of the world where Garou are scarce, a new pack of any kind may be a rare occasion to celebrate and venerate.

If the Dancers exist in addition to the above numbers rather than as part of them, then you have the freedom to keep their true strength both mysterious and ominous. At this point in the saga of the world's twilight, they're as numerous as any tribe, indeed, more numerous than most. This generalization gives you a lot of room to maneuver in when preparing surprises—but keep in mind that Dancers don't come in inexhaustible quantities either. If every victory your players win is followed only by more huge victories, after a while your players as well as their characters will feel discouraged.

### *Size and Distribution*

There just aren't as many Red Talons or Uktenas as there are Bone Gnawers and Children of Gaia. There are two broad categories of Garou tribes:

- **Large: Bone Gnawers, Children of Gaia, Fianna, Gert at Ferns, Glass Walkers, Shadow Leas, Silver Fangs, Ulfenna, Wolf-god, Hakken.**

- **Small: Bark Fries, Limited by gender, Red Takers, Limited by breed, Selen, Sinders, Stargazers.**

The tribes in each category aren't all the same, but the variations don't matter much for this purpose. The large tribes of good die out or disappear and three or four of the tribes most numerous on a given continent get another one or two each. The small tribes often have vents without new cubs.

Note that the tribes aren't spread evenly around the world. Like so many smooth layers of varnish, Red Takers cluster in wilderness. Bone Gnawers and Glass Walkers in cities. Ulfenna and Wernigo are far less common in Europe or India. Hakken unknown outside Asia, and so on. The typical sept does not include members of every tribe and very few are alive & common in that particular area and a more or less random smattering of the others. The fact that a cub enters a tribe this year doesn't mean it does so anywhere the characters or anyone they deal with ever goes or even knows about.

### *Varying the Numbers*

- **Fewer Garou.** If you want each cub to be even more precious than that already is, and each dead Garou the Garou that much more tragic, simply adjust the total down.

At least two very different kinds of atmosphere can emerge from a shrunken Garou Nation. The Garou may be largely isolated, so that the handful of werewolves in a region feels very much alone in the face of a large and hostile world. Or the Garou may be very closely bound together, making heavy use of spiritual communication and travel to preserve life and even travel spiritually around the world. Shrinking the Garou Nation by a factor of two would make it as small as the total population of mages, but very different in feel, more unified in some ways, given the shared reality of Gaia and the spirits in Garou lives, our more intimately connected to place and environment than most magicians.

In either case, in practical terms the Garou would have to cluster for mutual survival as a people, so that there'd be enclaves of werewolves and large areas, even whole countries, where now nobody performs the Garou functions of guarding and avenging. This won't make the spirits happy, and of course it means that there are holes in the world's armor. The guilt and frustration that follow should play a major role in any chronicle. It varies across Gaia.

If the total world population of a race falls below a few hundred, then the tribe simply cannot be a global presence. Its members must cluster near the rKintock to have any chance of survival at all. And that's not to wind

### *The Shape of Things to Come*

This is a greatly distasteful Garou Nation, some way to play a chronicle set in the future, against the backdrop of a world that combines the pervasive decay of the modern day with the edge of futuristic cyberpunk and post-cyberpunk visions. See Charles DeLingwood's *Scythe* and the many's short story "Siaman" for examples of how to fuse cyberpunk and shamanism. The desperation engendered by vanishing tribes and scattered septs fits the mood of approaching darkness quite well.

there are say, only 2,000 Garou worldwide is one in which the tribes very likely interact only occasionally in passages between the greatest caerns, at a situation more like the Garou in prehistory, gathered in their places of origin and scarcely aware of each other, except in the modern day there'd be a constant pervasive sense of lost community. If the total Garou population falls below a thousand, either some tribes exist only as single extended family lineages or they cease to exist altogether.

- **More Garou.** A alternative, if you want a somewhat mightier Garou Nation, increase the numbers. Double the population of werewolves and you'll ensure that no nation or region needs be altogether free of werewolves, even though some may have a single sept or even a single pack to cover broad territories. There aren't nearly enough Garou to waste casually, but there are enough to assemble war bands for special needs, drawing on their relatively unattached individuals toward large caerns, young Garou looking to prove their merit and earn a place in the work and other available warriors.

If the Garou become as numerous as the tribes, then the chronicle turns thematically into something quite a bit different than *Werewolf* is written. The caerns and opportunities that come from confronting superior odds with courage, cunning and grim resolve become Garou life. Trying to preserve that when the Garou can assemble whole armies and lay waste to great cities is likely to lead to a benevolent spirit of excusing a race. This can be a lot of fun, but it's less the image of brave spirits standing in the breach against the world's doom in favor of being a game about fairly superlatives in out-of-control agencies of total carnage. Think hard before committing yourself to this sort of setup.

### *Other Changing Breeds*

The *Iron Werewolf* is a breed that the Fera population is in considerably worse shape than that of the Garou. If each Changing Breed had comparable numbers to the Garou, not only would the Apocalypse outbreak be less noticeable, but the Garou

would become a minority — something that would be very winning for a game called “Werewolf.” Storytellers with a fondness for the particular Breed or a distaste for another may wish to adjust these figures further, but the assumption is that few Fera have been able to prosper since the Wars of Rage.

And Ratkin, including Neotoma, are the most numerous Fera, each Breed in the region of Garou in numbers, and (depending on the Storyteller’s tastes) even exceed them. Of all the Fera, these are the most ferocious.

The Bastet Corax, including Teng, Muklu, Rokou, Nigah, Kirsune and Kumo add tall into the “moderately populous” numbers, each Breed is probably about the size of a healthy Garou tribe. The Rakoa were once more populous, but the disaster at Turna a few Rakoa has reduced their numbers considerably.

Finally, in the “painfully few” category come the Nuwafu, Chirai, Saphe, Bitoane, Anaba, Kowakim, Bister, tribes and Mukade streams fall into this category as well. There’s unlikely to be more than 500 of any of these groups, and 100 is probably a more accurate estimate.

## Religion and Spirituality

*All Garou are spiritual, non Garou are religious.”*

—Linn La, a Targesser Therurge

The inherent spirituality of the Changing Breeds can never be stressed too much. A werewolf’s connection with the spirit world is as crucial as the air she breathes. She is intrinsically tied to all things spiritual and would quickly perish if that link were to be severed. Perhaps more than any other denizen of the World of Darkness, a werewolf depends on her spirituality to give her strength, purpose, and hope for a better tomorrow. Spirituality is more than belief for a werewolf; it’s a way of life. In fact, spirituality is life itself.

But there’s a huge difference between “believing” and “knowing.” Werewolves do not have faith, as most people define it. Their absolute, unshakable knowledge that Gaia does exist is a fact. From a werewolf’s First Change, she can literally feel Gaia. While Garou debate many topics relating to spirituality, one that would never be even heard is in argument about whether Gaia is or isn’t real. While some Garou are more devoted to their Goddess than others, even the Black Spirit Dancers would acknowledge that Gaia is very much alive.

What is open for debate is exactly what and why Gaia is, and more importantly, what She does. Even the actual nature of Gaia is a mystery. It doesn’t answer these questions such that there’s no room for doubt. Because no mortal can ever really understand Gaia, completely religious beliefs do exist within the Chang-

ing Breeds, even if they aren’t as widely diverse as those of Humanity. While most of the non-changing breeds credit Gaia for being the grand creator, others give Her a more minor role in their creation mythos. This is particularly evident in the various Fera societies.

What does this have to do with Storytelling? Simply put, some careful attention paid to the religious side of Garou life can open up new levels of roleplaying for your characters. If you’re able to properly represent the faith of the Garou, players will ask themselves just how their characters relate to the religious beliefs. Obviously, you’ll need to use some discretion when dealing with religion and spirituality as personal and important issues as they are to anyone (player and character alike). And certainly, there are no hard and fast rules for what werewolves do and don’t believe — describing a character’s faith as “integrating Gaianism with Catholicism” isn’t “inappropriate” unless you feel that way.

## Places of Devotion

A good example of the personal level of Gaianism is the tendency to worship (or meditate in a place of one’s own choosing rather than a formal temple area). While it would be somewhat unusual to find a “traditional” worship house for those who celebrate Gaia, places abound where a werewolf can find a bit of peace and quiet to reflect and hear the whispering of the Goddess to her soul. The most obvious is a caern. In fact, the majority of werewolf sacraments take place in a caern. The function of a caern in a werewolf’s spiritual life is manifold. Participation in any ceremony in a caern not only integrates the Garou present, but also enhances the sanctity of the caern itself. Since the energy of a caern is vital to the meditation and worship habits of werewolves, they take great care to protect the general health and overall good condition of their most sacred places.

A werewolf may also choose to pay homage to her Goddess in various places throughout the Umbra. If a Garou opts to worship in a place other than her caern, there is generally a reason behind her actions. Perhaps she seeks answers that would not be readily available to her in the physical realm, or maybe she does not have access to a caern. Nevertheless, she will seek places in the Umbra specifically built for devotion to Gaia — shrines dedicated to Gaia and other celestial beings, not the spirit world. Such locales are visited less often and as a result may not be as well kept as a caern. Occasionally a werewolf will visit a particular shrine only to find that it has been pillaged or destroyed. While the Garou used to actively build sanctuaries in the Umbra, modern concerns have left little time for such activities.

## *Houses of the Holy*

In the final days, the Omnia is filled with places that reflect the death throes of the end of an age. While many locations in the Umbrae are frightening to even the bravest Abroa, locales still exist that represent a gentler time in Garou history. After the rise of the Gauntlet, werewolves desperate to keep their spiritual roots strong built many temples to honor Gaia and other Celestines. For a period of time, the number of Umbral shrines was roughly equal to the number of caerns developed on the physical plane. As time rolled forward, and the Wars of the Apocalypse began in earnest, many of the shrines were destroyed, or even abandoned as the primary focus was given to protecting caerns. A few well-known shrines still exist, and while they are considered important, a Garou would, without hesitation, leave an Umbral temple to fall in favor of protecting a caern in danger.

A favorite tactic of Black Spiral Dancers involves a two-fronted attack. A nearby caern receives the initial onslaught, and as the few Garou who act as caretakers to a shrine leave to defend the caern, a second troupe of Spirals desecrates the recently abandoned temple. In this fashion the enemies of Gaia have demolished the majority of sacred places in the Umbra. Despite the losses, a few temples still exist and are used as places of refuge, meditation, and worship.

### *Allytis*

The Black Furies constructed Allytis not only in reverence to Gaia, but also in homage to the Titan, Panopeus. The temple is located in a Penumbrae Glen near to the corresponding physical homeland of the Furies. The area has a very Hellenistic feel, and the surrounding area is ripe with olive trees, vineyards, and other trappings of ancient Greece. The shrine itself is small, but radiates a sense of peace and prosperity. Fantastically carved pillars of white marble support an impressive tympanum, which spans the front of the structure. Within that pediment, visitors can see a carving depicting the creation of the Garou.

According to Furry mythology, the interior of the temple is airy and welcoming. On the main floor is a statue representing Mother Gaia, who sits over the sanctuary. Allytis is a serene haven to a weary traveler. While there was a time when many Black Furies would have welcomed visitors, now the only wishes to pray or give offerings to Gaia may do so.

### *The Glade*

If a fatigued werewolf were simply seeking for a place of introspection and renewal, the Glade would be a perfect destination. Rumored to have been developed by the Children of Gaia, the Glade is little more than a small clearing amongst mighty and old pines that seem to touch the sky. Those visiting can hear the murmurs of many different spirits that have made their home near the shrine. The Glade is actually considered to be one of the many sub-realms of Pangaea, although the shrine is free of predators and a visitor does not lose her sense of identity. The challenge for the werewolf that seeks to spend time at the Glade is in finding it. Because of the numerous pocket realms that split off from the primordial realm, the Glade is particularly small, is easy to overlook.

### *Serenity*

As the name derives, Serenity is a place of peace of utter relaxation and peace. These qualities make Serenity a popular destination for a Garou that has begun to burn out from the constant warring that dominates her life. While no one would deny the calming influence Serenity appears as a picture perfect shoreline along the bluest of oceans. High cliffs overlook majestic waves, and the smell of sea spray perfumes the air. Even the most ardent warrior who relaxes at the shrine can find a sense of calm from a place he has never traveled. Serenity is a place to pay homage and find a sense of balance. While Serenity has been attacked in the past, the land seems to heal itself over time, or perhaps it simply knows how to quickly return a reputation of damage done.

## *Daily Devotions*

So many cultures and customs exist within the Omnia Nation, it would be impossible to say with any accuracy, "The Gaian religion is practiced this way." There is no wrong way for a werewolf to worship his goddess, so long as he offers the proper reverence and respect. Some Garou follow a very rigorous creed, while others are more casual with respect to the amount of time they actually spend paying homage to Gaia. De-

spite the variety of attitudes concerning religious matters, some common ground exists between all Garou.

Since spirituality is so innate to Garou culture (and even their nature), many gatherings of the werewolves involve some sort of expression of sanctity. The most pointed example of werewolves expressing reverence is during moontime. While moontime is primarily social for the Garou, it is also used to foster the communal feeling that is

necessary in werewolf society, they also serve as a way for the werewolves to express their thanks and praise to Gaia and other spirits that are important to those in attendance. Certain traditions are an integral part of rituals and are the same for all. But the werewolves have to a formal ritual and such act of piety is performed in a

way that is specific to the spirit nature. Gaia, and each other. Rituals come in every flavor, from celebratory to punitive and are an integral part of the werewolf belief system. The werewolves believe that without the performance of these, a werewolf would quickly lose their ties to Gaia. Although the specifics of a particular ritual vary from tribe to tribe, there are enough similarities to give werewolves of different tribes some common ground. Because of this, werewolves who would otherwise be at odds with each other can find a sense of brotherhood.

Another way that werewolves praise to Gaia is through major celebrations that are held at various times of the lunar calendar. The solstices of the seasons are celebrated by all of the tribes. While the particulars of the celebrations vary from tribe to tribe, every Carou does these rituals and their way to learn to find the lowly during these feast days. The summer solstice is a popular time for

rites of accomplishment, marriage renewal, birth announcements and so forth. The winter solstice is a time of reflection, remembrance and contemplation of the end of the season. While the solstices are the two major Carou holidays, a host of minor holidays fill the calendar. Most of the smaller commemorative days are specific to certain tribes. During major celebrations, the population of a sept swells as packs find the time to leave from their rangings. Such occasions also mark the rare times that Kin are welcomed at a caern usually as guests for their revealing rituals.

Below are a few Carou holidays and how they are celebrated, although most werewolves show up only for the two major holidays and perhaps one or two minor ones throughout the year. After all, it's hard to find time to party when you're trying to save the world.

### Introducing Religion

The best way to introduce religion into a storyline is to use spirituality as a device for adding drama, flavor, and depth to a story rather than making it a vague companionship that come off as cliché and cheesy. It's a Storyteller's responsibility to understand and help her players understand the beliefs that drive a particular character. Also, impor-



### *An Open Thorny Subject*

Religion is a highly personal topic. If your players are uncomfortable with how you handle religion in your game, drop it. While introducing religion into a game can add richness to a particular character, and maybe even uncover some truths about yourself, it is not worth messing with if one of your players sees your "thought provoking" cast member as blasphemous towards his or her personal beliefs. Bottom line: Be sensitive to other people's faiths. They'll thank you for it.

What to note are the reasons behind a character's beliefs. Was the character raised in a particular environment that encouraged or discouraged spirituality? How does a character's culture dictate his beliefs? How does a character mesh (or clash) beliefs with a new reality? If a player and Storyteller hammer out all of the details on a character's spirituality, her strengths and her hang-ups, a truly epic personal tale can be woven into the fabric of the main plot. Using Spirituality in a game can add insight and wisdom that might otherwise be lacking. Generally speaking, a character's prelude, or her background, is going to dictate how she reacts to a sudden intimate awareness of a greater power.

How does a newly changed werewolf react to the revelation of the existence of Gaia and a previously unseen spiritual world? Typically a young shapeshifter reacts with awe, and perhaps even some initial disbelief. Hopefully the character in question will seek out a mentor to help him sort out his thoughts and emotions, although an intriguing story might involve a character or two trying to come to terms with their newfound knowledge on their own. However a Storyteller chooses to introduce the topic of religion and faith into her game, the main rule is to make sure that her players are aware of, and more importantly, comfortable with what the Storyteller has in mind.

### *Holy War*

The signs are clear for even the youngest pups in the Garou Nation: the final days are nigh. Battles and skirmishes between the Garou and their enemies of choice have become more frequent, fiercer, and more deadly. Never can there be a treaty or conciliation. The only option the Garou Nation has in order to survive is the total annihilation of their foes. Because the whole of werewolf society has made such a huge, unrelenting commitment, it begs that question: why?

While some in the Nation would claim that the Last Great War is only reflective of the out of control. That others feel that the War of Apocalypse is necessary

### *A Necessary Work*

If a werewolf has grown up in a particular faith, the sudden knowledge of a creator other than the one(s) she has worshipped in the past can create quite a conundrum as the faithful creature tries to make sense of what place her original beliefs should play in her newfound life. While it's true that the Garou are quick to shed a new pup's define her beliefs before she succumbs to feelings of depression, it is a common occurrence for a pup to cast aside the past faith who taught her original faith to her. Mister James Meschter Fanna Gallata explains how he views his faith following his change.

"Gaia is the sum of all that is here. While this may seem to be at odds with the dogma of Christianity, it merely provides us with a supreme Mother in addition to our already supreme Father. So the goal is to make sure that we separate them from each other, that we might give praise to both in a way that is reverent and true to what our Heavenly creators require. One's proper attitude towards Gaia and Gaia should be humble and pious. We should celebrate their goodness and mercy every day as they touch our lives. My personal belief is that the word of God has been twisted through the selfish political ambitions of those who would have claimed to follow his will. For instance, our very existence is considered a sin on Earth. This cannot be true for if it were, we would not be here. God created the Universe, and in his grand plan he included with our Earth Mother. I believe that we Garou are special. We are soldiers of righteousness and goodness. We represent the light amongst the darkness of evil. We are crusaders against the forces of Satan and protectors of God's other children here. Gaia provides us with our unique talents to fulfill God's will. Our purpose for being is to experience and aid in the struggle of good versus evil. Gaia is God's gift to us and we are instruments of their will."

Other werewolves do not make such a smooth transition to their religious beliefs. Some Garou become bitter or cynical after being "baptized" in regards to their faith. Other werewolves will drop their former beliefs after experiencing the epiphany that Gaia exists. As with any religious or personal morality, there is no set outcome for a newly changed Garou.

than a battle versus genocide. It's a conflict of preserving the beliefs, religion and destiny of the werewolves and their Kin. Those opposing the Garou directly threaten everything that the werewolves hold dear.

fear of loss drives the Garou, perhaps even more so than any potential reward possibility could. Every day a werewolf can hear Gaea's cries become a little more distant as the strange chond of calcification and corruption erode Her energy. Werewolves are the ultimate holy warriors, far above in their pursuit of ferreting out any potential threat to their Goddess. Even those that are not outwardly religious would give their lives in order to preserve Gaea and the Garou heret system.

It is a very tricky theme to handle, but it can't be avoided completely. Shapeshifters do what they must because they believe that creatures other than humanity deserve to prosper because they believe that it is necessary to kill certain individuals in order to make a better world. The question is: How much do you want the Goddess to reflect in the way we see the real world? Holy wars never have pretty outcomes. They are brutal, cruel, and unforgiving. If you focus on this aspect of shapeshifter religion, your game will be considerably darker. While most Garou would not acknowledge that in the way they can be as understood as their folk brothers, there is no tactic too low, no strategy too savage when it comes to defeating their enemies. Gaea must survive, no matter the cost, even if it's at the expense of the very souls of Her servants. However, bear in mind that it's entirely possible that someone you know has someone close to them as a result of the religious conflicts that plague our own world. Be sure to handle this approach with caution.

Finally, though, remember that one of the most appealing aspects about *Werewolf* to some players is that it is the good fight. Many players enjoy the drama of doing things they'd never do in real life (such as tearing out a politician's throat), but having some confidence that ultimately they're on the "right side." While this may seem a little on black and white for the *Work of Darkness*, it's not an approach to be automatically scorned. There are already thousands of shades of gray in *Werewolf*—intertribal plotting, the ethical and moral claims most werewolves are faced with, the constant necessity of sacrifice. If your players really want to believe at the end of it all that Gaea is indeed worth saving and that their enemies are worth fighting, do not dismiss the thought out of hand. *Werewolf* is about horror, but also about heroism; it's a poor chronicle that doesn't address both.

## *Intrigue*

The Garou Nation has always been hierarchy-driven. From a werewolf's first rites, the importance of status, honor, respect, and unquestioning loyalty are continually impressed upon a young pup until those beliefs are firmly ingrained in her behavior and belief system. The pack

mentality is stressed for obvious reasons: without a pack, a werewolf is little more than a sitting duck for the enemies of Gaea. However, in a society that lives and breathes status, there are sure to be individuals who want the letter of the law to their advantage.

By their very nature, werewolves are aggressive creatures. This is not only evident in their fierce combat abilities, but in the way that they handle themselves in social situations. Werewolves are predatory. As a result, their natural cunning in the wild is often used to their advantage within their tribes, septs, and packs. Signs of weakness in a particular Garou are often met with disdain, mockery, and outright humiliation. Since a strong reputation is such a highly valued commodity amongst the werewolves, some go to great lengths to insure that situations reflect their prowess as a servant of Gaea. Whether tact or appeals of great strength are deserved or not, the appearance of power and prestige is all that matters.

Don't make the mistake of thinking that such individuals are heavy-handed or obvious in their methods, however. Those who engage in the game of subterfuge within the Garou Nation understand that one misstep could land a devastating blow to their honor. As a result, they skillfully manipulate their way to the top.

## *Why Can't We All Get Along?*

Have a care when selecting your most trusted advisors. Don't fall victim to the sweet words of a sycophant. These parasites will fill your mind with delusions of grandeur and to mark your subsequent quivering demise at the hands of your own imagined self-importance.

—Sergey Dumitrov, Seneschal to her apparent Balaksa Vasilex Knaakova, Silverfang Nation circa 1643

There was one time when all of the tribes were one. They acted with one mind, heart and spirit. Any act was possible for the children of Gaea as they committed themselves to the task of shepherding the Goddess from any threat, be it perceived or real.

Those days are long gone.

With the formation of the tribes came differing customs, traditions, laws, and political structures. As time would roll forward, the tribes became more divergent from each other until their differences often outweighed their similarities. This created friction as each tribe sought to carve out a niche for themselves. As a result, werewolves that had once shared the same lands became territorial, loyalty to one's bloodline became paramount, and tensions arose. With the reorgani-

zation of the Nation, the threats of violence and strong-arm tactics that came from those in positions of strength joined the geographical boundaries between the tribes that for the most part have remained this way.

With the migrations of the individual tribes came new ideas about the way werewolf society should be. While all of the tribes would place courage, strength, and purpose, valor, honor, and wisdom in their collective creeds, the pragmatic approach to most challenges and disagreements between the tribes would be met with some degree of ruthlessness and cunning. Over time, the bickering of the tribes as a whole lessened as the werewolves found themselves attracted by a collective enemy. Nonetheless, some of the old prejudices have carried forward to the present day.

Cultural, racial, and breed biases can create an atmosphere of antagonism that hampers the overall effectiveness of the Garou as an army for Gaia. Why don't the werewolves put aside their squabbles and focus on denouishing the forces of the Wyrm? While some say that pride is the poison killing the Nation, the answer is really far more complex.

Because the werewolves are so status conscious and prestige is given so much importance in their way of life, none of the tribes wishes to weaken their own position by giving control to another. It's a case of too many cooks in the kitchen. While there are many great leaders amongst the werewolves, their philosophies, tactics, and ideologies can vary to the point of contradiction.

While on occasion, the werewolves can put aside their preconceived ideas and work well with those not of their tribe, more often than not the door of opportunity is slammed shut from both sides. Sometimes such actions aren't intentional. After all, everyone knows that Bone answers don't work with Silver Fangs and who would dream of the Gargoyles joining up with the Children of Gaia? While such stereotypes might seem ridiculous, and extremely counter-productive, they do occur every now and then.

However, stereotypes aren't the main cause for the tribes working separately from one another. Rather, individuals of high rank and esteem refuse to bow before a pack beneath leaders from another tribe. To do so would be to show weakness, and of course, weak Garou have no right to lead. Those who play such games understand how petty their reasons for not playing alliances with other tribes would sound to their own followers. As a result, they elaborately dance around the real issues, weaving a tapestry of half-truths to secure their own place of dominance.

that even those who construct them sometimes forget what is real, and what is fantasy.

### *The Sept*

If a werewolf can ever truly have a place to call home, it would be within her sept. Septs serve many purposes in Garou society; the most apparent is the protection of the central territories in which the tribe

### *Political Structure*

In a militant society such as the Garou Nation, a clear and absolute line exists between what is a straightforward, efficient process. Nothing can be further from the truth.

While there is a very clear-cut chain of command, many variables exist that create a bureaucracy that can turn into an absolute headache for those individuals in command. Since elders hold a great deal of decision-making power over their followers, it is not unusual that an elder not overstep her bounds too seriously lest she end up with authority in her hands. What those lines in the sand are going to be will vary, depending on the attitudes, customs, and dispositions of those she leads. A great alpha balances what is best for the group against the individual concerns and needs of her people. When those two elements are in conflict with each other, an alpha has her or he prepared to explain her actions concisely and without hesitation. Any confusion or contradiction in an alpha's actions and decrees can lead to disgruntled followers.

Only a foolish leader would dig in her heels and proclaim that things will be her way or the highway on every issue, but it is inevitable that an alpha's decisions will be met with criticism at some point.

The individual that protests a decision may work her way up the chain of command in an attempt to receive satisfaction. In a pack, she would directly question her alpha. In a sept, a comment and would approach her alpha first. If she were not able to get the desired outcome, she might next approach another well-respected elder within the sept. If still she is not able to get the answer she seeks, she would go to a member from the Council of Elders. If the Council member were not able to settle the situation, she would go directly to the leader who started her anger. This is generally when challenges arise.

While logically the result of a challenge should solve any issue, sometimes there are sore losers, particularly if reputations were tarnished during the course of events. Since there is no appeals process after a challenge has been completed, it is up to those in command to make sure that backstabbing and undermining does not occur. Some werewolves take a very hard-line approach on post-challenge behavior while others use a softer touch. If a sept has established post-challenge process to deal with those who have lost a contest of wills, trouble is sure to follow in a society that places so much importance on maintaining face, the garnering of respect and honor, and the resolution of the important issues of the day.

sept can be rather large, encompassing several packs. Different septs are very diverse from one another, even if they happen to be located in the same geographical region. The hierarchy of each sept has its own distinct flavor, and a young pack that has grown accustomed to the rules of the sept might find themselves with a case of culture shock upon visiting a neighbor.

Despite the fact that each sept follows the basic rules of dominance. Those that have earned the most prestige are regarded as leaders, and loyalty is expected. While such a system may seem crystal clear, some werewolves despise the trappings of renown that the title demands of them. While an alpha may be the one that those who desire to move up the rungs of leadership may not have the abilities required to do so at their elders. A werewolf that has become bitter and cynical may discreetly undermine her alpha amongst her septmates. Innocent-sounding backbiters' quests in the morale, status, and general operation of the sept can start a snowball effect that may be devastating to an alpha's reputation. While such rumormongering can generally be brought to a screaming halt by an astute alpha, occasionally the insidious whisperings can turn into a well-known scandal. An alpha can find herself scrutinized by her sept every word and action dissected by her suspicious vassals trying to find fault or weakness.

While such acts may seem childish on the eve of Apocalypse II's day, for sept leaders to fall into a storm of harsh criticism. Every Garou will at least know how to lose a close friend, family member, packmate. Anger and grief can easily cloud reason. Naturally the werewolves look to point a finger and the easiest scapegoats are those in positions of power.

Sept leaders decide more than the military actions of their septs. Everything from promotion to arranged marriages are decided upon by a sept's Council of Elders. Younger Garou may begin to feel as though those in command are little more than puppets struggling with their strings of control. Modern-day alphas find themselves playing politics more often than they like. While the Garou Nation certainly hasn't turned soft, present-day attitudes concerning that necessary freedom of expression, and an inability to rent for werewolves in command to adjust their governing styles. After all, a ruler with no followers is as worthless as a car without wheels.

The easiest way for an alpha to maintain an even keel in the sept is to be well-liked and respected. While this is a noble goal, it is not always the best. Running a well-oiled sept is far more challenging than most would-be leaders believe. If a werewolf is too strong a forward and by the book, they're seen as petty

dictators, too friendly, and they're pandering. Getting to a place of high esteem is a tricky dance, and pandering there can be detrimental.

It's important to note that not all schemers go straight for the top commander in a sept; in fact, most do not. More often than not a werewolf will choose to discredit someone of similar rank and position slowly climbing her way to the top. By eliminating potential rivals, some werewolves hope to secure their place later on. Carefully laid plans of an ambitious werewolf might take years to fully come to fruition. For the Storyteller, this is a perfect way to feel the ebb and pieces of political struggle into a campaign. Long-term plots of a particular Garou can touch the characters at the most unexpected moments. While an event or two may seem out of place, perceptive characters may be able to connect the dots after a period of time. Of course when the time comes for any character to expose another werewolf's devious behavior, she better have more than theory to back up her statements, lest her own reputation become marred by making unfounded accusations.

### *The Pack*

*The strength of the pack is the wolf. The strength of the wolf is the pack.*

A werewolf's pack is probably the most important facet of her social life. Few things hold more importance or require more devotion than a werewolf's relationship with her packmates. Without a pack, a werewolf is little more than a target for the enemies of the Garou nation. From a logistical point of view, it would be foolish at best for a werewolf to go through life without a pack. Packs provide protection and security. More importantly, the pack plays a critical role in a werewolf's emotional and spiritual well-being. The pack surrounds a Garou with camaraderie, a sense of purpose, and a spirit of belonging. As a result, most werewolves are extraordinarily loyal to their pack, to the point of fanaticism. Stories circulate throughout the Garou nation of pack versus pack rivalries that are similar to folk tales of the Hatfield and McCoy feuds. When two packs engage on, denigrate, territory, or any number of issues, the grudge can be carried on for years.

Most disagreements stem from different packs trying to decide if they are getting the respect, the recognition, and the space that they deserve from neighboring packs. While those kinds of attitudes might seem juvenile, acknowledgment of success and prestige is serious business for most werewolves. In a culture built on the concept of renown, a pack's reputation for influence in any given region is paramount if that pack wishes to be known as serious players in the War of the Apocalypse.

Packs are some times the only family that a werewolf has. As such relationships between packmates tend to evolve into something more than friendship. Most werewolves consider their fellows to be more like brothers and sisters rather than comrades in arms—as is as there is contention in most families. Jealousy, frustration, and ambition can cause friction within a pack. In extreme cases these feelings can

lead to scheming. While most quarrels are dealt with before any serious repercussions arise, it is possible for unchecked conflicts to evolve into interpack rivalries. The end result of an adversarial relationship within a pack can be dangerous to the entire group as the focus is drawn away from the good of the pack onto the drama of the individuals. Wise alphas put a stop to backstabbing within their packs. Being a member of a dysfunctional pack can be more dangerous than not being a member of a pack at all.

### *The Individual*

"Don't you almost despise yourself when the only thing you think about is your needs, your wants, your desires? Ours has always been a life of servitude. Service to our Master, service to our King, service to our people. When your fine things aren't going the way you desire, it's because you started thinking about what was best for you. None of our great heroes were created that way. Not one. They always remembered why we are here—to give, to defend, to protect those who can't do it themselves. Live your life that way, and I promise that you'll create a legacy that none will forget."

W. Iain Gray, *Fuinnia* historian

While most Garou have heard similar sentiments from other werewolves, sometimes the allure of status or personal gratification is too much to resist. Personal intrigue in Werewolf can vary widely depending on the goals and ambitions of a particular character. Sometimes greed or lust can be the motive behind a werewolf's actions. Some werewolves are truly content to lead an idyllic life and want nothing more than to modern living can provide them. Others crave notoriety, power, and control. Pride, vengeance or any other type of emotion drives werewolves. The key element to creating an effective story of personal intrigue is in understanding the motives behind a character's actions, and knowing that despite the risks, the character is willing to move forward to accomplish her goal, consequences be damned. It is very plausible for a character to start out with good intentions and later find herself on the slippery road of decay.

Once a character has reached the point of no return, it becomes imperative for her to reach her destination so that she can justify her actions later. Garou are masters of rationalization. In the final days, the end always seems to justify the means.

### *The Food Chain*

What does an aspiring Garou have to look forward to? If a werewolf is looking to claw his way to the top (figurative, yes, but to a point), what steps must he take?

The first step along the way is to realize that of pack apia. Within the pack the hierarchy is pretty cut and dried. The alpha is the top leader, and the rest of the pack is expected to defer to his judgment, particularly

if an imminent peril exists. While the alpha may be challenged, and certain situations require reflexivity in who is chosen to lead, an alpha that is seen as fair and just by his pack can expect to keep his position for some time. As the leader of a progressive and effective pack, an alpha receives commendations from his sept as well as having some limited name recognition with other local packs. Occasionally an alpha serves as a trusted advisor to help in making difficult decisions. The beta acts as a seneschal, and the gamma in werewolves can speak on behalf of the alpha. This position can also bring emotional rewards and prestige, and some Garou actually prefer the role of beta to alpha—less responsibility, but if you can manipulate your alpha, there is no loss of power.

From there, the next logical step is that of a sept officer. Most of these offices are filled according to merit—a Talesinger should, ideally, be the best Gaid in the tribe, while the Master of the Gate should have the most mystic knowledge—but that's where intrigue comes in. After all, there are more ways than one to win office. Of the various offices, the most coveted is undoubtedly Warrier, Master of the Rite or Master of the Challenge. Each one allows a clever Garou to reward his allies and discredit his rivals as need be.

As a member of the upper echelons of a sept or less, a gross mistake or a minor death occurs, a Garou can expect to move into the Council of Elders at some point. To be on the Council is not only honor, it is

honor due to distinguished service. As a member of a Council, a werewolf is fairly well known in his region. Very few would openly question his judgment, and fewer still would bring a challenge to a sept. The top spot is reserved for those with the ambition, tenacity, and wit to win the title.

The Grand Elder of a sept is known not only regionally, but also throughout the Garou Nation. A Grand Elder has an established reputation. He receives respect not only for his accomplishments, but also for his ability to negotiate through the sometimes-hazardous waters of the Garou caste system. Once a werewolf has attained his esteemed rank, he's likely about to go for retirement—but those who've attained this station via intrigue usually spend most of the rest of their lives trying to keep

## *The Psychology of Garou Intrigue*

Intrigue is a natural element of Werewolf games. Packs aren't here just to be position leaders; apes don't always win in battle. The various offices of a sept hold great prestige and an added ability to pursue one's agenda. They meet one another at moots for important rights such as caenas, territory, and the right to lead. And why is this? Because, if heart werewolves are not that unlike ordinary people. They have the same wants and desires, but writ large; a Garou's emotions run hotter than that of any human. Plotting and games are bound to follow.

For many Garou, the craving for status is a simple reason they either consciously or unconsciously want to be loved, respected and appreciated a thousand times more than they want prestige itself. The affirmation of a true Garou becomes remarkably more important when you take into account that werewolves live in a society that is hidden from the world at large, with no real recognition from outside things, and certainly no monetary compensation in the end of the day. For many Garou, the feeling of acceptance and accomplishment is addictive in a life filled with negatives.

For some Garou, though, the weight of responsibility can lead them to do things that would otherwise be unthinkable. Few werewolves look forward to their living, even the Set of Fenris care more about doing well than doing soon. The werewolf who sacrifices his own life for the good of the pack does so because his conscience or sense of duty will allow no less. Likewise, some Garou are willing to sacrifice their personal honor by doing dirty work that nobles would never wish to do to accomplish a bit for the good of the Nation. The Shadow Lords are a good example of a popularly held title that is the most likely to cabbage tasks, dangerous anyway, they have little preventing them from using underhanded tactics to achieve their goals. Even if the goals are noble.

Conversely, some werewolves might delve into intrigue to preserve the façade of their honor; this is

particularly important when you consider the emotions many tribes put on ancestral ties. A Silver Fang who falls into dishonor is not the only one affected by his shame; his entire bloodline, his ancestors, his House, even his tribesmates share his disgrace. Small wonder that some Garou will avoid bringing such a stain on the family honor at all costs.

Not all intrigues are as closely related to the values of Garou society, of course. A desire for vengeance can send a werewolf down the path of double-dealing and plotting just as surely as a desire for added prestige might. And we'd be completely remiss not to mention love as a motivator. There's already a terrible pressure in Garou society not to mate with other Garou—two werewolves in love with one another must resort to secret assignments merely to be together. The plot is further complicated for one werewolf is in love with another and means to win the heart of his intended, all while keeping his passion secret. But who said all romantic intrigues have to be between werewolves? Kin are—as physically or spiritually powerful, but they have no less ability to manipulate the emotions of those who have fallen for them. In some cases, that's all the power a given Kinfolk has—little wonder they're inclined to use it.

And of course, the motive of power list can't be ignored. Although theoretically all Garou are expected to set aside their personal ambition for the good of tribe, sept and Nation, in practice it doesn't always work out that way. Garou hold power that most people in a civilized country don't—immediate power over life and death, the ability to kill almost without fear of punishment. After all, if you want to kill a human that few would mind who's to stop you? Combined with the spiritual and political might available to an aspiring elder, it's little wonder that this power can grow addictive.

## *Movers and Shakers*

Whether there are incidents of importance, there's speculation about what must have to do to become involved in the war against genocide of the Garou. Many heroes have been created overnight as tales of their exploits traverse territory after territory. Other werewolves of more inherent reputation because of their lineage. While many great leaders exist among the ranks of the clans, only an elite few who could rightfully be called legends in their own time. These

werewolves hold a vast amount of responsibility for as well as considerable power over their respective tribes.

Each tribe has at least one larger-than-life, living hero. These elders, and their direct followers, tend to be on the front lines. Their combat tactics are strategized by up and coming alphas, tales of their victories spread through the nation like wildfire, and their defeats are mourned.

Rumors circulate through the Garou Nation of discreet meetings between the top alphas that determine the actions of the werewolves as a whole. While many Garou dismiss such talk as nonsense, a few have begun to wonder how much truth there might be behind the tales. The political stance of certain tribes is no secret. And while messages of werewolves working together in harmony, despite tribal differences, might make for a great speech in front of a large moon, the reality of werewolf leadership structure makes implementation of such philosophies tricky at best.

Although the likelihood of every elder of note sitting down around a campfire and agreeing on strategies to improve the overall effectiveness of the werewolf army is not great, it certainly is possible for a few leaders to maintain contact with each other. Whether quiet pacts or treaties are actually formed between the key leaders that would, in turn, affect many members of their respective tribes is pure speculation. Such "meddling" would likely manifest itself as an increase in arranged marriages, subtle shifts in territories, and more tolerance between certain groups. While some Garou would see those kinds of activities as a step in the right direction, most would view change with suspicion. Any act that could conceivably weaken a tribe's position, thus threatening their collective reputation, is to be avoided.

Storytellers wishing to dabble in intrigue of this sort are well advised to remember that unless the players have some way of getting involved in some way or another, the results of those agreements in some way, there's no point to handing a story around it. Your players/characters are the stars of the show, and they have better things to do than find out about secret meetings between elders that they cannot possibly influence in any way.

### *All in the Family*

Politics and bureaucracy extend beyond individual werewolf tribes, septs and packs, into their Kin. Many Kinfolk organizations and fetterings dot the globe. The philosophical and political agendas of such groups are as diverse as those of their Garou cousins. Werewolves and alphas are smart enough to navigate, but when the Kin are thrown into the mix, situations can get downright hairy.

Also, too often, an individual Kinfolk's lot in life is determined from a young age. This isn't universal, of course. A Shadow Lord probably has the motive and ability to manage his family affairs rather more closely than a Silent Rider of equal rank, and European septs tend to be more strict in such affairs than American ones do. But lineage, age, and aptitudes can easily determine whom Kin will marry, where they will live,

the type of career they will pursue and so forth. While some Kin are humble (or sadly browbeaten) enough to accept this lot in life, others like to build their own reputations. If a werewolf really wanted to take an unbiased look at how effective their own tribal systems are, she would need only look as far as her Kin and how they act. As with all people, Kinfolk are based on what is seen, heard, and earned throughout their lives. If this can be a good thing, werewolves have also perpetuated a number of bad social habits. Kin frequently see the world through the eyes of their Garou cousins on everything from biases to political views.

Kinfolk also serve as the backbone for werewolf social structure. They are not only companions but also caretakers, guardians, and of course, that all too important connection to the mundane world. Werewolves largely dictate the actions of their Kin. While Kin are still children of the tribe, they are viewed as subordinates in the eyes of their werewolf relatives. The opportunities for stories of intrigue involving Kin are endless. A Storyteller could create a large plot involving a number of Kin that are trying to achieve a goal that might not necessarily tie with the werewolf party line, or a story might be more personally relating to a single family. In any case society there will be individuals who go with the flow because "That's the way it's always been." On the flip side there are those who will use the system to their own advantage.

### *Creating Intrigue*

There's enough political strife, family secrets, and hidden motives inside of the Garou Nation to create a tale of subterfuge without ever having to use any werewolves or even a werewolf society. The key to a successful plotline involving intrigue is involving a player's character personally with the secret, thus getting into the characters' grace, deny, stumble into a situation where they quickly find themselves in over their heads. A simple omission of information when reporting to an elder could turn a snowbird effect, a white lie that if uncovered could mean a serious loss of respect for a young Garou. Not all scheming may be premeditated. A particular werewolf might hide the truth in an effort to avoid punishment. Another Garou may accept responsibility for an action that she didn't perform in order to help a respected elder save face.

Whatever plot device a Storyteller chooses to implement, she should understand inside and out the motives, feelings, and intentions of those who are perpetuating the cover up. A werewolf very well may have honorable goals, but perhaps her methods of bringing those goals to fruition are questionable.

The following are some questions a Storyteller may wish to ask to see whether a particular pack will

• What am I looking to accomplish with this story?

What is the underlying moral or lesson you are trying to convey, if any? Is there a particular mood or feeling to create? Are you simply trying to get players excited about playing out of published adventures rather than simple arbitrary objectives? A plot involving subterfuge need not be serious, in fact a pack might accomplish a particular objective by indirect means can have elements of comedy, particularly if that pack is accustomed to acting in a more forthright manner. On the other hand, you might want to create an atmosphere of paranoia. Is a particular individual truly an enemy to the pack, or are they being used as a convenient stepping stone.

• How are the characters involved?

Is the secretly of the characters' own creation, or have they slipped into something inadvertently? How deeply involved is the pack. Are they the center of a particular plot, or are on the periphery? How far is the scope of the scheming? Does it encompass a particular tribe, or straight to the top alphas of a particular tribe. How do the pack fit into the big picture of the plot? Can the characters change the course of events significantly. If not, why not, and what do you expect them to do?

• Who plays a minor role in the plot?

Are other packs associated with the course of events? Have any individuals been touched by the dubious goings-on? How many lives will be touched by a particular conspiracy. Is it wise for the characters to try to glean information from a specific group or individual. Who might be watching the characters from afar?

• What are the consequences?

What do the characters bring the truth to light. If so, what kinds of enemies will they make? What is the effect on their reputations? What are the intentions of a conspirator, honorable, selfish, or something else. What will happen if the truth were never discovered. How serious are the consequences of hiding the facts? Who might lose prestige if those in authority were to uncover the truth. How serious is the transgression?

• What's in it for the characters?

Is it in a character's best interest to find out a way to hide the truth, or to expose it. Will there be a great gain or loss for those who are involved? How high are the stakes if the characters fail in their chosen action?

You needn't answer all of these questions in order to write every plot, some intrigues aren't as revealing

as others, and can be dealt with in the space of a night. What's more, after a few plots of this sort, you may find your players are the ones concocting their own intrigues, trying to play the game of politics to achieve their own goals, whether noble or selfish. Don't panic when that happens — take delight in their enthusiasm. They've taken the first steps into a large world.

## Using the Litany

The Litany serves a fairly basic role in most Werewolf games, it's the code of rules for Garou to follow. Most packs follow the Litany most of the time, but they gain renown for doing so under difficult circumstances, and they also break the Litany now and then, either from necessity or as a show of independence.

Below are some of the tenets of the Litany in the form of laws that some groups don't break, and the tenets of the Litany in the form of laws that some groups do break.

**"Combat the Worm Wherever it Dwee Is and Whenever it Breeds,"** as that tends to provide plenty of action, but disclaim "Garou Shall Not Mate With Garou" as a silly law that's not worth obeying. Some players even live at the tenets or write "real laws" and "laws that are meant to be broken."

Obviously that wasn't the intent of the Garou that agreed upon the Litany so long ago. All the laws do have a purpose, and were enacted for good reason. Similarly, any Ragabash within his auspice should be able to challenge his own disobedience to any tenet of the Litany — which is what the Questioner of the Ways is meant to do after all. The idea is that most Garou will obey the Litany if at all possible, and have very good reasons if they are forced to do otherwise.

The following section is intended to give the Storyteller a little more information when it comes to matters of law. The two perspectives on the Litany presented are those that will probably be most useful in a character. The first is the perspective of the Philodox who sees the reasons behind the Laws and champions the tenets as good and worthy overall (it sometimes abuses). The second is that of the Ragabash who, like any good Questioner of the Ways, looks at things a different way, challenging Garou to analyze their own assumptions and actually think about their decisions.

### *Garou Shall Not Mate With Garou*

**The Philodox:** This law was not created to make frustrated adolescents miserable. This law was not created to give our people license to torment their neighbors. This law exists to model our relations with our Kinfolk. Garou deliberately made us reliant on humans and woves to pass on our heritage. However, if we were permitted to take other Garou as our mates, then

A black and white illustration depicting a scene from a story. In the background, a werewolf with a dark, snarling face and a spotted body is shown. In the foreground, a woman with long, dark hair is lying down, her head tilted back and eyes closed, appearing to be in a state of unconsciousness or death. The background is filled with stylized, swirling patterns representing foliage or smoke. The entire illustration is enclosed within a decorative, hand-drawn border.

A black and white illustration depicting a scene from a story. In the background, a werewolf with a dark, snarling face and a spotted body is shown. In the foreground, a woman with long, dark hair is lying down, her head tilted back and eyes closed, appearing to be in a state of unconsciousness or death. The background is filled with stylized, swirling patterns representing foliage or smoke. The entire illustration is enclosed within a decorative, hand-drawn border.

A black and white illustration depicting a scene from a story. In the background, a werewolf with a dark, snarling face and a body covered in fur and spots is shown. In the foreground, a woman with long, dark hair is lying down, her head tilted back and eyes closed, appearing to be in a state of unconsciousness or death. The background is filled with stylized, swirling patterns representing foliage or smoke. The entire illustration is enclosed within a decorative, hand-drawn border.

## A black and white illustration depicting a scene from a story. In the background, a werewolf with a dark, snarling face and a body covered in fur and spots is shown. In the foreground, a woman with long, dark hair is lying down, her head tilted back and eyes closed, appearing to be in a state of unconsciousness or death. She is wearing a simple, light-colored dress. The background is filled with stylized, swirling patterns representing trees and foliage. The entire illustration is enclosed within a decorative, hand-drawn border.

A black and white illustration of a werewolf and a woman in a forest. The werewolf is in the background, looking towards the viewer. The woman is in the foreground, lying down with her head tilted back, appearing unconscious or dead. The scene is framed by a decorative border.

A black and white illustration depicting a scene from a story. In the background, a werewolf with a dark, snarling face and a body covered in fur and spots is shown. In the foreground, a woman with long, dark hair is lying down, her head tilted back and eyes closed, appearing to be in a state of unconsciousness or death. The background is filled with stylized, swirling patterns representing trees and foliage. The entire illustration is enclosed within a decorative, hand-drawn border.

A black and white illustration depicting a scene from a story. In the background, a werewolf with a dark, snarling face and a body covered in fur and spots is shown. In the foreground, a woman with long, dark hair is lying down, her head tilted back and eyes closed, appearing to be in a state of unconsciousness or death. She is wearing a simple, light-colored dress. The background is filled with stylized, swirling patterns representing trees and foliage. The entire illustration is enclosed within a decorative, hand-drawn border.

sage kind of trouble. Because as we all know, the Wyrms bred to the hearts of the Bastet and it made them betray us by not sharing the secret stuff We all know the Wyrms corrupt the minds because their claws deal the wings offlies. Our response to both situations? We rip the heads off We "combat" the problem. This is counter-productive.

### *Respect the Territory of Another*

**The Philodox:** Some like to say that it is "unnatural" for people Garou and human alike to kill one another over such things as boundaries. These pundits knew little of the "natural" world. Countless animals fight, and kill, if need be, over territory. Territory is food, and water, and the chance to pass those things on to your children. These things are important to all living creatures. This rule was not written to justify the slaughter of trespassers — this rule was written with the traveler in mind, a call for him to respect the boundaries that are important to others. When this rule is violated, the result is a situation like that of the conflict between the "Europeans" and the "Pure Ones," or the extermination of the Pimyp. When it is honored, greater cooperation between septs and packs is the result.

**The Ragabash:** This is one of those tenets that worked better in years past. We don't have territory any more. Multiple tribe septs are one of the great proofs of this. We don't hope around marking our borders with fire and feces. I mean, come on.

Let me spin you a story. Some pack, desperately seeking to evade powerful pursuers, runs to the nearest town they can think of. They are being hunted. They don't know for every obvious damn reason. If they are stupid enough to howl, they attract the notice of those pursuing them, leading them directly into the city. That would be a high level threat to which we likely have many warriors. Or worse, their pursuers listen to a howl, learn the location of the caern, and then go and get help. That's an unstoppable threat. We love the caern. So for their prudence, these young ones dishonored for disobeying the Litany, or in the worst case scenario, turned away at the dawn of their existence.

—ACE THE PHOENIX

### *Accept an Honorable Surrender*

**The Philodox:** If you refuse to accept an honorable surrender, you have just killed an honorable person and made yourself dishonorable in the process. Garou needs honorable people. It is a stain on the honor of our race that such a law is even necessary. Most of our civilization is that a wise Garou must be able to tell the difference between an honorable surrender and a dishonorable one; surrendering to the Wyrms is unacceptable and mercy is sometimes a mistake given the creatures we so often face.

**The Ragabash:** There are a lot of positives to this one, I'll grant you. I'm all for anything that that is in place to protect Garou's lives from useless deaths, and this tenet does that. But it doesn't go far enough. Right now, it encourages politics and responses that weaken us all. I've seen would-be politicians use it to pamper the young warriors they see as "the future." (What future? We've already damn near lost one, probably not even that hypothetical fight in which they damn well deserved to be throttled. Not killed, but smacked upside the head a bit for sure.)

We would radically change the tenet here. For one, it would immediately dislocate the word "honor" from "surrender." Much as we talk and preach about there being no dishonor in surrender, the talk which flies about speaks otherwise. It's humiliating to be beaten. And rather than try and fight this, this tenet immediately reminds us of that.

### *Submission to Those of Higher Station*

**The Philodox:** To be sure, this law does stem in part from our wolf nature. However, for a society of warriors, a chain of command is frankly necessary. A democratic army cannot fight a war effectively, particularly if they opposition has a chain of command they lack. Lines of communication must be clear and direct, even in peacetime. I think we all know (or used to be) some cocky adolescent absolutely convinced

that they knew everything there is to know about the world until they were actually forced to live in the world at which point they started to realize just how ignorant they were. Although this tenet can be abused and is abused, there's a very good reason that werewolves should show their elders respect.

**The Ragabash:** When this tenet is misused, it's damaging beyond all else. It is a carte blanche to tell those below you whatever the hell you want them to do. Worse, it favors those who are adept at ensuring they get credit for positive actions, while the unknown, retain their high rank and can continue to order their subordinates to do their dirty work.

I am not for a moment advocating disobedience in battle. That's a foul game and a good way to get as a dead kind. It's not "submission." I'm arguing, it's "higher station." Whatever good this tenet may do is destroyed by our highly subjective system of station.

### *The First Share of the Kill for the Greatest in Station*

**The Philodox:** Despite the grumbling of some cubs, this is not a law crafted by elders to enable them to have whatever they like. This, like the previous law, is a solemn recognition of our wolf nature. We are not animals where the beast that does the least work on the hunt

receives the largest portion. We are wolves at heart and our station is earned. And, if I may be blunt, this law will never encourage a Garou to be more or less selfish—but at least it will only benefit those selfish Garou who have proved that they are worthy of the benefits they claim.

**The Ragabash:** This tenet not only gives the most powerful weapons, the most impressive tricks and the most gadgets to those who most need them, but it starts to ensure that those who are “in station” stay “in station.” This is where, surprisingly, challenges come into play, but suddenly we have a problem. This is the first shard of the Key Under the Hill. It is not until we argue that the moment a Key is made, we can be said to be at war. Cross-reference this to “The Leader May Not Be Challenged During Wartime.”

And right now, all the ferals out there are screaming how this all proves we need to just get rid of the monkey politics, and it’s all their fault. To them I say that up I’ve seen wolves pull this extremeness, too.

### *You Shall Not Eat the Flesh of Humans*

**The Philodox:** Theoretically, justice should be done “for Wolves”, but the fact is that, historically speaking, there have been far more Garou who eat the flesh of humans than those who eat wolf meat. For one, humans are simply more plentiful, and it’s easier to rationalize a human “deserving” a bite as food. However, devouring human flesh is an activity that conveys Wyrn-taint, therefore, it is clearly wrong. It is also a health issue in modern times; humans do things to their bodies that make them frankly unfit. Nonetheless, as poorly as humans may have treated the planet, they’re one-third of our own nature, so they should not be treated like prey animals. Enemies — as needed, yes. But never prey.

**The Ragabash:** Yep. No problem. Frankly, the idea of my sister being a snack for some Red Talon frightens me and any rule that stops it happening is good in my books. What, you expect me to fight against all of them?

Well, I will anyway. Fact is, we’re predators. Humans are, for the most part, prey animals. They have lat teeth, designed for grinding plants, and vegetables tax their digestive systems a lot less than meat does. Eventually, these things are going to happen for a whole bunch of reasons. Plain primal instinct. Revenge against the monsters who slew your family because they thought their fur would look better as a hat.

There are some real dangers in the human eating thing. Discussions of chemical imbalances and nutrition aside, a lot of the suffering comes of hatred and there’s an element of torture in it, that our “eaten alive” cliché. I think we’ve all seen that man-eater’s terror become very cruel very quickly, and Barnes starts flocking around them. But making it punishable by law is

asking for trouble. I shudder to say this, but a few less humans won’t hurt Gaea and it won’t hurt us. If the end justifies the wolf’s stomach, so be it. Make sure our elders lecture on his sort of dangers, but no excuses to get caught up in debates of punishment for something that’s right in the tail.

### *Respect Those Beneath Ye — All Are of Liana*

**The Philodox:** Garou should know their place in the scheme of things. They should know to defer to those above them, and they should know to be generous to those below them. Everything is of Gaea, that’s why you think a deer’s spirit alters a ying-yang, and why you ask permission to enter sacred places. To take this to the extreme, it is a good thing to mourn for the totem and Black Spiral Dancers, you’re mourning the death of what they might have become if not for the Wyrn’s taint. This tenet is very important for keeping our people focused. We must remember that we are warriors, and we are not allowed to let in our battles against the Wyrn, but we must also realize that we have to see the difference between what we’re fighting and what we’re protecting.

**The Ragabash:** I’d be really mad and disrespectful if I ever saw it followed. It makes some sense, it’s well worked and it doesn’t get too much in our way. The only time it would get in our way is if frankly we could have the rule for social niceties with, say, some small animal spirit who wants to properly challenge when we’re on the hunt for something dangerous. At that point, you ignore the rule, obviously.

That said, I also point out that there is a practical problem with this tenet existing alongside the “in station to those of Higher Station.” It’s called the “Barn-Crawler” problem. It isn’t exactly so, to them they just typify it. They argue that they can’t follow the submission, or they spend their whole life submitting, but they can’t have to respect anyone cause no one’s lower. Now that’s BS, but it highlights the problem the rules being there together — they can’t directly contradict but they still confuse each other. Now for us smart folks, it’s far enough to play it by ear, but, hey, we all know when to give ground and when to hard-line, we wouldn’t need the Library, would we?

### *The Vain Shall Not Be Lifted*

**The Philodox:** If you cannot appreciate the potential danger of humans (and more the fact you’d have us), then think of the Wyrn. Set aside the possibility that if humans knew we existed, they would begin exterminating all the wolves they could find, bulldozing the forests and developing new silver weapons. Instead, remember that the Wyrn lives where humans

do. When a human discovers, the Wyrn's creatures can discover. Secrecy is one of our greatest weapons. We must hold on to it for as long as we can.

**The Ragabash:** I've always been really put off by this one. How exactly do you lift the veil? We've all seen what happens when we get in there and start

Peep's screen (even I can't lift it) is like an invisible force we ever existed. Those who don't do so become marginalized and do not pose a threat to us. There are exceptions. I completely understand this. When these happen, they need to be dealt with. Like the threat, and preventing them is good.

But come on! It's God forbid someone actually got hurt in a way that werewolves doing their thing. Do you think it's a "get played"? No. I'd get angry about it. But no one would be even. Between the options of avoiding people seeing us and missing our chance toward rate an enemy, we should always choose to eradicate the enemy. This goes all the way back to my basic premise: we are not in a position to hamstring ourselves with pointless rules.

While we're on the subject, do we really know how many would act aggressively toward us if we opened our doors a little? A lot of humans are really desperate for some new spiritual truths, and we've got one hell of a better product than some New Age pen-pagan. I'm advocating a widespread. Hey guys. Guess what you didn't know? Campaign, but couldn't we, like, implement a title?

### *Do Not Suffer Thy People to Tend Thy Sickness*

**The Philodox:** Why does this tenet exist. Partly because we are proud. Few of us want to descend into slavery or a bed-ridden state. But more importantly, it is a question of seeing a war not wasting resources in someone who can't contribute. Death is not the end of the world. You can still serve in a new role after a noble and honorable death. And for who wants to hang in a life is not an at all costs, no matter the shape he's in, is being selfish.

This rule is at the very least pragmatic and appropriate for a culture at constant war. And the greatest abuses of this tenet are easily avoided if one realizes that the working is with the fact "Do Not Suffer at All."

This law asks us not to be a burden to our people. The burden of sickness falls on the name Garou inquest or notion, neither concept, nor even on the aging werewolves of who's of significant importance. It's not a Council of Elders. If your "sickness" is

**The Ragabash:** As with many of these there are some very valid reasons for it. The key words "suffer thy people" are a great qualifier. It provides for all w

ing those whose talents are no longer on the front line of battle to keep helping in other ways. Better yet, it ensures that we're not taking over or shaking it to make sure our comrades haven't suffered a heart attack or something. When you're in battle, you want to know you can rely on someone.

But it's still a rule. It's still something just dying to be turned inside out, used, abused, and manipulated for the gain of the unscrupulous. I mean, let's not forget the gravity of this rule. We're talking about killing our own.

Now, you can talk about how the wilding wolf gets to choose what happens as much as you like. But you know something? I know a lot of my tribe out there, and they all know how to put a little pressure on someone, either spiritually or, if need be, physically. It isn't hard. Meanwhile, talk to a few Pattern Spiders here and there, and I'll show you how to create a situation that will put a Garou in a state of "sickness." None of this is hard especially if they're not looking for the move.

Fine, let me lift the extremes. Tell me it doesn't happen.

### *The Leader May Be Challenged at Any Time during Peace*

**The Philodox:** Lead, follow, or get out of the way. This is a vital tenet because it is meant to keep anti-leaders from hoarding power beyond the worthiness to do so. The nature of Garou existence demands that the leaders be the most competent ones available, and that they be able to step back and let someone else take his proper role in the right circumstances.

**The Ragabash:** Hold on a second. I want to talk about this one and its twin sister at the same time.

### *The Leader May Not Be Challenged during War-time*

**The Philodox:** The battlefield is no place for a power struggle. You must be unified in mind and deed when you're up against the enemy, because it's a rare day that they do no outnumber and outgun you. This rule is vital to ensuring that the aforementioned chain of command is healthy and effective when the Garou need it most.

**The Ragabash:** Right. These two go right next to each other since they're basically covering the same territory — If you're at war, you're not allowed to challenge if you're not, then be our guest. For the leader — the guy who, quite possibly, is the meanest bastard alive because we have capable of wrecking mass damage on the Wyrn, and you're hurt. Or yourself. (Okay, sorry, not that black and white. But people getting challenged play to their strength.)

Apart from general complaints at the way we handle challenges in the first place, these two tenets assume a

basic comprehension of the definitions of "wartime" and "peace" and that's not as easy as it sounds. When are you at war? If random street gangs attack three of our knits, then are we then at war with those street gangs? OK, what about if I'm on attack those same knits? There are absolute limits here, obviously. If a caern is invaded, then we're pretty much at war. But there are groups out there who would argue that we are now always, twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week, at war. Hell, I'm one them. Do we never challenge, then?

We can't operate that way. I appreciate, once you're in the field, or if the enemy could strike at any time (and there is a difference between "always at war" and "always vulnerable"), then please shut the hell up and listen to orders. I cannot stress this enough. The last thing we need is to fall into squabbling at that point. But if we're at war, the plan is being laid out and it sucks, then for goodness sake say so. Challenge, please. It is much better to earn some ire before a battle by showing up an incompetent strategist, then lose lives by leaving the poor plan unquestioned.

### *You Shall Take No Action*

### *That Causes a Caern to Be Violated*

**The Philodox:** A portion of Gaea fails. It or dies whenever one of Her caerns is polluted by the Wyrmsapped Dry by thirsty sorcerers, or razed entirely. If enough, the world dies with them. This is not a game.

Her wording states "No Action," and I agree with that severity. You are forbidden from bringing outsiders such as magi or fae into the caern, because if you have made a mistake in judgement and they return with friends, you aren't the only one to suffer for your error. Gaea Herself suffers for your indiscretion. There is no more to violate rule, and there should not be.

**The Ragabash:** This again leads us to a tactical question.

The enemy is huge, capable of destroying any one sept we have. However, they might not be able to beat out three or four combined. Do you stick your ground, get nearly killed three or four, or do you abandon three of em to save the fourth, and finally beat the menace that could logically keep going and taking caerns?

It's not pleasant. It's an unfortunate choice that we have to make and we will have to make, very damn soon. I'm coming to this. And I have to say, I think the choice to abandon caerns is probably the more efficient choice. It is better for us to abandon our holy ground and preserve all lives, and in thus doing, save other ground.

But look at what I've just said. Yes, I've praised efficiency the whole way through my challenges, or tried to at any rate. But some times I've noted that yes, some of the Litany has a lot of good in it, and we'd be

worse for not having it. I've even damn me called for more tenets at least once. Yet more fodder for our repetitive scum to play us with.

And then, I go ahead and say we should let the enemy kill Gaea a little more. Yes, that's so.

I can wrap my head around that, but I can't wrap my heart around it. Yes, we can let our war be lost by trying to adhere to political rules, and if tenets or even less, I may change my mind about this, but for now, no. Don't question this tenet. Guard the caerns. Because, if more yes, they're Gaea. And Gaea is what we're all about. It's what we can't let the enemy get in the way of, but we have so much to reach a goal, what should be in the way get in the way of it. Her

## *Rank and Renown*

Garou society consists of acutely observing victory, chiefly a pecking order in which every member has a place. Garou honor those of greater Rank and receive homage and respect from those of lesser Rank. Some Storytellers and players prefer to downplay the social aspects of their chronicle in favor of greater emphasis on combatting the Wyrm or Weaver and discovering the secrets of the Cult, but ignoring the complex protocols and privileges of Rank, however, deprives all concerned with many occasions for intense and satisfying roleplaying.

Beginning characters start as Rank One. Low warriors in service to Gaea and subject to the commands of any werewolf of greater status. Achieving higher Rank and Privileges that pertain to that Rank can take many game sessions. Even progressing from Rank One to Rank Two involves accumulating the proper levels of Renown, not to mention the successful completion of the Rite of Accomplishment. Storytellers can whet their players' appetite for exploring the social side of Garou life by running a chronicle where the characters begin as veterans of higher Ranks.

Veteran chronicles assume that the characters have already gone through their First Change and their Rite of Passage. In addition, veteran Garou possess Attributes, Abilities and Gifts at greater levels than characters that start out as pups at Rank One. How does a Storyteller determine a fair way to create advanced characters?

The following suggestions may give Storytellers some ideas. As usual if you don't like these guidelines tweak to your tastes. Just make sure that you take into account that most measure of qualities—game balance.

Characters should be young, energetic, strong, and experienced warriors, not super-Garou. Remember, even elders can advance and gain experience, so make sure that you leave them something to aim for.

### *Veteran Garou Character Creation*

#### • Rank Two

Attributes: 9/14 (instead of 7/5/3)

Abilities: 20/3/10 (instead of 3/9/5)

Gifts: 5 Level One plus 3 Level Two Gifts

Backgrounds: 0 points

Freebie Points: 20

#### • Higher Ranks

Add one point to one Attribute category for each Rank above Rank Two. This means that a character starting out at Rank Three would have a choice of adding one point to either her Physical, Social, or Mental categories — not all three. For example, Beth creates a Childe of Onia Ragabash that starts out as Rank Three. After assigning 9 points to Social (her primary Attribute category) 6 points to Mental (her secondary category) and 4 points to Physical (her tertiary category) she decides to place her additional starting point into her Social traits.

Add two points to each Ability category for each Rank above Rank Two. A Rank Three "beginning" character would have 22/15/12 (instead of 20/13/10).

At Rank Three, the character receives a Gift of higher level than her Rank for each Rank above Rank Two.

Add one permanent point of Rage, Onyx, or Willpower for each Rank above Rank Two.

**Quick note:** This system treats not just veterans, but impressive veterans. This should not be considered the starting power level for each and every character of high Rank. Many werewolves achieve high rank without Traits as high as those given here. Don't panic if you find that characters' special supplements seem "weaker" than those created with these rules, and don't feel that you have to tailor all your supporting cast according to these guidelines. These rules are meant to give you a

versatile character that can leap right into the action if need be. After all, if you're playing veterans, you want them to be impressive from the get-go, yes?

### *Filling in the Blanks*

As with creating beginning Garou characters, the character sheet marks the beginning of the process for designing a complex, multi-faceted character. You have even more back history than starting characters.

Storytellers should advise players to spend some time thinking about how their character achieved their previous Ranks, what events shaped their person-

alities and what deeds gave them the necessary Renown for a higher status.

Consider asking your players the following questions. The information gleaned may also provide you with a few loose subplots within your canon tale. By the time a Garou has achieved any status at all, she has probably made a number of enemies as well as allies within her sept, her tribe, and the Garou nation in general.

• **What was your First Change like? Your Rite of Passage? How did you fit in to your tribe when you first discovered you were one of the Garou?**

These questions pertain to any Garou character, whether beginning at Rank One or Rank Five. The answers to these questions set the tone for all future character development.

• **How did you achieve your earlier Ranks? What deeds did you accomplish to gain the Renown necessary for you to instigate a Rank Challenge? Who performed the Rite of Accomplishment for each Rank and how successful was each instance?**

Answering these questions helps a player anchor her character firmly in her history and carves out a place for her within her pack, sept, and tribe. Ask for details, or offer suggestions — work with your players.

If their Garou received Glory Renown for defeating warm spirits in the Umbra, it'll be that much more vital for the player if she knows what specific sorts of spirits her character overcame. If she protected a caern from an invasion by Black Spiral Dancers, help her figure out the numbers and personalities involved. Certainly help your players determine what their previous Rites of Accomplishment were like. All of this gives your players added "bragging rights," and lets them refer to their past deeds with the same certainty they'd use if they actually roleplayed them out.

• **Who are your friends? Your enemies? Do the younger Garou in your sept respect you or do they just pay lip service to you because of your Rank? Does anyone in your pack or sept covet your position? Who will stand beside you when you face censure or criticism? Who will come to your defense? Who will accuse you of wrongdoing at the slightest provocation?**

Fleshing out a character's relations with the members of his pack and sept provides more than just background information or stage setting. These questions are a great blessing, as they encourage players to help you with the work of fleshing out your supporting cast. The more detail you get into, the more comfortable your players will be in roleplaying their relationships with these Storyteller characters.

• What have your greatest failures been? Have you ever lost Renown, or even Rank, and if so, why? What are your regrets? Have you lost anyone important to you as a casualty of your war?

Werewolf is, at heart, a game about horror and tragedy as much as it is a game about heroism. Even great heroes of the Garou Nation have their failings and imperfections; some have even made horrible mistakes before regaining the respect in the eyes of their people. If the players are asked to think about the losses their characters have suffered, they're more likely to produce characters with believable backgrounds and motivations. Not only does this bring the darker aspects of the setting home, but it also gives players a chance to provide you with wonderful plot hooks, everything from quests to redeem themselves in the eyes of those they personally failed to aid rivalries and enemies. A character might even begin the game with a metis cub—talk about roleplaying opportunities!

### *Making Renown Count*

**Werewolf: the Apocalypse** gives some general examples of ways to gain and lose Renown in various categories. What you ask your players to create new and starting characters, suggest (strongly) to them that they come up with specific examples for each Renown category. Your players need not detail everything gained or lost, but they should have a few Renown tales to tell around the fire or at moots. Knowing that Rank Three Theurge Severine Claw-of-Starlight gained Glory, and a battle scar on her right hand, from defeating a Black Spiral Theurge and his pet Bane at the gates of her coven, provides a player with a sense of what a character and provides the Storyteller with a potential story seed. What happens when the deceased Black Spiral Theurge's packmates seek revenge?

### *If Nobody Sees It: Does It Count?*

One of the time-old questions about Renown in **Werewolf** is whether or not a deed has to be witnessed and related to other werewolves in order for a Garou to gain or lose Renown. The two werewolves instantly lose Honor and Wisdom for having sex, even if nobody but the two lovers is the wiser. If a young cub sacrifices himself to save a coven, but nobody is there to witness his final deeds and voice his death-song, will anyone ever credit his spirit with the Renown it deserves?

The default assumption is that the Garou witnesses are necessary for a Rank win or gain to take effect. Perhaps the spirit world as a whole counts as a witness to each of a Garou's deeds; perhaps honorable or dishonorable conduct slightly changes a werewolf's appearance to the spirits that empower the Rate of Accomplishment. Whatever the formulation, the character's Renown is always matched with his deeds—fairness wins out over "realism." This is also probably the best system for teaching new players the sort of actions that their characters would be encouraged to take—nothing encourages a new player to behave more honorably than an immediate Renown bonus (or penalty).

As an interesting outgrowth of this system, if you're willing to make extra work for yourself, you can also keep the characters' Renown totally secret from the players—adding to the sense of realism, but also to your workload. Under such a system, characters tend to gain Rank a little more slowly, as the players

tend not to ask for the Rate of Accomplishment until they're sure they're worthy. This might be a good or a bad thing, depending on how you like to pace your chronicle. This can be a good thing, of course, as the characters stand a good chance of finding out during their Rates of Accomplishment that they're considerably more worthy than they thought (if they're humble), or that they're not so fucking up a lot more than they'd assumed.

Of course, you can always get the other end of the stick and assume that only Renown that's formally recognized by a Calliard at a moot counts. This is certainly a valid choice, particularly if you're looking for Renown to work more realistically and less supernaturally. One advantage of this approach is that the pack's Calliard rises in importance and becomes as valuable as the bards of old. The Garou gain much stronger interest in having the deeds related, which certainly suits the motif of the tribal society.

However, be aware that some groups will really abuse such a setup. If the Calliard is willing to look the other way when the chronicle is going on, it's not hard for the players to cheat themselves. They can quickly wind up with a pack full of charich who demand discipline, break the Veil without a thought and drive potential enemies back to their caves. If you don't care how you'd find yourself telling stories about a band of out-back oversexed teenagers that just happen to have superpowers—not Garou. Make sure your groups agree before you try this method out.

## *The Greatest Honor: Achieving Rank Six*

A Garou character is a man at a very high rank. He has the privileges and responsibilities associated with each new step upward. Only the most remarkable Garou (Rank Five) may learn the powerful and ancient secrets of the World of Darkness. But what of the Garou who have not yet achieved Rank Five? Where do they stand?

Suppose Garou may receive a special reward for exceptional service to Clan. A very few Rank Six Garou exist in the World of Darkness. These are the legendary individuals. They are the superstars of the Garou nation. The most respected Rank Five Garou as well as the presence of a Rank Six Garou is a great honor.

How does a Garou elder, join this august company?

### *The Best of the Best*

Only Rank Five Garou can advance to Rank Six. Such advancement does not depend solely on combat prowess. Rank Six Garou form an elite group of the best of the Garou nation. It is a great honor to qualify as an elder Garou. Most Garou achieve this extraordinary status in one or more of the following ways. Rank Six is more than the

acknowledgement of a lifetime of achievement and service. It is Rank Five. Rank Six is nothing less than legendary status. Such a worthy name is spoken by other people in the same tones that we reserve for legends such as Hercules, Miyamoto Musashi, and Joan of Arc. It's that important.

As such, the attainment of Rank Six has nothing to do with the Garou's personal desires. It is a challenge enough. Clarity is a certain kind of challenge or anything like that. It is a matter of personal judgment on the Spirit of the World. The Garou's life is quite simple. If you have to ask yourself if a character is worthy, he's not. If there is a question in your mind whether or not he has passed, he hasn't. It is a very high standard. The Garou elders have it. Only when there's absolutely no question of the character's secondary status should you consider entering to strive for the ultimate Rank.

The story of a character (or a pack) attaining Rank Six is a true story, quite possibly the most epic of the Garou. It is a story that is told. Very little compares in the Garou world. The esteemed Status of Rank Six is a mark of honor. It is a story that is told. You go through the actual challenge to rise in Rank of the Garou. The story, after all, is the story. The Garou's life is a story. The Garou's life is a story. The Garou's life is a story.



eration, any challenge might well be anticlimactic. If you do choose to make a challenge part of the process, make it truly memorable, a raid into the heart of Malfeas, the risk of learning one's own genealogy, back to the days of the Impergium, or other such nigh-impossible tasks. Break out your book of old fairy tales.

this is where the mountains of glass, redirecting of rivers, and similar astonishing feats come into play.

Still itching for an example? Okay, here's one.

When a Rank Five Garou's reputation spreads so far throughout the Garou Nation that it reaches the ears of existing Rank Six Garou, one member of this group may take upon herself to travel to the caern of the individual in question and investigate her worthiness. The Rank Six Garou usually adopts a pretext for making the visit and may voice her true purpose only to the sept leader (rank is the leader's the target of the investigation) or to the eldest Garou not in the running (or a rise in rank). Once she has satisfied herself as to the candidate's worthiness (or unworthiness), she returns to her home and contacts three other Rank Six Garou to present her case—if that many are alive at the time. (There's certainly no guarantee if it. We reiterate: Rank Six Garou are *rare*.) If she succeeds in convincing them that the Garou candidate is truly worthy, all four Rank Six Garou descend on the caern of the candidate and call a challenge on their subject. If the candidate succeeds in the challenge, she undergoes a special version of the Rite of Accomplishment performed in tandem by the Rank Six Garou along with the Master of the Rite of the candidate's caern (as a witness). A successful enactment of the rite creates a new Rank Six Garou. The Storyteller should determine what perks accompany the new Rank.

### *Marks of Achievement* *The Writing on the Wall*

The Rite of Accomplishment honors a Garou's deeds, acknowledges his advances in Renown and provides him with the accolades and status of a new rank. Within a Garou society, the Rite of Accomplishment serves as a way to "promote" a Garou, making him able to learn new Gifts, take on new responsibilities and serve as an example to other, younger Garou.

Not only does the Rite of Accomplishment proclaim a Garou's advance in status to his packmates, sept mates and other Garou, the rite also has a spiritual side that annexes the Garou's new Rank to the Umbra: spirits that serve as teachers of Garou's many Gifts. Spirits do not part with their knowledge lightly and they hesitate to teach what they know to Garou that are unready for the knowledge.

How does a spirit recognize that a Garou has achieved the proper Rank for learning a Gift? What

sort of indication does the Rite of Accomplishment give a spirit that the Garou performing for Level Two is, in fact, deserving to learn that Gift?

Although no hard and fast rule exists, it is how a spirit recognizes a Garou's Rank. Storytellers may wish to consider the following informal system for making the Rite of Accomplishment more than just a ritual.

### *The Mark of Achievement*

The successful completion of the Rite of Accomplishment bestows upon the Garou a mystical symbol that denotes the Garou's new Rank. This symbol differs from tribe to tribe and sometimes from at space to auspice. The Storyteller may decide what form the symbol takes—whether glowing marks, an aura of a particular color, or the presence of a spirit image when in the Umbra. This mark is perceptible primarily to spirits. Though the Storyteller may choose to allow werewolves to see the mark when in the Umbra. This marked, a Garou proclaims her true Rank to any spirit she encounters in the Umbra or elsewhere.

The location of the mark reflects the character of the rite. A Mark of Achievement for Renown may appear as a bloody glowing scar on the Garou's flank, while a Gift Walker's Mark of Achievement may consist of a umbrascient band around her neck or hips. The mark should always appear as some sort of badge of respect; it's no laughing matter.

If someone succeeds in disputing the Rite of Accomplishment or if the rite fails for any other reason, the Mark of Achievement does not appear on the Garou until a subsequent performance of the Rite or Accomplishment is successful.

### *Breaking the Rules of Rank*

According to Garou tradition and the will of Garou, Garou may not learn higher level Gifts until they attain the proper Rank. This is a plain and simple, again, balance issue, and one meant to reward players for making sacrifices and dedicating themselves to the game. It is a rise in Rank. However, some Storytellers may feel that some spirits, realistically, might not always flawlessly follow the rules. Can a clever werewolf pass himself off as a higher Rank spirit? Can a trick spirit choose to mess with the order of things? From a pure balance standpoint, no—but for those Storytellers interested in bending the rules in the interest of spicing things up, here are some guidelines. Use with care.

### *Roll 'Em and Weep* *Taking a Chance on the Die*

When a Garou attempts to convince a spirit to teach her or otherwise bamboozle a spirit into teaching her a Gift above her current Rank, the Storyteller can

require a simple dice roll (although some hefty roleplaying on the player's part is a nice way an unreasonable request). The nature of the roll depends on the method the Garou uses.

- **Convincing the Spirit:** The Garou uses a reasoned argument in order to convince the spirit that she deserves to learn the Gift in question. The Garou rolls Charisma + Expression (difficulty equals the level of the Gift + 4). For example, Miara Rainwater, a Rank Two Theurge, wishes to convince a spirit to teach her the Level Three Gift, Exorcism, by arguing that her pack has an immediate need of someone to chase this evil. She currently lacks a qualified person. Miara's player rolls her Charisma + Expression (four dice) against a difficulty of 7 (Level Three Gift + 4) and achieves a single success. The Storyteller decides that spirit reluctantly agrees to teach her the Gift, but may attach some restrictions on its use. More successes would have had a more positive effect on the spirit, which a failure would mean that the spirit refused the request. A botch would incur the anger of that particular spirit.

- **Cajoling the Spirit:** A Garou tries to engage the spirit's sympathy or make an impassioned plea calculated to win the spirit's approval in order to learn a Gift belonging to a Rank he does not have. Gregor Wermsbane, a Rank Three Gout of Fenris Galliard, tries to earn the approval of an avatar of Fenris in order to learn the Level Five Gift, Horde, of Valhalla. Gregor performs a stirring rendition of an ancient skald-saga illustrating the use of this Gift by a tribe. Here, Gregor's player states that he is using a power.

He rolls Charisma + Performance (seven dice) against a difficulty of 9 (Level Five Gift + 4). He achieves three successes with the addition of the success from Wermsbane. The spirit graciously approves of Wermsbane's nerve (as well as his performance) and teaches him the Gift without requiring additional considerations.

- **Coercing the Spirit:** The Garou attempts to browbeat or bargain the spirit into teaching her a Gift for which she does not yet possess the appropriate Rank. Cronels Astaré Worm, a Rank Three Recluse in Ahroun, is failed to achieve Rank Four in the focus, so, to a bias against Lupus Garou, with his mixed-rhine sept. He attempts to learn the Level Four Lupus Gift, Claw from a wolf spirit by threatening the spirit with imprisonment.

He rolls Charisma + Intimidation (six dice) against a difficulty of 8 (Level Four Gift + 4). He achieves three successes and sufficiently cowers the spirit.

- **Conning the Spirit:** The Garou attempts to run a scam on a spirit and convince it that it already possesses the correct Rank in order to do this, the Garou must somehow discern the correct Mark of Achievement or else must fool the spirit into believ-

ing that she possesses the correct Mark of the Garou. Attempts to disguise or mislead her Mark from the spirit, she must first roll Wits + Subterfuge against a difficulty of 7. (The Storyteller may wish to make this roll for the player in order to maintain some suspense, since the Garou does not necessarily know if her disguise will work until she comes face to face with the spirit.) Danna Spinneminder, a Rank Two Child of Canis naghash, decides to learn a Level Three Gift in response to a challenge from a Glass Walker packmate. She determines that she needs to trick a Gremilin into revealing to her a Rank Three Garou. She works to disguise her Mark, the Storyteller rolls in secret, getting four successes. Once she has cornered the Gremilin, she tries to fast-talk the spirit into accepting her as a worthy and Jati. She rolls Manipulation + Subterfuge (a dice pool of 5, against a difficulty of 7, Level Three Gift + 4). She receives five successes—a phenomenal success. Augmented by her Subterfuge achievement to determine how well Danna disguised her Mark, this stellar achievement completely fools the Gremilin. Danna walks away with a Level Three Gift and the possibility of receiving Glory for her bold Umbra prank in keeping with her auspice.

While this method allows for a hard and fast approach to running the rules, players and Storytellers who use it must respect their rolls and accept the results, whether good or not so good. Since *Werewolf: The Apocalypse* is a game that emphasizes creativity and imagination, players may wish to opt for a more intricate and interactive method of handling the Gift.

### *Talk Fast, Think Faster* *Roleplaying Up the Ladder*

In the above examples, both Storyteller and player elected to use the dice as the only determining factor in whether or not the Garou succeeded in earning a Gift by any other Rank. A Storyteller and the players may prefer to place more emphasis on good roleplaying rather than on random dice rolls. We can illustrate this using the same examples as in the previous section.

- **Convincing the Spirit:** Miara Rainwater's player engages the Storyteller, who acts the part of a spirit manifestation of Utena, in a polite and reasoned discussion in which she explains why she needs to learn the Level Three Gift even though she is only a Rank Two Theurge. The Storyteller feels that Miara's player has made a good enough case to convince the spirit. At this point, the Storyteller can do one of two things: he can inform Miara's player that the spirit agrees to teach her the Gift, or he can decide that Miara must still make a roll, at a reduced difficulty of 4 or 5 due to good roleplaying.

• **Cajoling the Spirit:** Gregor Wynnshane's player decides to roleplay his character's impassioned plea. He launches into an extemporaneous poem in trochee that describes a grimoire that reveals, on the knowledge of the Gift Gregor desires to learn. The Storyteller is so impressed with her player's performance that she does not even require a dice roll. She simply awards the Gift to the Garou character, and perhaps gives the player an extra Experience Point at the end of the session for good roleplaying.

• **Coercing the Spirit:** Growlsa, the Wynn's player tries to roleplay his character's attempt to cajole the wolf spirit into granting him the Gift he wants. Unfortunately, the player does not do a very good job of acting belligerent. The Storyteller decides to allow Growls' player to roll the dice but assigns a higher difficulty to the roll, determining that the spirit did not believe that Growls would carry out his threat. Growls fails his roll and the spirit sends him back to his pack in disgrace.

• **Conning the Spirit:** Danna Spoonbender's player decides to roleplay her encounter with the Groom in spirit she wants to fool into teaching her a Rank Three Gift. She describes her character's attempts at disarming her Mark of Achievement — something that involves an elaborate display of paint and glitter and strategically placed piercings in the general area of the Mark. When Danna accuses the Groom, her player launches into a comic routine that entertains and amuses not only the Storyteller but the rest of the players as well. The Storyteller asks Danna's player to make a *Wits + Subterfuge* roll at a lowered difficulty. Even though Danna's roll is not very good (she only rolls two successes), the Storyteller decides that the spirit, while not fooled by Danna's scam, admires the Kagabash's daring and delivery enough to teach her the Gift — provided she return once a month to entertain the spirit with a new comic routine.

This system may seem a little bit too easy — but remember that it's completely optional. No player can ever demand that you use these rules. Also, bear in mind that by violating the laws of Rank by claiming an earned privilege, a werewolf is disrespecting some of the basic principles of Garou society. Storytellers should feel free to slap painful Honor losses on chars that try to exceed their station in any but the most compelling circumstances.

### *If the Story Fits: Letting the Story Come First*

The final method presented here for determining the outcome of an attempt at earning a Gift without possessing the necessary Rank consists of simply acknowledging that certain results are necessary to a successful story. If a pack needs a particular Gift for an upcoming critical confrontation and no player possesses the appropriate Rank, you wish to ignore botched

rolls or bad roleplaying in favor of advancing your narrative. Of course, this shouldn't happen often, in case players may believe that their actions have little effect in a game in which events are predetermined.

A judicious Storyteller license, however, can often save a game from falling apart because the characters lack a particular Gift. Likewise, Storytellers may choose to award a Gift by integrating it into the continuity of a spirit angered by one of the characters.

This is also useful if a player is trying to learn a powerful Gift from a spirit that you decide might not really care about the rules of Rank — Coyote spirits to mind, as do other tricksters or Wild spirits. In such a case you may simply choose to grant the audacious player the Gift without the necessity of dice rolls or heavy roleplaying. However, the sort of spirit that is likely to ignore the precepts of Rank is also the sort of spirit that gives Gifts with eccentricities. The Gift might never work entirely properly. If Coyote teaches a Rank Four Ragabash the Gift Thousand Forms, perhaps the Ragabash retains the paws of a wolf in every form she takes. There are plenty of good reasons for such flawed instruction. It may amuse the spirit to see the youngster struggling with a power that's slightly beyond them, or the spirit might not care at all that the Gift they've taught doesn't work right for lower-ranked Garou. This sort of mismatch seems to go very well with one of the cardinal themes of bargaining with spirits — you never get something for nothing.

Allowing a Storyteller the freedom to use this sort of creative plotting requires a careful deal of discretion and players. They need to feel that you aren't simply twisting events to suit your own purposes or to make fun of, or defeat the players, but that you're trying to create a challenging and entertaining story for everyone.

## *Moving Upward: Rank and Its Challenges*

Most players and Storytellers familiar with the game know what steps a Garou must take to rise to Rank. After a Garou has acquired the requisite points (11

Rank, she seeks out a Garou of equal or higher rank and issues a challenge. The challenged Garou (usually played by the Storyteller) must then come up with a suitable challenge.

mettle without proving impossible to overcome often tests the Storyteller as well. What kinds of challenges are suitable for your ambitious Garou characters? Simple combat duels always work, particularly when the challenger belongs to an auspicious nation far from right at hand or more prowess. Challenges can also vary by tribe

A Rank Three Carol and may expect a different challenge for a new Rank than a Chief of Gaea Thewge.

The following examples of Rank challenges may give you some ideas for creating your own unique and entertaining tests for your Garou characters (as well as for their players).

### *Rank Two Challenges*

Attaining the status of hysteron at Rank Two means that a Garou has passed from the position of raw recruit in the war against the Wyrm to seasoned veteran. Rank Two Garou have some familiarity with Garou society and know the nature of the war they have been born to fight. Challenges for these Garou should provide a moderate level of combat, stress, or creative thinking. Since most Garou that survive for any length of time eventually attain Rank Two, these challenges should test the challenger but should not prove unbeatable.

#### *Sample Rank Two Challenges*

- "Acquire" a specific item hidden by a Rank Three Ragabash. Though a challenge of this nature comes almost naturally to Bone Givers, Glass Walkers, or Shadow Lords may find this a good test of their New Moon's.
- Carry a bonfire from a minor spirit. This challenge tests the ability of a Thewge to communicate with Umbra spirits. Akrena, Wendigo and Six of Sixes frequently employ this type of challenge for their Crescent Moon members.
- Use reasoned speech to convince the Garou you challenge to admit you to Rank Three. Silver Fangs, Children of Gaea and Black Furies place great emphasis on the power of words so this type of challenge appeals to them. This is also suitable for Phoklox if any tribe.
- Compose a song or story honoring the Garou challenge. A challenge of this type tests the ability of a Garou to respect his adversary and is particularly appropriate for Harma or Get of Fenris. Though Red Talons sometimes appreciate a new song, they rarely

- Defeat an Ahroun of your sept in a formal duel and visit at the caern's holders for three days and three nights without falling asleep.

### *Rank Three Challenges*

Garou who reach Rank Three (Adren) take on major responsibilities within their sept. These Garou hold most of the positions of consequence in a sept, including the duties of Warper, Master of the Rite, Tracker, and other positions. Challenges for this Rank should weed out individuals who cannot accomplish worthy work in the field. The future leaders of the sept and of the tribe come from Rank Three Garou.

Not all Garou should pass their Rank Three Challenge on the first attempt.

#### *Sample Rank Three Challenges*

• Create a list of words to ask for it for without imitating them — charades just won't do. Ragabash recognize the importance of body language, gestures and non-verbal communication. Hence, this challenge tests the abilities of New Moons. Complete a difficult scavenger hunt in a specific time limit.

- Create an original and useful fetish in a specified amount of time. In order to accomplish this, a Garou needs to succeed in locating and binding a spirit, creating a fetish vessel and ensuring that it serves some useful purpose.

• Make peace with a long-time enemy or bring about a truce between two feuding werewolves. While best used to test the negotiating skills of a Phoklox, this type of challenge can also gauge the abilities of future leaders of any tribe.

• Find a little-known past hero of the Garou and create a tribute to that individual and perform a composition at an inter-tribal moot. This challenge not only tests the skills of the Garou, but also creates a sense of solidarity and pride among a Garou.

• Endure a solid beating or taunting from your septmates without going into frenzy. Warriors need to show not only strength, but also discipline. Frenzy at the wrong time is a Garou's worst enemy. This challenge is particularly suitable for Ahroun, who need to learn that violence is not always the answer.

### *Rank Four Challenges*

Rank Four Garou (Athro) have risen near to the top of the hierarchy. Mighty warriors, renowned warkeepers, wise sept leaders, notorious tricksters and famous judges come from this Rank. Garou who deserve a place in this elite group need to demonstrate exceptional skill and intelligence. Though some Garou may attain Rank Four the first time, those who do should inspire awe in the species. Rank Four challenges you to be just that — challenges.

#### *Sample Rank Four Challenges*

• Find out every aspect of the business plan of an organization of potential interest to the Garou, without being caught. Beat a Lupus form shifter in a footrace, likely through a forest or other obstacles, without shifting out of Huma.

• Unearth a lost treasure of the tribe. Convince a spirit to act in a fashion completely opposite to its nature (such as encouraging a fire elemental to go for a swim) without harming the spirit.

- Take the place of the sept's In thecatcher or Master of the Rite for a month. Convince a rival street gang or other legitimate group of humans to participate in community service for a month.

- Create a praise song for a rival and end your differences with that person by honoring her.

- Rescue a Garou captured by enemies of some sort, whether Black Spiral Dancers, Pentex teams, leeches or sorcerers. Beat every other Abtoun in the sept at wrestling with only five minutes to rest in between each match.

### *Rank Five Challenges*

The most difficult challenge, however, faces the Rank Five Garou who wishes to rise to the powerful position of Elder. Elder Garou occupy a place at the heart of a sept or a tribe. These individuals hold the fate of the Garou Nation in their hands. Their decisions guide the Garou, their deeds stand as examples for younger werewolves, their mistakes can cause irreparable harm to Gaea and the to the Garou. Challenges for this Rank should test every possible quality the challenger possesses—regardless of aspect.

#### **Sample Rank Five Challenges**

- Visit a coven of each of the twelve tribes of the Garou Nation without being noticed, fix a magical or challenge, and bring back proof of each visit. This is a test of all a Ragabash's best skills—it also serves as a way for Garou of any tribe to practice stealth and cunning.

- Locate a lost coven and convince it to accept spirit to adopt it. Redeem, cleanse and rename a powerful Bane without using Gifts other than Spirit Speech. Visit the courts of each Planetary Incarna, and bring back a token of each one's favor.

- Find a Garou lost in Hrafn, and reclaim her for Gaea. Destroy a powerful Wyrm-artifact by hurling it into the Abyss.

- Accompany an Elder on her final quest and record her deathsong for the tribe. While this may seem simple and unworthy of a Rank Five Challenge, in reality, this test places the Garou who accompanies the Elder in a great deal of danger. Not only must she witness the Elder's final glorious battle, she must also survive it herself and remember what transpired— all without detracting from the heroism of her subject.

- Lead a group of Garou against a major Wyrm creature or other enemy. Defeat the creature without losing any of your comrades. Kill the enemy without injuring yourself. Those who would lead in battle must know how to win without needlessly sacrificing others. Occasionally this challenge leads to a posthumous attainment of Rank Five. Surely to Abtoun, this kind of challenge also tests potential leaders of any tribe.

## *Rites:*

### *Ceremonies from the Heart*

In a game in which the characters often act Rage Dictate to their actions, where savagery rules the day, the less bestial aspects of characters need to play

machines quickly become boring caricatures, both to other characters and to themselves. After awhile, mature players want something more than just role-playing experience points and kick-ass battles. Obviously, to play role-playing hooks can add speed, pattern, a tendency to fall for red herrings help players figure out the personality of their characters. The Gifts and Rites a character chooses to learn also speak volumes about the character's personality, but look and goals and can only define her role in the pack or sept and chronicle. Many players (and not a few Storytellers) tend to look in these as "kew powers" they have access to rather than essential pieces of the character's existence, however it's up to the Storyteller to coax her troupe into seeing their powers in a different light. This is especially true for Rites, which usually require time invested in them and have few combat applications.

So, how does the Storyteller encourage making Rites important to the players? By making them a central focus of the Chronicle. All too often Rites are ignored or take place offstage and aside from the main action. In the end, in a game, many Storytellers and players don't want to take time out to do the "bookkeeping," so someone who has to simply announce he's doing it and the troupe moves on to more interesting pursuits. And by doing so, they miss some of the most significant compelling role-playing and character development in *Werewolf*.

Rites are the spiritual touchstones through which a Garou interacts with Gaea's creation, the spirits and other werewolves. They serve to keep werewolves in touch with the spirits with whom they enjoy pacts. Rites also provide Garou with a structured social interaction. All the members of the pack or sept may partake in Rites and are in fact expected to do so. Garou from other tribes or covens can meet together bound by common Rites to a common purpose regardless of other differences they might have. Finally, Rites are the tools with which werewolves remain in accord with or restore balance to the natural world, the realm of Jambra and the spirits as well as giving the Garou a means for pursuing their goals and dreams. Rites are accomplishments. Considering how many activities Rites encompass, it would be strange if Storytellers couldn't find great role-playing hooks in performing

them. Likewise, it should be easy to look for places where rites would fit into your storyline and encourage your players to play out the appropriate rite.

### *Invoking the Pack*

While Garou usually wait to a ritual node to lead their ceremonies and most often involve the sept performing the rite at their caern, it is possible for a pack to enact rites in their own so long as one of them knows the rite and the others participate. Some packs even create their own personal versions of rites to help define their role in their creation. Storytellers who want to involve their players in creative endeavors to enhance their role playing should encourage them to take the rites they know and find special effects, actions and words for invoking the rites that are particularly significant to their own pack. You might even want to increase the difficulty level of the rite as a reward for their creativity as well as excellent role playing. When doing so, the players should consider that rites serve as religious or spiritual experiences as well as being invocations that bring down magical effects.

If players seem initially resistant to doing rites, you could introduce such ceremonies by having the characters be required to attend and participate in rites performed at the caern by their sept. If Storytellers wish to take this part of the ritemaster and make the resulting rite truly interesting, players may become more willing to play out other rites on their own. And once they're interested, your players could learn to enjoy taking a break from roleplay or roleplay for to perform the rites that define the more human and spiritual side of werewolves.

### *Jazzing It Up*

So how do you generate that interest? Take it out of the ordinary. Most players (with a few exceptions) tend to be big extroverts of one sort or another and usually enjoy getting to grandstand for a little while, garnering attention for their cool ideas. Encourage them in this. While Phlox and Theurges are typically considered the most appropriate auspices for becoming ritemasters and leading rites, any Garou possessing the appropriate rite may lead it. Thus any pack member can become the star of the moment. Still, Theurges and Phlox are part of our scholarly performance rites as well as the most developed. Make it clear that they have scope within the game to use those skills. If it's more likely they will choose to learn more rites and round out their characters more fully. It also gives them more role playing opportunities, something few players find objectionable.

While you should not push your troupe beyond boundaries they're unwilling to cross, many methods

exist for encouraging more interaction and creativity from the players. Some players find it uncomfortable to experiment with live-action role playing and they may need a little more persuading than others, but the real key to pumping up rites is to put them out. We don't mean you should perform some sort of pseudo-dramatic complete with animal sacrifice. But lighting some incense, drawing some symbols in the dirt or doing something symbolic of the rite can all help establish the mood and help players envision the ceremony.

Bringing props appropriate to the rite, drawing a circle, and lighting candles are all options. Playing background music or chanting. Think of ways to involve the players in the rites. Do any of them particularly excel at wordcraft? That player's character may be the one to invoke the spirit and powers of the rite. Musically inclined players might want to write their own accompaniment or play rhythmic drum parts.

The main thing is to get your players involved. While all these methods have been suggested before, they are usually used as background techniques designed to enhance mood. Here, we're recommending that you use them as part of the rite itself. Consider how effective it could be to hold your game outside around a campfire or think about holding a cleansing rite in a sweat lodge or puo. Even if you do no more than

invoking the rite, then describe it to the players, it should generate more excitement than simply saying, "And you do a rite of condensation."

### *Floundering with the Spirits*

The pact made at the beginning of their existence between the Garou and the spirits is a serious business.

As the Garou struggle for an spirit's cooperation in the Garou's rites, a bargain Chao's warriors have kept throughout time. Thus, rites serve to link the Garou with spirits they may call upon for aid and who may in turn, ask the Garou for help. Storytellers whose troupes conduct many rites (roleplayed or not) should keep track of what rites the characters use and how often. Certain types of spirits act as the usual conditions between the Garou and the mystic energy that powers different types of rites. Packs or septs that repeatedly perform a given rite over time may come to realize an affinity with the spirits that empower those rites at the story level so secret. This could potentially create a situation in which the spirit ritemaster or group attains a lowered difficulty level (by one or two points depending on the strength of the bond) when performing that rite. It should also open them up to demands from some of the spirits whose aid is given. This is an often overlooked source for story material, as spirit requesting aid from the characters in return for past

services and continued support. It also gives the storyteller an interesting supporting cast member to portray when the troupe enacts a rite appropriate to that spirit's domain. Below are some of the most significant rites associated with spirits in the Garou arsenal. Feel free to extrapolate and use these suggestions to enhance other rites not detailed here.

### *Rite of Summoning*

While any Garou that knows the proper rite may attempt to summon spirits, it's not always easy to do so, nor is their cooperation assured when they arrive. After all, they have their own agenda and aren't just hanging around waiting for some cub to snap his claws and whistle up a spirit to help him out. Granted, totems and spirits who have a particular interest in whatever task the Garou wishes them to perform usually arrive more promptly and evince less hostility when they come, but even they may not appear at an inappropriate moment or a time when they are busy elsewhere. As they are required to attend twice successfully summoned, even the most affable spirit may react with something less than joy—especially if the spirit considers the task the Garou summoned it for to be demeaning, frivolous or particularly dangerous to the spirit's continued existence. So too will they react more favorably to a serious, well-thought-out summons to aid in the preservation of Cain's handiwork.

As the storyteller, you must place yourself in the spirit's shoes, so to speak, and judge how well the character performed their summoning and to what use they intend to put your services. Then react appropriately. Although there is a specific chart given in the Rite of Summoning's description, feel free to modify it to reflect the roleplaying that surrounds the enactment of the rite. After all, if you had an important appointment you'd been awaiting for months (one that could well determine your future) and some jackass forced you to miss it in order to demonstrate to his buddies that he could make you bring a pizza over to his house, you'd be pretty rate. You'd be even more pissed off if that same jackass then forced you into his basement at gunpoint and chained you up down there with the intention of making you clean his house every week. On the other hand, if you received word that a humble and appreciative student wished to learn martial arts from you and offered heartfelt praise and tangible valuable tokens of respect to you in return, you'd probably enjoy the experience and feel honored by the interest. Keep that in mind when reacting as the summoned spirit.

While spirits may initially be hostile, it should be possible to change that through good roleplaying as well. Characters might offer praise or extreme gratitude thanks for the spirit's generosity in appearing to assist

so they're compelled to appear (but they might like the flattery anyway). Or the characters could ask the spirit what it would like in exchange for its aid. Those who plan ahead might even seek certain things the spirits are known to like and have them on hand as an offering when the spirit arrives. It's only courteous since the Garou have interrupted whatever the spirit was doing.

Remember that the spirit doesn't really like to be bothered. Ask the spirit if it doesn't wish. Be sure to demand such a treatment when playing a just-as-spirit-if-necessary to get your troupe thinking along the right lines.

From this it's easy to see how important it is for you as the Storyteller to set the tone by playing the spirit to the hilt. Some thoughts on doing this are given in Chapter Two. In like manner, you should encourage the players to have their characters develop strategies for attracting the spirits they need to summon. Discovering an item scent, intricate drawing,

a series of praises, color or other element that each spirit finds attractive and appealing may even serve as the focus of a storyline leading up to the rite. Encourage your players to think symbolically; a fire elemental might appreciate it if its summoner wore a goatee shaped like a salamander, while a pain spirit might appreciate the summoning circle being drawn by a blade or in its summoner's blood. Whatever else they do, the characters should at least enact out the ceremony they intend to perform to summon the spirit and the players should present it to you before making rolls for success. Obviously the more powerful the spirit to be called, the more steps in the ceremony, the greater the amount of time spent either in performing intricate steps or beseeching the spirit's help.

### *Rite of Spirit Awakening*

In many ways, this rite should emulate that of Spirit Summoning in terms of player participation as they share a similar purpose. However, instead of specifically enacting or performing a rhythmic piece on some sort of instrument that should be the primary focus used in the rite. You might consider actually providing a drum or other percussion instruments for the players to use. Maracas, rattles, shakers, two sticks rapping tips to click together might serve for this purpose. The something innately primitive and exciting about pounding out rhythms, especially ones that grow in intensity or speed when performed. Adding other instruments (according to the players' talents) can add the dimension of melody. In essence, you're making an alarm noise to awaken the spirit, just as your alarm clock summons you from sleep or a siren alerts you of an emergency in more mundane instances. If you leave the room and the troupe is inclined to do so, pacing out the dance around the instrumentalists and how long it

growing as appropriate can also get the blood moving and give greater scope to roleplaying the rite. Of course, you might have to walk the pathhouse or the exorcist on the pathhouse to sleep it the rest.

Again, as Storyteller, it's your job to enact the personality of the spirit that has been awakened. It's your unique challenge to try to impart a recognizable personality to the spirit.

In the actual rite description, awakening a VW bus is mentioned. So, how do you play a bus anyway? Is it even necessary for you to? The object will appear in the Umbra, true, but remain stationary unless used in the physical world. So, it says someone drives the bus in the physical world and you as the bus spirit move through the Umbra landscape. Do you need to make bus sounds? How about giving out the impression of straining to get up in his many VWs experience. While this can be fun and entertaining to both Storytellers and players, you need to ask yourself if giving that far exceeds the mood you're trying to set in your game. Cursing as if it was the bus' exhaust may be a little more appropriate than appreciation of your own playing expertise. On the other hand, playing a weapon used repeatedly to give death in the physical world as an aggressive bloodthirsty and vicious entity can send chills up your players' spines if done right.

Two and consider exactly what it is they're trying to awaken and why — especially since awakening a spirit does not grant any control over it.

Remember, it is the name given to the practice of awakening spirits. As most plant spirits are benevolent, you shouldn't have to enact any seriously hostile spirits. Such spirits give of their powers as if they were taking granting one use of their portion of abilities. Each plant grants a different ability. Some of the most common plants and herbs are detailed below, but Storytellers should feel free to create their own as needed. The suggested personality traits consist of an opinion concerning suitability if you don't like the personality, then a quick change it's your game. The most often awakened plants are those with medicinal qualities.

• Basil  
Noted for its use in cooking (especially in pesto), basil becomes a potent magical herb when sanctified. It is used to cure the effects of poisons inflicted by venom such as snake or insect bites or stings, removing the toxin from the victim. The second use involves mixing the plant with wildflowers during the ritual. This produces a powerful antidote which have a game effect similar to the Home Grown Gift. Insect (a though not as potent). Last, a rite rescues from fatal poisonings or great scenes of

## A Note Toward Balance

Some of the game effects suggested as powers for Awakened plants might seem a little powerful, allowing a Storyteller to pull off tricks that would be difficult to accomplish with Gifts. However, remember that you have an inordinate amount of control over the Rate of Spirit Awakening — you set the power level of the awakened spirit, to say nothing of its willingness to use its powers for the Carou in question. Don't worry too much about the power levels involved; if your players seem to be gaining too much for too little effort, it's an easy thing to start having the spirits become a little less effective, particularly if some of the characters possess high Rage. Plant spirits have a history of preferring low Rage Carou to those with more supernatural anger, something that works very well against the more fervent characters in a group. And above all, remember that you want to reward them for participating in rites — after all, by so doing, they're drawing nearer to what it means to be Carou.

scorpions overrunning obnoxious villains can easily ensue. But how should you act when performing awakened rites? Even asking the question sounds a little weird. Since it can grant both poison immunity and create poisonous arachnids (depending on how it's used), basil might be a very amiable but personality (and perhaps a little vain about its growing proximity with insects). And if the players decide their characters should also awaken the horse dung, you're on your own.

### • Catmint

Acknowledged as a means to bring on late menses, catmint has traditionally been used for birth control (not always terribly successfully). It also has a strong attraction for cats, hence the name. When awakened, this second power is substantially broadened, making it irresistible to felines. Feline creatures, including cats, must make a Willpower roll to resist being prey to the herb's lure. The number of successes they achieve equals the number of actions they can take before being rendered harmless (due to being, sick, cat, or the catmint putting an sickeningly, drugged piece as a result of digesting it). The difficulty of the roll equals the Growth of the plant. So how do you play catmint? At the risk of sounding facetious, the mint part suggests being fresh, while the other calls for a more catlike mindset.

### • Foxglove

Foxglove grows wild or may be cultivated in gardens. Its best known use is to produce digitalis, a drug

used in treating heart disease. Its lesser-known properties as a sanctified magical flower involve protecting against faerie magic (adding twine to the difficulty roll of any faerie spell or supernatural power used against the wearer). Its spirit is gentle, appearing very calming and down-to-earth to reflect its properties.

#### • Peyote

Adapted plant to man. Native Americans, peyote is a cactus found in the Southwest. Priests of some tribes, called buttons, are chewed or holed into a tea and drunk. In its mundane use, peyote has a hallucinatory effect. Its awakened version is considerably more powerful. Few Theurges beyond those of the Ukrena or Wendiga know the rite to awaken peyote; perhaps a good thing since few beyond those two tribes tend to use it wisely. They rarely use it even without sanctifying to promote vision quests and dream walks.

Sanctified peyote has several uses. First, it allows someone who ingests it to step into the Limbra, without relying on effort involved and to remain there for a number of hours equal to his Gnosis. Additionally, the infusion created by boiling allows someone who is terrified to ignore his Derangement again for as many hours as she has Gnosis. Finally, someone who drinks the tea may achieve restful sleep, ignoring caster canoes until awakening refreshed. Peyote should be portrayed as quite mystical, somewhat difficult to follow, and a little spacey. Lying underneath this trippy facade, however, should be hard-won, visionary wisdom.

#### • Woundwort

Also known as plantain, this plant provides powerful healing when awakened. When used as a poultice or brewed into a tincture, it heals all damage taken or disease inflicted from frenzied combat or spirit travels. The sanctified plant heals as many levels (including aggravated damage) as it has Gnosis per use. Only one such poultice can be used in any twenty-four hour period, however. Taken as a tincture, woundwort heals internal injuries. For each dose ingested, one Wyrmhole level can be healed. Thus if a Garou had eaten tainted meat and taken two health levels of damage from it, one level could be healed by drinking the woundwort tincture. Woundwort should most probably be portrayed as a caring, nurturing healer eager to erase damage taken in battle.

#### • Yaupon

Found in the lowlands of the Southeast (as far west as Texas), Yaupon's leaves provide its power. To be awakened, the leaves must be browned in an oven or over a fire, then holed in water. This creates a bitter black brew that allows its drinker to ignore fatigue for up to a day per dose, performing tasks without sleep and at no penalties for the lack thereof. Naturally, pushing

oneself so hard eventually takes its toll. (Three days should be the absolute limit.) And a Limber must sleep out her fatigue to the number of hours she "burned." The brew imparts no stamina for needing to eat any inhuman fluids, nor does it give any abnormal strength beyond the drinker's own natural abilities.

Yaupon is also used in divination. A Theurge who knows the rite can see the future of anyone who shares it with her. Thus, it is also used to unmask enemies within their midst, to spot members who may be straying from code to the Wyrm's grasp. Yaupon might be portrayed as creepy and downbeat as it imparts so much energy, yet also insightfulness.

Obviously, there are far more than these few plants and herbs to choose from. Feel free to consult herbal sources or books on plant mythology and use it to help you develop special properties and personalities for these spirits. Keep in mind that no one plant should be an automatic cure-all or solve the character's problems with a quick fix. You might also consider whether these spirits ask anything in return for the characters that make use of them. Who knows what plants might need? Fertilization? Cross-pollination? Weeding? Perhaps they simply want the characters to take cuttings from them and start new growths elsewhere, to ensure their continued survival. They might request, in exchange for its far from insignificant aid, then roleplay the bargaining. And remember, scent, taste or touch placement in the sun or shade, or any other weird plant control, might help or hinder communication. Have fun!

### *Rite of the Fetish*

As with the Rite of Summoning Garou, performing the Rite of the Fetish must once again force, flatter, bribe or cajole spirits into aiding them. Rather than asking for a one-time effort, however, this rite creates a permanent magical object imbued with spirit. The rule of course, that the spirit must give up its freedom in order to enter into a material form. While some ultra-generous spirits might readily agree to such a plan, most are less than thrilled by the prospect. As this is the case, Storytellers should ask the players just how well they are preparing said object. Unless the item is reverently cleaned and cleared as detailed in the description of the rite, any spirit asked to enter should automatically refuse. After all, this is going to be that spirit's home for the foreseeable future (which could encompass centuries); it certainly doesn't want dirty dishes in the sink and grime in the bathtub.

Your players will be paranoid about the item so take care to calm them. You should really make them work for this one. Playing your rite being asked

semi-permanently enter a prison and work for the master in perpetuity can be a real challenge. You have to argue your own point of view, even fight to maintain your freedom if you're being coerced into this, but you must also be willing to be swayed by the arguments or impassioned pleas to serve Cuius causa est. That's what the spirit of the fetishists all do. As always, however, there might need to be a haggling session wherein you as the spirit make known your desires and the fetishists make known theirs to become a fetish. Whether spirits have a large enough scope of interest to allow for counter-fetishism is up to you to decide. Play it as you see it.

Don't think that after you've given in (or been beaten into submission) you have become a personality and become merely an object to be used at the characters' whim. Fetishes will be created for specific purposes and ought to have unique properties. Otherwise, they lose their mystic aura and become just another tool like a wrench or a screwdriver. Further, players usually enjoy having something truly different rather than just the same fetish as everyone else. So why not have

fetishes that playfully cater around on how to use them? For example, the Carol happens with a pact that its concern is with the fetish being the most important thing. Naturally, if you bedevil the characters with such behavior, you'd better make sure the fetish is useful enough that they can't wear it out or just chuck it away. Remind them (and remind the players at need) that the pact the Carol hold with the spirits requires them to always treat a fetish with honor to order to keep it.

Some Carol bind unwilling spirits into fetishes, which almost always results in a fetish that is difficult and rebellious. At their discretion, the Carol can also stray and use fetish spirits as tools. The Carol knows the characters are loathe to let a fetish be used for anything property. Though the Carol must let such fetishes cursed, the pact still requires that they show honor to the spirit inside such an object. It's somewhat ironic (and this may be played upon) that turning a spirit into a fetish permanently against its will can hardly be considered honoring it. If your troupe's characters insist on doing this, make sure if they exact a heavy price and make certain they do it only out of extreme necessity and sincere desperation in order to serve Cuius causa est, if they're making the fetish just to acquire another tool for their selves, Cuius causa est.



what they get when a horde of spirits allied to the one they're harassing turn up to beleaguer the upstarts who are standing a hair's breadth from breaking the time-honored pact. This affair would spell disaster for all Garou everywhere so make sure the players realize the severity of what they're doing.

Although almost all spirits who inhabit fetishes are Gofflings, what happens when they aren't? In one case, for example, the chaos that could erupt through some vainly somehow managing to bind a totem spirit into a fetish. Would that fetish then take on all the powers of the totem? Would a pack or sept dedicated to that totem lose its connection and powers once the spirit was freed? And just what might happen in the vicinity of the fetish as the totem spirit becomes increasingly hostile the longer it is penned up? Could the totem summon lesser spirits or Garou dedicated to it to aid in its escape? Would its particular job go undone while it was captive? This could become the basis for an entire chronicle culminating in a showdown with the owner(s) of the fetish and the pack determined to rescue their totem. And if a totem spirit might cause difficulties, how about something even more powerful, such as an *ancarna* or *Ceestrine*? These great beings might cause untold destruction, assuming someone was powerful, persuasive or tricky enough to force them into doing things in the first place.

As fetishes are rare and treasured items, they aren't just found lying around waiting to be picked up. If your game isn't humming with potent fetishes spilling from every generous elder's pockets, or falling by the bucketload from every defeated foe, sooner or later one or more players will want to create their own. Obviously, they can or we wouldn't be having this discussion, but how do you judge how to determine the Gnosis level of the totem the player plans to create? The fetishes detailed in second edition *Werewolf* all have a Gnosis rating somewhere between five and eight, with most having a rating of 6. Each fetish usually does only one specific thing (with the notable exception of grand knives). As Gnosis is directly the measure of the spirit bound into the fetish, the more powerful the spirit, the greater the Gnosis level of the totem. In general, if the fetish is intended for protective or defensive purposes or for general usefulness (such as the Spirit Totem), Gnosis should be five or six. Those that disguise Garou or hide them from scrutiny as well as basic weaponry (such as knives) call for a Gnosis rating of six to seven, depending on usefulness and rarity. Many Garou have knives, for example, but few have Phaxbe's Veil, making the veil of higher Gnosis due to its rarity. For those that are extremely rare, affect more than one opponent in an aggressive manner or

had more than one power might rate a seven or even an eight. Additionally, if a greater spirit is bound into a fetish, the Gnosis level ought to rise appreciably. Then again, if you allow your players' characters to have such powerful spirits and fetishes, you'd better be prepared to pay out the ensuing weirdness with all the Gnosis at your disposal.

After the level of the fetish itself, this isn't quite as necessary, as the player needn't spend Background points on a fetish gained in play. However, what if you like the fetish so much you want to make it available to later characters? Or if you'd like to create your own fetishes, but are unsure as to what level to assign it to? Although far from scientific, these few guidelines may be of some help.

**Level One: Useful.** A fetish with a power that is useful, but not overpowering in a specific situation.

**Level Two: Reliable.** A fetish that is potent in limited situations, or generally helpful in much of the time; also, a fetish weapon no more useful than a werewolf's claws.

**Level Three: Potent.** A fetish weapon with a minor blessing or a fetish reliably useful in dangerous situations.

**Level Four: Powerful.** A fetish weapon with a secondary power that is either consistent (such as a knife dealing silver damage), a powerful and requiring activation. Also, a fetish with a very useful power.

**Level Five: Legendary.** A fetish weapon with multiple powers, or a fetish that is exceptionally powerful or versatile. Most fetishes of this level are great treasures, and much honor is attached to them.

**Level Six: Beyond legendary.** Fetishes with powers beyond that of mortals. One of the most powerful or worthy of the greatest heroes that ever lived.

### *Rite of the Totem*

In many troupes, the Storyteller and players consult to determine which totem the pack wants. Sometimes they try to figure out which seems most appropriate to the tribes or personalities of the pack. At other times, the pack chooses a totem that it wants whatever it seems gives them the most advantages. In a few cases, players choose based on whether it seems "cool" rather than "useful or viable" or even choose a totem that won't require too much work from them to remain in the spirit's good graces. Depending on what you and your players want from the game, these are all valid reasons for choosing a particular totem. It is also a very preferable to have a totem the characters feel comfortable with and one they feel they can serve without having bend their characters' personalities to fit.

The actual ritual calls for a pack to anoint their eyes with a holy substance in order to grant them the magical gift of seeing the trail of the spirit to whom they wish to dedicate themselves. While rituals of marijuana or tobacco or some similar substance, creative players might have their troupes search for a particular herb associated with or attractive to the spirit +cs, and use it as a totem. At the Storyteller's discretion (depending on how hard it is to acquire this information or the rarity of the substance) using this element

the rite could make the spirit +cs questioner become better disposed toward the pack, accepting them more readily as its children. Naturally, even using the special ingredient is not a substitute for good roleplaying. Members of the pack should still be required to present their case to take it on through both speech and actions.

While the rite may require the characters to undertake some ritual quest to prove their worth to the spirit, the Storyteller could help the pack improve their character

being assigned an easier task or needing no special assignment at all by bowing the spirit on first meeting.

104 By doing the rite anew. Which spirit are they seeking? Is it a totem of respect or war? Custom designing their approach to impress the spirit with their maturity, prowess or whatever the spirit stands for should be rewarded. By arriving on the scene with the proof of their skills or of successful hunts, battles and what have you, the pack can prove to the spirit that they are both worthy and serious and that they have a lot to offer the spirit in return for its patronage. Of course, it's your job as Storyteller to play any spirits the pack might have encountered before with such skill that the players will realize the gravity of asking for a totem's favor. When they actually meet you

also play up the totem's majestic presence so the characters feel as though they've received a great honor in allying with it. Totems should embody the principals of Respect, War, Wisdom or Cunning and should reward those whom it adopts as its children to behave in a particular manner. It's up to you as the Storyteller to portray the spirit in such a fashion that the players (and their characters) aren't confused by it. A pack member showing his wisdom in defeating an enemy without the need for a combat or a threat of war should receive the totem's interest from the spirit. Those Carou who approach a totem of war after having won a difficult battle through both good tactical decisions and personal bravery, however, ought to be flattered by the amount of attention the spirit lavishes on them.

So what happens when the players don't know which spirit they ought to choose as a patron or when you want to introduce a spirit into the game that is appropriate to your setting, but not detailed in the main rulebook. The rite calls for the characters to be able to track specific spoor and distinguish it from any other. In this case, though, the characters don't have a clue what they're looking for. In such cases, fall's even more to the Storyteller to point your troupe in the proper direction. Since they don't know what they're seeking, you need to have an entire adventure in the Umbra ready for the characters. Rather than following a specific trail, the substance rubbed into their eyes should let them see the area of most need, leading them in the direction they need to go to perform great deeds that will attract the spirit you've chosen for them. Alternatively, you could present the troupe with several choices and note which one they feel is most important, then use that as a guide for selecting which spirit offers its patronage. Finally, you might have their sept assign the pack a task in the Umbra culminating with a rite to acquire a totem for themselves. You could have an entire adventure involving several spirits that evince interest, who each offer the pack their nod in return for completing the quest. Playing each spirit presents quite a roleplaying challenge for Storytellers, especially if you really want the pack to choose one totem over another. Actually having the various totems played out to the hilt, however, may be instrumental in helping the characters choose the one they feel best suits them.

*Becoming Carou:  
The Rite of Passage*

No cub is accepted as a true Carou until she undergoes her rite of passage. Although the cub's tribe isn't established either until this seminal rite is performed, it's pretty obvious which tribe most cubs belong with. Those that are born to a Carou parent of Silver Fang stock could hardly be considered a Chad or Gara or Ukena. In like manner, most tribes keep track of their Kintola whenever possible and perform a baptism of Fire on newborns if they are Carou. This marks such a cub with a spiritual brand, the pictogram that identifies the cub's tribe. It isn't that difficult then, to design a rite of passage to incorporate elements that are important to the cub's tribe-to-be. While the tribe may not yet acknowledge that the cub is part of their society, they usually don't deny that the cub's got some ties with its own tribe. A notable exception exists with the Black Furies, who do not accept male cubs.

It's up to the Storyteller to devise a true rite of passage for the characters that will test their and prove their honor, wisdom and courage to the tribe so they may gain acceptance. As when dealing with spirits, there is little point in sending an Ukena pack into a

head-on confrontation with Wyrm creatures. The tribe won't honor them for it and may even outlaw it if they truly belong elsewhere. A quest to uncover secret knowledge guarded by Wyrm creatures that must be lured and bypassed or tricked into surrendering their secrets, however, is eminently suitable and can gain the characters instant respect for successfully completing it. Playing the events that send the cubs off to complete their passage requires storytellers to assume roles that impress upon the cubs just how serious — and deadly — rites of passage are supposed to be. After all, if they can't complete a difficult but not impossible quest, they hardly deserve a place within the tribe.

But what occurs when the cub's parentage is not known? Kinfolk may move around, a Kin-Ferch sent to watch over the cub may later in its duties or some thing else could happen to leave the newly changed werewolf as a lost cub. In this case, the rite of passage becomes the best means for discovering what tribe the cub actually belongs with. The tribe that performs the rite will not necessarily end up with a new member. The rite may prove that the cub is destined for some other tribe entirely. Depending on relations between the two tribes, the one giving the rite might demand that the cub forswear her natural tribe and join theirs instead or might assist the cub in locating and joining the tribe to which she actually belongs.

Scent of the True Form can tell that a roving werewolf is unquestionably Carou, but it does not convey a sense of "tribe." Only genealogy and research can provide that.

Blood goes a long way as well. True, blood is not always proof of one's worthiness. Indeed, a male born to the Black Furies might prove during his rite of passage that he has the greatest affinity for the Ciel of Fenris and their creed, but might not be offered a place within their ranks. He would then have to apply elsewhere and take whatever tribe accords him welcome. While this is a rarity, it's surprising how many players want their characters to be mysterious and unknown, to have secrets that other characters don't know about them. As the Storyteller you need to accommodate that and not give anything away to the other players, yet still create a rite of passage that will identify the character's tribe (at least to that character's player) so he may receive the Ciefs he should have. If the player herself is unsure what tribe she wants her character to have, you need to watch how she deals with the challenges of the rite you've set up and make your best guess based on her actions and words which tribe is the best fit. If the player is unhappy, ask her to make a choice for herself and create situations appropriate to the tribe.

Sometimes, no matter what you do, characters simply refuse to fit into a tribal stereotype. This is fine!

Each tribe is a diverse community — an inverted pack of clones. Some of the best roleplaying opportunities come from uncomfortable juxtapositions, such as an Amish cub born to the heritage of Ciel of Fenris. And in — to be sure, the love of family is there, but sparks will surely fly as the cub's philosophy of non-violence runs counter to the Fenrisian ways. But the new werewolves and apparently ultra-social werewolves also provide endless fuel for storyteller. Just make certain the rite of Passage reflects what the cub has been up until now, challenges them physically, socially and mentally, and gives them a good glimpse of what they can expect from the future. If you do, you can't go far wrong, even if your potential Black Fury turns out to be a sweet tempered Ciel of Gata.

### *Seasonal Tribal Rites*

All Carou perform at least some seasonal rites to honor Gata and mark the turning of the year. All the tribes know these great rites, though each tribe places its own stamp on the performance of them. Every Carou who can attend such rites is encouraged to do so. You, as Storyteller, can maximize these rites in your players' minds by making them truly elaborate affairs. Where renown can be won or lost for their knowledge and performance or their lack thereof. No Carou in his right mind should disrupt the seasonal rites unless feeling to do so would bring down destruction on the entire sept. By making these rites so important to your players' characters, you can also encourage them to perform some of the seasonal tribal rites each tribe observes. It's especially fun to convince a mixed pack or sept that all the tribes' seasonal rites should be observed by everyone (pack or sept) and see the fallout as a member of one tribe attempts to understand why his pack or septmate's tribe would even bother celebrating in such a manner. Though these rites first appeared in the original *Storytellers Handbook*, they have been streamlined and reworked for inclusion here. Storytellers should feel free to create their own seasonal rites as some packs and septs may observe such rites as often as once per month. Obviously these rites are performed only at the appropriate times of year they were designed to celebrate. Only a few seasonal rites are presented here for lack of space, but many others exist or can be created, especially for a single tribe, sept or pack.

#### **• The Mysteries (Level Three)**

Performed by the Black Furies at the turn of the first new moon after the Winter Solstice (December 20, 21 or 22), the Mysteries hark back to ancient times. Creek females would gather to celebrate the mysteries — with the female sex, birth, death, renewal, and rejuvenation of their place in the ongoing cycles of life. The Furies meet with a coven of — with moon-



shapeshifters a particular right to play a tortuously, the various kinds fell into quarrels and then into war.

In the lands of eastern Asia, the Middle Kingdom, this war did not become the total catastrophe known as the War of Rage. Changers did fight each other often bloodily, but no single kind drove another to extinction, and through it all the kinds retained some common purpose. The Beast Courts of the Emerald Mother were and are, literal courts, formal gatherings of the elders of each kind with authority to give orders and dispense justice. While the Courts have sometimes been greatly out of action, in some places cease working for a while, there is a more or less continuous tradition of governance in the midst of chaos.

The Beast Courts' sages present a much more complex view of history than their Western counterparts. The prevailing view among supernatural denizens of the Middle Kingdom features a great Wheel of the Ages, it begins with the consummate perfection of the First Age and progressive descent into decadence, confusion and woe. Some stories say that the world took changed shape in the catastrophes that ended the Second Age, though nobody can say for sure. The world now stands poised on the brink of the Sixth Age, the era of greatest darkness. Old lore says that the wheel will continue to turn, into a Seventh Age of somewhat better conditions and the way back up to a Twelfth Age of restored perfection. It's hard for most hengevoks to believe that now, and many fear that history will grind to a halt with the Sixth Age. There may be endless misery or simple annihilation on ahead, depending on who tells the tale, but hope is scarce.

The Wheel of the Ages isn't just a matter of interpretation. Elders of the Beast Courts can document specific changes in their relations with the spirit world, the operation of familiar Courts and even their ability to draw on the Rage within themselves. When one age gives way to the next, it matters in practical, tangible ways, at least to changers attuned to the conditions of the Middle Kingdom.

## *Court Fundamentals*

### *The Shen*

One of the most obvious differences between the Middle Kingdom and elsewhere is the relations between the shen or supernatural races. Some members of each keep to their own kind and follow a system of rank and renown like that described in *Werewolf: the various Breed* books and other source material. Most band together across Breed lines, as described in *Changeling: the dreamers*.

Things are far from smooth in inter-Breed relations. Every Breed has its own history, its grudges and jealousies. The kind of shared nature competes with

## *Ada or Everwhere*

Very few individuals have the connections and information to see detail.

the historical accounts provided by various supernatural communities. In particular, anyone who knew the lore of the Beast Courts thoroughly is unlikely to be misled.

out of suspicious western Theages, let alone out of Mokole and other observers. There's no stock Werewolf answer as to whether and to what extent the changes created by changing ages of history affected the world outside the Middle Kingdom. Whatever answer you settle on for a chronicle, if in fact the question seems to need answering, should be hard to discover and even harder to verify.

the bonds of community. The Courts host plotting of all kinds from subtle intrigue to overt violence. It's just that the bonds of community have yet to become as irrevocably shattered as they were in the West.

The Beast Courts also deal with other sorts of shen beyond the ranks of shapeshifters. The most common and influential of these are the Kuei-jin, the so-called "Kindred of the East." These strange vampires have a complex history of their own, which *Kindred of the East* presents in detail. The first of their kind, in the Second Age of the world, were mortal men and women given special power by great spirits and assigned to guard society all the world over, seeing humanity much as the Garou once tended the natural world. Gradually they succumbed to the temptations of power and the lure of corrupt, evil spirits like those who empower the Black Spiral Dancers. The spirits that originally created them turned their founding gifts into curses.

Now the Kuei-jin exist in a peculiar underground. A human soul, which escapes from its afterlife in one of the many halls of the Middle Kingdom's Dark Labyrinth, can sometimes reanimate with its body when driven by a sense of unfinished duty. Unfortunately, the dead body cannot make the vital energy that sustains all living creatures—what the Beast Courts and other shen call "chi"—and must feed on chi from other sources. As it happens, the blood of living people contains chi in particularly concentrated form, so that hapless Kuei-jin begin as blood suckers, and unless they master the art of drawing chi from less conveniently potent reserves.

Unlike most Western Leeches, the Kuei-jin maintain an extreme sense of moral duty. They exist precisely to do the good and necessary deeds they did not in life. This gives them a point in common with the Beast Courts, though there remains much tension between those sworn by the Green Mother to protect life and those who must prey

more richly. Like shapeshifters and vampires, to not pal around with so they often go on vacation together. They do have common enemies, like the spirits that would annihilate the world or paralyze it in the dark chaos of the Sixth Age, and mutual concerns, like the decline of spiritual understanding or moral corruption among living things. So they sometimes cooperate on matters where their interests overlap, and otherwise they mostly stay out of each other's way.

Even this limited interaction startles unprepared the West. At the occasion of a favored outsider has come in on the careful, et-quette-bound to see conversation of a Kachin and one or more *hengeyokai* is launched into an attack on the vampiric menace. Such efforts never go well, whether they end in a dead Kachin, a dead werewolf, grave injuries all around, or some other outcome. Though the *hengeyokai* warn them beforehand, the local drama spectacle carries a shock that no amount of calm discussion can Gaijin who see the sight and return to their home almost always end up talking suspiciously about Wynn-tainted Asian changers. In time, members of the Beast Courts tend to mix the Curio reaction proof that the West is filled with wilful ignorance and self-destructive superstition.

Other sorts of alien appear less frequently. The gods of the Middle Kingdom exist in a highly organized and controlled system presented over by the Jade Emperor of the dead Yu Huang. In recent years there's been a byzantine turning of this realm, but the empire persists. If you really want to get it to details, see *Asian Dark Kingdom of Jade and Ends of Empire*. For most purposes, it suffices to say that the equivalent of a classical Chinese empire rules over the Middle Kingdom's lands of the dead. The gods are something like Western fae and so on, along like guardian angels, and spend almost all the time concerned with their own matters.

### *The Sentai*

The Beast Courts equivalent of the pack is the *sentai*, or war party. Tradition calls for precisely five members, though sometimes a smaller force's members must each assume multiple roles and occasionally several individuals each take on one of the roles to form a larger hand.

- **The Lantern:** The Lantern leads the *sentai*, making overall decisions about how best to carry out their mission. It is a role most comparable to the *phoenix*.

- **The Fist:** The Fist exercises authority over tactical matters, providing tactical guidance and taking the lead in combat. The Fist is comparable to the *Ahrim*.

- **The Mirror:** The Mirror deals with the spirits,

sustaining powers; it is a role with much in common with the *Thouge*.

- **The Leaf:** The Leaf goes ahead of the *sentai* to scout, then back to report specific details of strategy and information-gathering. A leaf is most like a *Ryghash*.

- **The Pillar:** The Pillar provides support for all the other members of the *sentai* in their respective duties. It can be likened to the role of the *God* and, although the differences are many,

*Senta*, often formulates specific missions, rather than as a strong bonus, though shapeshifters who find they work well together are likely to continue to engage on the very sensible grounds that the Courts and Green Mother need all the successes they can get.

### *The Court*

Tradition also establishes roles for each court. In practice, most Courts lack enough members for each role to be filled by a separate individual, but they do what they can. Ideally, each Court takes responsibility for a separate caern, though the pressure of numbers often forces a Court to oversee two or more caerns.

- **The Regent:** The Regent holds highest authority in the Court, resolving disputes, issuing decrees and interpreting the Traditions and the dictates of the spirits. It's not a position many *hengeyokai* volunteer for, as it involves huge responsibilities and, in time of crisis, great risk. Courts do not choose regents lightly, and it becomes necessary to remove a regent every once involved usually suffers loss of renown.

- **The General:** The General, or warmaster, performs duties much like those of a caern warden, training the Court's members in the arts of war and ensuring that the caern itself is properly guarded. The general usually enjoys substantial prestige, but this can vary widely depending on the particular caern.

- **The Seer:** The Seer oversees the performance of rites and summonings and other interactions with the spirit world, like the Master of the Rite. The seer must be personally skilled at dealing with the spirits, though some seers delegate specific kinds of tasks to subordinates. The seer always exerts a great deal of influence over the life of the Court. Wherever possible, the seer has at least one student, preparing to step in should the seer become injured, lost, or the Court or otherwise unfitted to try.

- **The Historian:** The Historian keeps the lore of the caern and Court for future generations and instructs the other *hengeyokai* in all that has come before them. This is partly a matter of lore, but also eminent practicality; the historian is the best person to consult for historical information. Zhong Lang, the Asian Male, often fills this role, but

others are by no means unkind of, and necessity dictates some very tall, key assignments on occasion.

### *Honor*

The changers of the Middle Kingdom talk a great deal about honor—and engage in many acts to maintain and increase it—but they seldom offer full explanations to outsiders. As Storyteller, you need to know what the Middle Kingdom changers your players or characters encounter are thinking about.

The eastern Asian tradition of honor is first and foremost about meeting one's duty to the people with whom one is bound by oath and tradition. An honorable ruler seeks the well-being of those serving her and the triumph of their shared cause. An honorable servant seeks the greatest good for her master, usually acting without needing instruction so that the master is free to tend to other duties. An honorable warrior fights not just bravely but intelligently, protecting the other members of the community and showing integrity and ingenuity in prosecuting the battle most effectively.

Honor requires the individual changer to uphold the well-being of her family, her community, and the Beast Courts as a whole. Whether her innate capacities are great or small, what matters is that she does them well. Honor may call upon her to sacrifice herself if the sacrifice will win something important for the groups to which she's bound. It may also call upon her to endure when self-sacrifice would be easy, if she remains necessary to the life of her groups.

However, honor does not impose any obligations whatsoever on outsiders. Garou and other visitors from outside the Middle Kingdom do not belong to the Courts. They have a different (and, from the Asian point of view, flawed) understanding of Gaea, history, and the present moment. By definition they do not belong to Asian lineages or communities. If they choose to submit and take oaths of obligation, then they become part of the system. Otherwise, they're to be used as appropriate and discarded when irrelevant.

At least that's what honor requires. If an individual chooses to act out of other concerns, like a love of scholarship or a personal sense of benevolence, that's fine. Noble and kindly action earns praise among the Beast Courts just as it does in the West. Such action is, however, always a matter of individual choice rather than general duty, and there's no disgrace among the garou for sticking with honor as their guiding principle.

### *High War and Low War*

Tradition identifies two general categories of conflict that the changing breeds may engage in:

- **High War:** High War is the reality that most closely compares to Western stereotypes of noble Asian

warriors. Its participants agree to binding conventions and an overall code of honor. They make explicit declarations of war, and they fight with limited rules. While on the battlefield they may slaughter each other (and sometimes civilians not known for a battle to end with no survivors at all), they seek the blood only of their fellow warriors. Acts of general terror and rampant slaughter of bystanders or civilians are strictly off bounds. High War happens openly.

- **Low War:** Broadly speaking, all other conflict is Low War. Anything goes. Espionage, assassination, kidnapping, and terror all occur in Low War. In modern terms, so do acts of genocide and regional destruction, or at least they can if the participants choose to use such weapons. The only principle that guides Low War is the determination to destroy one's adversaries. It's possible to fight Low War with honor, but once it war begins, nobody should expect anything but utterly ruthless determination.

The werewolves and weremans of Asia are the greatest masters of High War. Their respect for traditions have practically refined it to an art form, full of ceremony and great dignity. There's an elegance to the total commitment of mind and body to the task of combat within boundaries, a terrible and once heard of only once looks to something very deep and dangerous. The werewolves and weremans are also the consummate masters of Low War. They do whatever they deem necessary and expect nothing of their enemies except that they should do as fully as they can. They don't ask when or how to quit and expect nothing but success in the endeavor.

High War makes the notion of worthy failure when one is true to one's code even while over-whelmed by superior force. Low War does not.

### *'The Shapeshifters of the East'* *Hakken*

The Hakken are a tribe of werewolves found only as far as observers know in the Middle Kingdom. They've sometimes been described as "shadow Lords, only like samurai." The Hakken share the Shadow Lords' driving ambition to exert authority and refusal to submit to the leadership of inferiors, but they combine it with equal dedication to a complex code of honor. As is usual with Garou, the werewolves of human culture or to go so far—the Hakken aren't just samurai, and were never precisely bound by samurai notions of honor. Their distinctive code of bushido, the warrior's way, has been influenced and been influenced by the human communities all around the Hakken—but it takes into account the distinctive realities of Garou life.

Family lineages provide the foundation for Hakken organization. Noble families preside, and lesser members serve them. In the classic Hakken formation, the *daimyo* or lord is the heart and mind, the warriors the hands and feet, the elders are the senses, the juniors the body. It all adds up, when things work right, to a single transcendent organism aware of and capable of more than any of its individual members.

Hakken serve the Beast Courts and seldom feel much conflict between their duties to court and to clan. Providing excellence in military or other service to the court thereby ensuring its success and prosperity, serves the clan as well, bringing glory to the community which produced such worthies. On the other hand, the Hakken distinguish between service to the court and service with their *hengeyokai*; they work reasonably well with the *Kitsune* and *Tengu*, both of which have long histories in areas of Hakken strength but are generally unhappy about being assigned to sentai with other breeds. They strike to excel in such situations as always, they seldom like it and seek any opportunity for honorable change.

The Hakken are among the most numerous members of the Beast Courts, at no danger of extinction. When a Court's elders know that contact with Westerners is coming, they generally attempt to include at least a few Hakken among the sentai who deal with the outsiders, since the Hakken have some shared nature with the Garou Nation despite very different outlooks.

### *Khan*

The Khan, were-tigers, are the only Bastet who take part in the Beast Courts in significant numbers. The other breeds of changing cat find the life of the Courts uncomfortable or unappealing for various reasons. The Khan, however, combine their breeding to to get at the secrets of their enemies with a duty, warriors on behalf of the Emerald Mother.

Khan exist outside the Middle Kingdom as well as inside, but the lineages on opposite sides of the divide seldom trust each other. There is a legacy of betrayal and warfare that leaves both sides now long to expect little more conflict from their distant co-

This deep suspicion reinforces the Khan's naturally solitary nature to ensure that few *hengeyokai* or outsiders ever encounter more than one Khan at a time. Many members of the Beast Courts, let alone those from other lands, never encounter a Khan directly at all, except perhaps at a great distance on some spectacular occasion. The global population of Khan may be less than a hundred, and every one is special.

Experienced Khan serve the Courts as generals and strategists. Outsiders who come with rank and

prestige enough to warrant dealing with the Courts great leaders may therefore encounter Khan and perhaps even fight alongside them against some grave mortal threat. Otherwise Khan will remain matters of story and court legend as far as visitors are concerned.

### *Kitsune*

The werefoxes are unique to Asia and occupy a distinctive position among the ranks of the changing breeds. They do not have a history that runs back into myth and legends. Rather, they emerged as a breed within the scope of human history within the last age or two of the world. They combine a wit to match the *Tengu* with the ruthless determination of the *Nine* and *Nezumi*, acting as, in one description, "laughing assassins" of those who threaten the Emerald Mother and Her works. Their version of the Litany denies them the right to attempt to exterminate humanity or to make war upon other changers, but they generally have a very free hand when it comes to wiping out forces that menace creation.

Most of the Kitsune keep to themselves, a number of them belong to the Beast Courts that outsiders may well encounter them, particularly at various occasions, particularly large caests or in particularly dangerous areas. The Kitsune thrive on clashes with danger, and serve bravely where others may make excuses to avoid the risk. They simply don't show enough respect for the formalities of etiquette or trust *hengeyokai* to feel comfortable with them. This informality would make them particularly suitable companions for Western changers, except that Kitsune don't feel obliged to treat strangers with much respect, either.

Dealing with Kitsune is a little like dealing with *Niwsha*, but although both are tricksters to some degree, the Kitsune are also consummate dealers with a taste for sorcery. They strive for a refinement that the earthy *Niwsha* care little for.

### *Nagah*

The serpent people of the Middle Kingdom are almost as scarce as the Khan, the whole realm hosts only a few hundred of them. Some press on in the manner of their breed without reference to any other changers concerns, but most serve the Beast Courts as quiet, unobtrusive intrusters of justice. Whereas the Nagah are altogether unknown in the West, in the Middle Kingdom they are known and respected (usually feared) as valuable participants in the behind-the-scenes life of the Courts.

For the Nagah remain a matter of rumor as far as the favored few outsiders allowed into the Courts are concerned. The Nagah remember and remind each other of the War of Rage and do not care to risk fresh conflict



now. Their allies in the courts nearly provide conflicting values and misleading accounts in the rare instances when an outsider starts asking the wrong questions.

The Rating of Admirals in the ratings of the Fleet. Charts. In theory they are just as valued as any other. Breed, created by Gata and carrying out their duties as best they can. In practice they're almost universally looked down on and condemned as lowborn and unworthy.

Like the Ratkin in the West, the Nezumi regard themselves as the Emerald Mother's last line of defense against a man by man attack. Where honor and battle

*Samo-Bito*

determined and persistent, and they seek to act with sound judgment as well as the tremendous force that comes naturally to them.

The seas of the Middle Kingdom face many challenges, both natural and supernatural, and the Satae Bitu don't suffer for want of reasons to test themselves into activity. Often they are fought by themselves, but more often by others. When the challenge is closer to shore or my waves flies on land as well as sea, then they join with other breeds in sentai dedicated to sea-related missions.

Those who stay on land are very unlikely ever to pathos with the Satae Bitu. Carou who sail the seas of the Middle Kingdom are much more likely to encounter them. The Satae Bitu take a very practical approach to battles. Anyone who fights against the Emerald Mother's foes is an ally, even if a stranger. Anyone who supports the Emerald Mother's foes or who interferes with the fight against them is an enemy, even if familiar.

### *Tengu*

The wereravens have more in common with their western cousins than most *hengeyokai* do. After all, they can fly both on Earth and in the Ukiyo, and they're accustomed to long journeys. They certainly must take account of the barriers posed by mountains, deserts and oceans, but they can overcome them more easily than other changers.

In the Western Corral, the Tengu work hard to gather the world's secrets and to share them with all that can serve the Emerald Mother. They also enjoin the followers in ways that most other changers don't. Of course, trading a reputation for integrity despite the frequent sacrifices and the great risks they face. They find not just satisfaction in doing their duty honorably, but a deep sense of it, and whenever the Courts go hat there's usually some argument about the appropriate.

Outsiders in the Middle Kingdom usually come to the attention of the Tengu first. Whether the Tengu contact them depends mostly on what impression the outsiders make. The Tengu are most likely to make friendly contact with Carou or other changers who show courage and confidence, most likely to harass particularly arrogant, ignorant or pompous targets. If outsiders come on missions that require dealing with the masses of Asian humanity and make a good impression on their hosts, Tengu are generally best positioned to help.

### *Zhong Long*

The Males of Asia hold places of special honor among the Beast Courts. Few in number, their gift of

memory makes them uniquely valuable in a society that places so much weight on tradition and propriety. They say that they were the first *hengeyokai* created by the Emerald Mother's favored servants, and the other changers generally agree.

The Zhong Long differ dramatically from their Western counterparts. Their aspires are tied to the past rather than to the future, and their dreams tap into the mythic lore of the region about dragon princes. In their reptilian Archid form, they generally resemble the sinuous whiskered dragons of Asian art, and some take on truly tremendous proportions. The giant lizards and weird creatures of popular monster movies reflect, in highly distorted fashion, the mythic presence of the Zhong Long.

Zhong Long seldom engage deeply in human society or even pay much attention to its details. For much of history they could do that without serious consequence; now they're constantly caught off-guard by the destruction of precious Kintoki harvest and other calamities, but they remain psychologically unable to rouse themselves to the sort of quick and nuanced response the situation calls for. Thus they depend on the rest of the Beast Courts to help them protect themselves, in exchange for their access to the wisdom of the ages and their personal power.

Carou who go into the world rarely look quite like you to end up sitting with a Zhong Long sage if they make a good impression and behave well. Others won't, not so much out of deliberate aversion as because there's simply little other common ground.

### *Kumo*

The werespiders of the Middle Kingdom do not take part in the life of the Beast Courts; they remain perpetual allies at the best of times and bitter enemies at the worst. The great families of the Kumo all serve the Wyrm, and vigorously destroy any individuals who work too fervently to further the welfare of the Emerald Mother or Queen Ananasa. Whether a particular Kumo lives alone or as part of a village of werespiders, all give themselves to the task of plunging the world into perpetual oblivion.

### *Into the Sixth Age*

The Beast Courts have been busy in recent years with wars and rumors of wars. This section surveys some major developments and recent conditions.

### *After the Week of Nightmares*

In the summer of 999, beings of godlike power went to war in the fertile lowlands shared by India and Bangladesh. Their magical conflict killed hundreds of

thousands of people and blighted the land. The Gauntlet actually disappeared altogether for several days in hundreds of square miles, allowing an unprecedented destructive force. In the end, somebody won, presumably, since the battle came to an end and the work of covering it up began. Everyone seems interested in burying the truth the matter deeply. Human governments talk about terrorists and psychoactive chemical warfare while the Kiet-jin speak cryptically of the sacrifices of their elders and technomagic magics and occasionally allude to super weapons in the heavens.

Much of the covering and delayed debate pass by the Beast Courts without comment. Some sentimentality on what they see as the really important task, which is healing the land. Akosha's Eye, a Red Taron. The first of her tribe's stronghold across the subcontinent in western India, took the early lead in direct action and in organizing others, both of the Beast Courts and outside. Her clashes with strange Wyrms creatures on both sides of the Gauntlet have left her a legacy of wounds which will not heal properly, and after two years of great physical exertion she had to cut back and concentrate on training her successors. A Shourge from the small Bangladeshi population of Halcken Synda Strikes-the Side now takes the leadership in the field, working with a dedicated and highly diversified little community. With varying mixtures of affection, admiration and disdain, observers sometimes call it the Court of the Great Hole.

Much of the worst corruptionation is now gone. The last hundred miles of the Ganges river basin flows into the sea remain heavily polluted, and crops can grow safely and healthily only in scattered pockets where the clean-up has been most successful. Elsewhere in the three-hundred-mile wide war zone, it goes on at a reduced pace, with small regions of still intense corruption. Mutsters do still roam the land, but not with such strength as they once had and not in any huge like their former numbers. Humans see the area as about what they'd expect a few years after a brief but nasty war. Garou and other shapeshifters see more. The Gauntlet remains low, not rising above 6 even in the midst of areas where it would normally rise much higher, and spiritual force weakens through it for good as well as ill. In some cases. There's a renewed quiet respect for spiritual realities among the human survivors of the nightmare war, a fresh appreciation for the complex needs of the land and its inhabitants. They seldom talk about it for fear of sounding superstitious or unscientific but *hongavaka*, who don't believe in humanity find their work a little easier these days.

Spirits gain 1 extra Rage when in the region between Calcutta and the Bangladeshi city of Dhaka.

and must make Garous check against the local Gauntlet rating each night to avoid a brief fit of mad desire to slaughter anyone they see.

A single Essence level of damage suffices to bring a spirit back to its senses, and the fit expires in any event at the next sunset or sunrise. Ferals suffer extra temptations from their dark sides, urges to slaughter and random acts of degradation, and the

Carou guards of the Maldic Kingdom's underworld are trying to keep all ghosts well away. Slowly shrinking Umbra storms now usually make at least one sweep through the area at dawn or dusk.

The one or two dice of aggressive damage along their periphery, more insidious. The best observations suggest that pieces of the soul of the thing responsible for the Week of Beginning mark these storms, and that as its soul goes beyond the realm known to Carous and humans, the storms collapse in on themselves.

### *The Camp of Shiva*

A radical fact in among India's Carou takes a stance related to that of the Red in Garouland, the world at large, and have precisely no obligations to humanity whatsoever. Humans can get out of the war when Carou fight the world's enemies, or humans can die. Shivas don't much care which. Humans don't know that wolf attacks have become more frequent and more deadly in western India. Few humans know how vicious packs of Black Furies, Children of Carou, Red Taron and Shadow Lords have led their wolfkin into well-organized assaults on humanity, nor how sympathetic Class Walkers and Silver Fangs have quietly cooperated with human efforts at organizing a response.

Their critics among the Carou Nation and the Beast Courts say that Shiva the Destroyer is as new wolves generate may, merely another act of the Wyrms. Shivas say that their critics are too stupid to properly distinguish the world's real needs and are blinded by their own mythology. Every so often a very intense council must occur, so far without any satisfactory results. Recently the widely respected Theurge Akosha's Eye spoke critically of the Shivas at the Council, and this may rouse the Beast Courts into more coordinated action to rein in Shivan excesses. For their part, the Carou of India, outside the Beast Courts wary of public pressure will favor the widespread slaughter of potentially dangerous wolves, thereby closing even the precious Kinkik.

### *The Shingrons*

Most Carou know in a vague sort of way that the Stargazers lost their most prominent Caern, felt abandoned by the Carou Nation and have collected

given their allegiance to the Beast Courts. It doesn't matter to most Gaijin, so more recent news makes it way around slowly if at all.

In principle, the elders of the [redacted] are glad to have the Stargazers and [redacted]. The practice is somewhat more complex. The Stargazers [redacted] or must come long dist or the [redacted] live along the barbarians for too long. [redacted] are in many cases properly members (by the [redacted] standards) but outsiders nonetheless. It will take generations for each line of thought and [redacted] or [redacted] principles to become [redacted] the Stargazers as they are to the Hakken or Zhong Long. Elders with an interest in teaching the newcomers flock to courts through out western and southern China running special academies with courses in history, tradition and the spiritual realities of the Middle Kingdom. The Stargazers take much comfort in the [redacted] very special scholars and their [redacted] themselves for as mature and civil [redacted] the Courts' established breeds, and more

Not a [redacted] welcome the new arrivals with the same degree of enthusiasm. The Kitsune are very much in favor of having new and refreshing [redacted] among the Courts, strangers that [redacted] with their cunning, beauty and repertoire and who in turn have valuable insights to offer about the Wyrms' world on the fringes of the Middle Kingdom. The [redacted] find the Stargazers' experience [redacted] and very much deserving of remembrance and repetition. The Zhong Long began with general indifference, but changed the mind when it became clear that many Stargazers would settle in the Yangtze Valley. Some of the newcomers immerse themselves in the struggle to save [redacted] and spirit from the disruption created by the Three Gorges Dam and have earned the heartfelt gratitude of the Zhong Long.

The Hakken have little use for newcomers and would prefer to see the Stargazers kept on the margins of the Courts, if indeed they must be [redacted] some argue that the Stargazers cannot be trusted to defend the Courts, considering the [redacted] with the [redacted] the Stargazers' allied Hakken have goaded each other into ever greater displays of prowess and noble correctness, setting an impossible standard

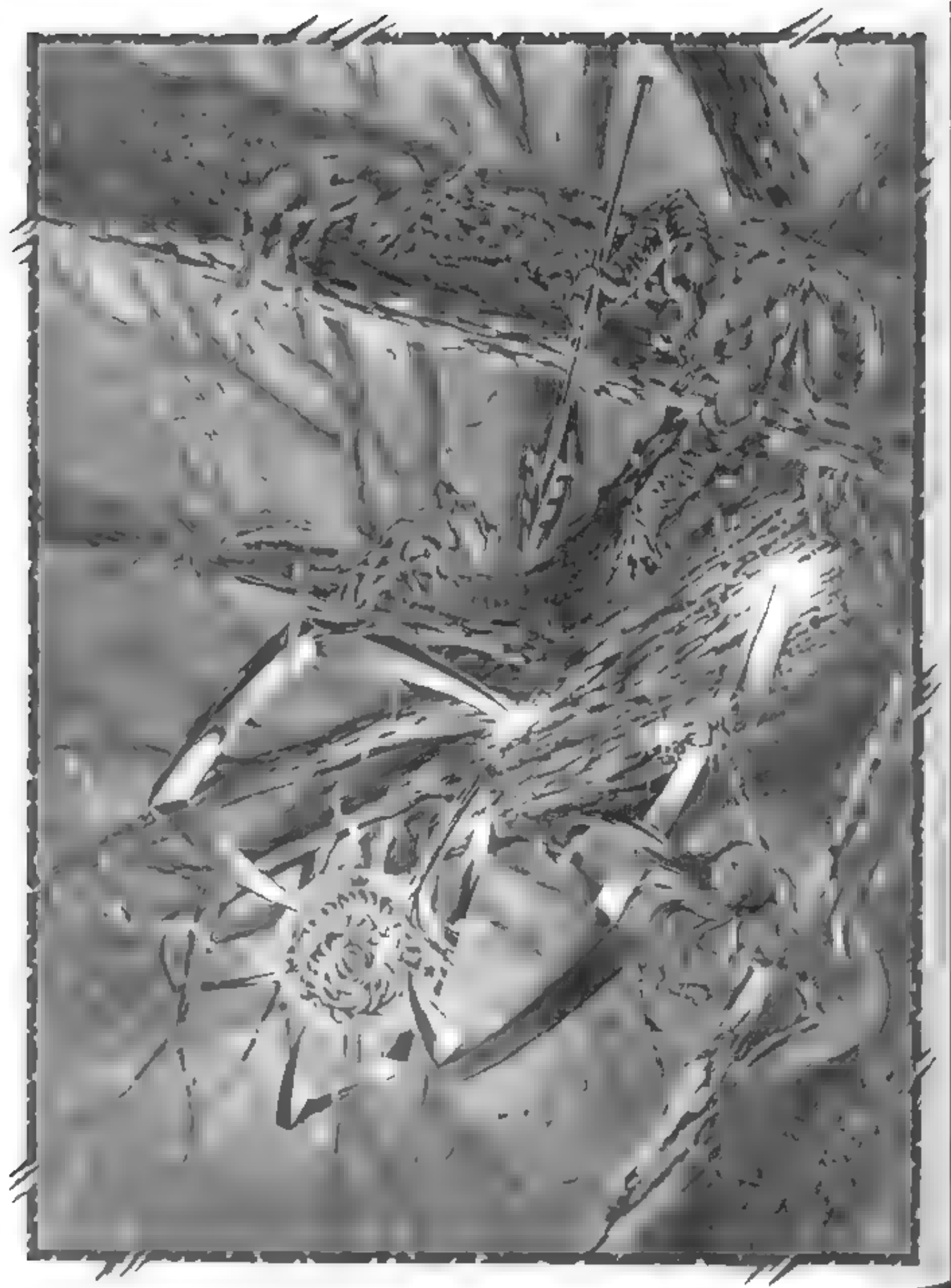


for werewolves unfamiliar with Beast Court ways. Every court with Hakken leaders hosts very complex games of intrigue behind the scenes, with efforts to maneuver the Stargazers into situations where they must become disgraced. The Hakken would be perfectly happy to see the Stargazers wander elsewhere anywhere else but the Courts.

The Hakken's caution is doubled among the K'la, who have heard the ancient stories of other tribes of Beast Kings, slaughtered in the Wars of Rage. Though they are willing to accept new allies to fight alongside

their own dwindling numbers, the tigers are a proud, proud race. Similarly, the Nagar have long traditions about the Stargazers, and must be unwilling to let the werewolves return to their lands. Finally, what if the werewolf returns to his old sept and starts gossiping. As for the Nezumi and the Snake-Bits, both groups seem to think back to the time after the Stargazers are unlikely to come back to help them along their own battle fronts.

And the Kuno, it is said, await the chance to welcome their new neighbors properly.



# Chapter Two: The Battlefield

I am I lose myself in the  
ing now, my wolf life I was  
notion of time when I'm a wolf, in a perpetual pro  
renewing itself constantly, and I have no concept of time  
now or yesterday, no sense of a time later than the very  
night of my transformation. My wolf memory sticks to the  
physical, the tangible objects of my life. My only future  
is the hunt. I feel that causes me to stalk.

David H. and Manchester: *The Wolf's Tale*

## *The City: The Weaver's Playground*

Let's be real. There are only so many gr  
n run out of outdoor bits to your players want  
taste of something a touch more sophisticated.  
Whatever their character is a day, most players  
from urban environments and so are most Storytellers.  
After all, it's difficult when you live down in the farm  
twenty miles from anywhere else to get a weekly game  
going, and few of us make our homes in a natural  
forest or pristine mountain setting. That's why there  
probably exist many more urban Werewolf games  
might normally be the best staple drama we all  
know what cities are like. Or do we?

From the average werewolf point of view, cities are  
rawing puzzles of the Weaver's corruption set with

... machine soul delecting webs of the Weaver.  
L... Talks and Bone Gnawers remain notable  
exceptions to this viewpoint. Of course, but the major  
ity of Garou experience in a setting comes be  
nly its dark, moody atmosphere when in  
tion within the city.

So the question is as follows: How do you get this  
point across to the players and by extension, their  
characters? Unless the characters are based in a city  
setting, Storytellers have their work cut out for them.  
adequately portraying the city and its dangers is suc  
... the darkest seduction reas  
... one of the ideas presented here will help of  
home the undeniable of forbidden territ

### *A Note for Our Urban Readers*

We know, we know. The city isn't that bad and not all Garou are as repelled by an urban environment as we may suggest it at times. But, it is being the World of Darkness, we do tend to celebrate the negative—the crime rates, the racial tensions, all the things that sell newspaper and “details at 11.” Don’t take it personally. It’s not like a Werewolf chronicle is going to focus on the cleaner, safer areas of town, anyway. There’s just not as much for Garou to do there, you know?

### *The City as Foreign Environment*

We are never as comfortable in a strange place as we are at home or in a familiar setting. When it comes to our (or werewolfness-based) Garou to the city (even if they were originally born and raised there), Storytellers need to stress the oddities found there. Things seem bigger, more threatening, grimmer. Corporate behemoths, steel and mirrored glass skyscrapers seem to invite Garou to step sideways, but the Umbra landscape is draped with the Weaver’s choking webs. The people all rush by, few paying attention to anyone else, pushing their faces tight with stress, anger and hatred. Any greenery seems sickly, either caught within strangling webs of concrete and steel, or forced to peek green, sterile plastic. The stench of old gasoline, garlic and onions, stale urine, spilled semen and unwashed bodies overlaid with cloying perfumes and effluvia should be enough to leave most Garou sick and shaking. Food and water reek of chemicals and taste of equal parts ashes and taint held at bay by unnatural preservatives. Horns blare, sirens shriek, radios and CD players compete incessantly to top one another with ever-louder offerings while people scream to be heard over the din. With the keen senses of these sensations and the fast-paced motion occurring all around them can easily overwhelm Garou. And this is in the daytime! Nighttime brings its own horrors, with the never-lessening moon glare and the emptiness of the Leeches on whose home territory the Garou now tread. And overhead, more garish lights redden the air and block the natural illumination of the moon and stars.

As you can see, description and word choice go a long way to establish how the characters would view the city. A rough, not everything about a city environment should be bad, the first impression a werewolf—a creature designed to defend Gaia at her most pristine—is probably going to have an overwhelming negative. Feel free to emphasize the most revolting

filthy and corrupt aspects of the urban environment. The residents seem both crazed and mysterious, obsessed with trivial things, charging around at top

speed like frenzied herd animals. Think of times when you’ve been most annoyed by someone where the transgression is that they won’t descriptions of the city.

### *The City as Home*

Some Garou who live in the city may, in fact, feel that it is as unnatural a place as the countryside cousins do. They’ve simply learned to adapt. They often find pockets of greenery or unspoiled areas to inhabit and grow, the streets in search of Wyrm-tainted prey. These werewolves may force themselves to remain in this alien environment in order to hunt down enemies or in an attempt to clean out the filth they find there. Some have bonded with packmates that cannot function well outside of an urban environment and choose to endure the city’s discomforts rather than abandon a packmate. Many are doomed to fade as the tension of surviving and preserving the Veil in such a place gradually poisons their minds or souls, sending them into Hara-kiri or dark rages. Some fall to the city’s allure, becoming themselves to the fascination of the ever-changing, throbbing patterns of life and death found there.

Others, such as the Glass Walkers and Bone Onawers, actively embrace the urban environment, reveling in the technology or living on the savings of others. No less devoted to Gaia, the urban Garou realize they can serve Her best within the very cities, yes, of the Weaver’s tapestry. Unlike the more extreme of the first two groups, these Garou can see the value in some of the city’s features.

Obviously not those Garou that think of the city as “home,” devastatingly gruesome descriptions of the horrors there seem woefully inappropriate. What countryside Garou find “dreadful and overwhelming,” urban werewolves may enjoy as “upbeat and exciting,” even “commonplace and dismissible.” Many urban werewolves take a more human-friendly perspective, enjoying the spiritual warmth of a talented musician playing for an audience because he loves his music, or of a block where neighbors still treat each other like family. While rural werewolves may choke on noxious air or suffer from the reek of Wyrm and Weaver, city Garou have long been adjusted to associating it with the smell of home. City dwellers probably find the

in the country too complicated with the scents of unfamiliar animals or the aroma of farm fertilizers. Not that Garou requiring cities dismiss or avoid areas where the Gauntlet is thinner and Gaia’s natural features shine through. Most truly enjoy parks and small stands of woods. They simply don’t feel Gaia’s presence recede from urban settings so keenly as do others of their kind. Storytellers whose characters are city-bred and associated can concentrate on good general descriptions of the setting without the need to

characterize it as threatening, frightening and alien. That way, you can save those aspects for the truly bizarre and obviously sick damaged or corrupted things such as Carion may encounter.

### *The City as Hunting Ground*

Of course, to some werewolves, the city is not a place to be shunned or cherished — it's simply a territory for the hunt. If your game emphasizes the horror aspects of roving night werewolves, you may want to portray the city as an urban labyrinth teeming with prey. Even if the characters limit their predation to "enemies of Gaia," the city environment offers a multitude of potential victims — ah, targets. Drug pushers, corrupt policemen, violent street gangs, sexual predators, paid leg-breakers, pumps and arms dealers and arsonists — the pack could hunt a different target each week and not see a fomor vampire or Black Spiral Dancer for a year. (Of course, even though such restraint is feasible, it might not be preferable.)

Although werewolves are not as susceptible to carnal desire as vampires are, you still might want to borrow a few pages from the average Vampire game and at least throw temptation in the players' paths once or twice. If a werewolf shifts into Canis in the middle of a crowd, the stampede of panicked humans might tug at the lupine instinct to chase down fleeing prey. The thick smell of musk and sweat at a dance club might cause a howl. Carion's stomach might rumble; after all, instinct knows no litany. And although wolves don't hunt for sport, people do — and for werewolves, being half human as they are, the appeal of stalking an enemy (or even a normal bystander) through a hostile urban environment might strike a chord. Try teasing the characters' instincts just a bit; after all, they don't have to decide that their characters succumb, but one of the most powerful elements of a werewolf story is the idea of a beast in human form that classifies humans as potential prey, just like cattle or deer. It would be a shame to ignore such a vivid image, wouldn't it?

### *Descriptions of the City*

Because some of your players' characters may come from rural areas and others from urban settings, it isn't always easy to give each an equally accurate picture of the city. Sometimes it's just easier to say to the rural crowd, "You enter a seething den of corruption, penetrating what seems a darkened, poorly lit with ochreish red light. A reeking, squirming mass of writhing bodies gyrate wildly in the fetid smoky air, emitting scents of rotting grain and despair, sexual longing," while turning to the urban crowd and saying, "It's a dance club." Just because they're

used to it doesn't mean the city characters should be shocked. They have the same senses as their country counterparts and since they aren't distracted by what's already familiar to them, they may actually pick up on more clues — or more subtle ones — than their well-shocked cousins might. What the outsiders don't wit-

ness is the town's so rampant the city would be exterminated, the locals may notice the actual "omnipresence" of the city. The city is a crack at the city. In this case, you also wouldn't simply tell the characters, "You notice the town," but would perhaps tell something like, "Your rural visitors seem overwhelmed by the sights and sounds common to the Far East: a dance club notorious for the number of women who disappear after a night's dancing. You note — and dismiss — most of the couples and trios grinding together to the pulsating beat. What catches your attention is the backdrop of crimson-tinted lamps and the three shapes moving through the dancers like sharks circling blood-soaked prey."

Whatever description you give should be both evocative and tactful at the same time. If you're simply reporting what's there, you're missing the opportunity to emphasize the mood you want or to subtly guide the characters in the direction you want them to go. It's a difference between reporting and describing. You look at all the amazingly tall buildings and know you're in the Weavers' clutches," instead, try to picture how such a setting would unnerve you if you'd never seen it

that to color your description. Then you might explain, "Thousands of soulless eyes glare down on you from the glass and steel towers that surround you on all sides like a mindless maze. The Weavers' eyes could even loom overhead and crowd around you as tropical awaiting the signal to grasp you in their gaping maws and suck you in."

The main trap many storytellers fall into, however, is trying to tell the players how the characters are feeling rather than using emotionally charged words and letting them draw their own conclusions and decide how they feel for themselves. This is just as dangerous a practice in an urban environment, if not more so — after all, not to Carion hate and shun the "slabs" and you don't want to force that opinion on your players. If you're telling the players, "You feel chilled by the sight of the mangled bodies," you're denying the characters the right to have the reaction they would normally experience. Maybe some of the players are all chilled in with a character. Though the circumstances leading up to the statement aren't explained, it's entirely possible that some of the characters feel relieved to have their worst fears confirmed. Others

may be sad that they failed to prevent such a thing, while some others may be angry at having missed the battle. If you want your players and the characters to feel something, you're going to have to lure them into it through your presentation. You can't say "You expect when..." but you can state "The clogged mass blocking the sewer grating writhes with crawling maggots..." and let them feel it and that disgusts them.

Write down a list of all the words you can think of for things like horror, beauty, purity, corruption, hate, fear and anger. What about concepts like beauty, purity, corruption and love? Use them to portray and make things come alive in your players' imaginations. Consider how different types of words make you feel. Words carry emotional charges and can be used to convey negative or positive feelings and even create associative images in people's minds. Good storytellers know how to find these kinds of words and use them when they craft a tale, sprinkling them through the telling at important junctures.

What sounds make you feel secure? Which ones make you feel nervous? Play at that in your game by using sound effects tapes or nature sounds CDs. Try cranking up the volume on really high energy music when you take the characters into battle and make the players try to hunker over it. This is also a form of description. You

are more than visual. Don't forget that Oracles characters feel with descriptions. If pouring rain or a dank fog (we don't recommend actually dousing them with water; it tends to annoy the players). Pick up the scents or flavors the characters would notice. It's been said that just mentioning certain scents is enough to trigger sense memory in them and call forth memories of a time when a person experienced that aroma. When describing a place or thing, think what scents might be present and use them to heighten the reality of your narrative. Is the weather something, is it smooth, corroded, salty, cold? They may need to know that. Think about what colors or sounds make you feel safe.

Excitement. Look up evocative words in a dictionary or thesaurus and sprinkle them into your descriptive portraits. While pictures can help, it's hard to find photos that depict exactly what you need. So much what your players have to depend on to envision the setting are your words. Don't waste them.

### *Setting as Background*

Having prepared you to choose each word with the care of a novelist, we now need to take a moment to say the opposite. All the detail and evocative wordplay should be used only to highlight really important points and a title goes a long way. You're here to give the players in a shared story, after all, not to

perform a tour de force of your poetry prize. If every step the characters take is described in lovingly crafted detail, the players will never get a work in, much less have anything to actually do or initiate. Give them initial ideas and reiterate the point from time to time. Save your best words for major encounters.

It's for us to let the setting become the background against which the story is played out. In real life, we pay attention to something just that we find important or that catches our attention while ignoring thousands of distractions every day. In storytelling, we need to give a way room to move and evolve. We do this by adding portraits. Once you've established a general description that piques the players' interest, they'll continue paying to that until you give them something else to react to. It gives them a mental glue that they can hang their hats on and players are great at hanging with whatever they're given and even taking it a few steps beyond the original. They'll fill in the extra details. If, for example, you've shown them the tawdriness of the poorer sections of town, then simply say, "You move down the dank, garbage-strewn alleyway..." they'll picture the urine patches, broken glass and used condoms themselves. Some may even ask for additional details like inquiring if there's a dumpster there or if any homeless people use the space for sleeping. So feel free to let the setting take care of itself.

### *Sitting at the Table*

It's a ready-try to evoke a sense of mood with the words you use to describe the city, so you may as well use them to define you, the hero. The aspects of the city lend themselves to ground themes for city-based stories anyway. Think of the decay, most cities experience. Neighborhoods abandoned by all but junkies and whores, broken down stripped cars, graffiti smeared along the walls, junkies and broken bikes ingrained in overgrown, trash-strewn lots all call to mind the decay and soul sickness Garou can experience in response to the city's atmosphere or to an encounter gone very wrong. If your theme concerns truth versus appearance or the masks everyone in Garou wear, emphasizing the artificiality of the city can mirror this. Concrete and asphalt take the place of stone and earth, Yaris seen inside a restaurant through a window on closer inspection, turn out to be replicas made of plastic. Thinking about running a story about the allure of the torbilen. What better place exists to portray that theme than the seductive "taboo city" that your troupe is into the truly dramatic or has gone through prior stories that have left them feeling wrecked and empty inside. Bring them to the city. Show them how they're crowded space, lack of privacy and

tedious, repetitive jobs most people endure combine with governmental control and the depersonalization and callous indifference that characterizes large urban areas speaks to the characters' feelings of loneliness and worthlessness. Consider how violent and perversely city life is. The Garou are used to being the baddest moths around. Show them how relatively tame they are in the city.

Witness children murdering other children in a school or watch as a hate group burns a church or synagogue. Present them with a serial killer. At least the violence the Garou unleash seems to have a point and occur to serve a good cause. So if making the characters consider their use of excessive violence gets a boost from witnessing the insanity that prevails within the city.

### *Why Garou Loathe the City*

To creatures who spend their time defending the natural world from the Weaver's and the Wyrm's incursions, the city seems like the most loathsome, soul-deadening cesspool imaginable. The Wyld occupies only a tiny fraction of this landscape. Most of Gaia's defenders find it difficult to think coherently, let alone breathe in this Gotham where the Weaver rules a few except the places the Wyrm has wrapped in its coils of decay.

#### *The Weaver's Power*

Until they enter a large urban area, few Garou even realize the power the Weaver holds. They are so used to fighting the Wyrm and seeing its minions as their main foes that Garou hardly consider the Weaver's works as anything more than an inconvenience and a blot on Gaia's creation. Then they come to the city and encounter the endless, towering buildings. The sheer immensity of the skyscrapers, their overwhelming presence towering above the Garou, brings home the sheer power of the Weaver to such a degree that some werewolves surrender to despair. The Penumbra crawls with webs and Pattern Spiders. On both sides of the Gauntlet, the Weaver's works are inescapable. Even those Garou that don't feel cowed, experience a sense of uneasiness that leaves them vulnerable to making mistakes and overlooking vital clues. If nothing else, Garou hate to feel weak for any reason.

#### *The Wyrm's Blight*

Though the Weaver's strength is undeniable, the Wyrm occupies most areas of the city. From the filthiest slums to the most elaborate, yet corrupt, corporate headquarters, its coils writhe throughout the city. The Wyrm's toxic lies on the ravaged nature of the civilization that characterizes the city. Most of all, the proliferation of sexual pornography, rape and torture deaths are only the most obvious. Garou, attuned to the Wyrm's presence, feel a natural revulsion toward the city's decay.

Constantly surrounded by the enemy, with few places to which they can retreat for renewal of their energies, many werewolves go berserk. Even those Garou that usually have no problem fitting in with humans begin seeing all city dwellers as creatures of the Wyrm. Lunatics, winners and other down-and-out victims seek out the Wyrm's aid, while gangs, dealers, corrupt cops and hote moths.

These are the various targets of Garou Rage, but as a human that seems even momentarily on the path toward a right might find himself facing an enraged werewolf in Gaia. Though such an encounter might suffer for only a moment, the werewolf's fit continues unabated. Many Garou, trapped within the city, still feel a tug for their natural tendency to hunt. As a result, they turn to hunting humans, with some of the more desperate even falling to the practice of feeding on humans, laying themselves open to becoming the creatures of the Wyrm they once hunted. And once they've descended that far, making their way back is almost impossible — if they even care. Other Garou, encountering these deviants, might destroy them, further weakening their race and leaving Gaia with ever fewer defenders.

### *Why Garou Love the City*

Despite the stereotype of Garou warriors wildly devoted to defending the Wyld and Gaia's creation from the Wyrm's corruption and the Weaver's power, some Garou do love the city. Rather than a trap or a blight upon the land, these Garou think of the city as a place of life.

#### *A Spiritual Connection*

Glass Walkers and Bone Gnawers need not excuse to embrace the city. Some see the Weaver as their ally rather than a foe. They understand the Weaver's use as a spirit, using the technology as a shield to their against their enemies. Garou who do so have some congress with city spirits and are able to work with and through the Weaver's power. There also exists another spiritual link that many Glass Walkers feel. Because they feel such closeness with the spirit of the city, they act as its protector and are, in turn, protected by it to some degree. Some come to believe that the city is a non-space, a place that is not wholly accessible, so many humans' hopes and dreams are tied up in a city that great things are just waiting to be born. To these Garou, city spirits may become pack totems. The Bone Gnawers in particular are keenly aware that the Wyld can be strong. If within the most urban environments, some places are rich with the Wyld's energies, despite the concrete all around.

## Abundant Opportunity

[illegible]

### Urban Patterns: 'The Penumbra' Cityscape

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

CHICAGO, ILL.

1968

LIBRARY OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

PHYSICS DEPARTMENT

570 SOUTH EAST ASIAN AVENUE

CHICAGO, ILL. 60607

U.S.A.

Testing These Concerning the Livestock

with which a  $C$  atom can enter the camera depends on the structure of the polymer. In general, as the number of oxygen atoms in the polymer chain increases, the probability of a  $C$  atom entering the camera decreases. For example, in the case of polyethylene, the probability of a  $C$  atom entering the camera is very low, while in the case of polyvinyl chloride, it is higher. This is because the chlorine atoms in the polymer chain create a steric hindrance that prevents the  $C$  atoms from entering the camera. In general, the probability of a  $C$  atom entering the camera is highest for polymers that have a high degree of branching and a low degree of crystallinity. This is because the branching creates more free volume in the polymer, which allows the  $C$  atoms to enter the camera more easily. The degree of crystallinity, on the other hand, creates a more ordered structure that prevents the  $C$  atoms from entering the camera.



Cara can feel her character's struggle just to do what would come so easily to a wilderness setting. The difference between the pristine Umbra near Damer's caern and the dismal spirit world of the city becomes more real and sets the tone for the encounters to come.

### *The Weaver's Domain: Urban Constructs*

Once in the urban Umbra Garou find themselves in the world as envisioned by the Weaver. Pattern spiders scurry busily from place to place on unfathomable errands. Everywhere the hum of machine spirits provides a constant drone pair-fu to the sensitive ears of the Garou. Lupus in urbis firm. Dark shadowy forms reveal the presence of hulking, dead matter that intrudes on the spirit world. The colors that dominate the landscape tend toward neutral dull tones—various shades of grays, dull greens, browns and blacks. Though similar in nature, these colors in the cityscape seem like perversions of the hues found in trees, stones, sky and earth.

And don't forget the webs. The Weaver's mark makes the urban Umbra like a cloying film of static besides providing a graphic visual reminder of the Weaver's presence. Webs also possess tactile properties. Thickropy webs act like heavy vines, tripping up Garou who try to pass them, lashing out to grab on hands and legs. Thin cobwebs cling to the skin, clogging eyes and noses and providing a constant irritation. Storytellers may allow Garou to replenish some or all of the Rage from sheer frustration at dealing with the pervasive presence of the Weaver's toys and creations.

### *Where the Wyrms Turn: Urban Blight*

The Weaver's cold immobility pales in comparison to the true horror that lies deep within the urban Umbra. Places exist within the city where the Weaver's sway has given way to the tyranny of the Wyrms. Crack houses, Ratco offices, factories that produce Wym-taint goods, abandoned buildings that provide homes for creatures of tomorrow, the city with the stench of corruption.

Garou should feel the hopelessness and despair that emanate from these hubs of Wym activity. Describe the darkness and oiliness of Wym-taint. The fetid odors that cluster near these foul centers. Wym creatures and Banes haunt these places where the Wym's control has overtaken the Weaver's careful construction.

### *Pockets of Hope: The Urban Wyld*

Despite the sometimes-overwhelming presence of the Weaver and the Wyrms, the Wyld exists even in the most alienated of cities. Parks, nature preserves and other places that make use of environmental habitat provide necessary relief for Garou. The Umbra in these places should reflect the relative freedom from restraint and corruption they offer in the physical world.

### *The Customary "Of the Wym" Warning*

Players who rely too heavily on the Sense Wym Gift to discern between "good" and "not so good" and "not evil and should be protected" are SOL in the city. Wym-taint is a pervasive spiritual force, and it clings to victims as well as shatters the innocent. It is the void of At. Although certainly not everyone in a city is going to smell of the Wym, using Sense Wym in any crowded area will probably register multiple instances of taint. In a nightclub, that taint might belong to a few frat boy date rapists, the bouncer who augments his bulk with Magadon "nutritional supplements," the young lady who unintentionally sipped a little vampire blood during her "hot date" last night, the drunk who's attracted the attention of a tiny Bane of despair, the half-drug user on the dance floor, the "special" hottie of King spirits behind the bar, and yes—any tomorrow that might be present. How does the Garou discern which instances of taint are direct threats, which need slightly less immediate attention, and which are probably beneath his notice?

He uses his head like any werewolf who wants

to survive.

Storytellers should encourage players to give them the evidence to make them realize that they need to pay attention to their surroundings, the better to recognize and prioritize the threats facing them. Show them that the city's the ideal environment for the spread of Wym-taint, and that they can't rely on Sense Wym alone for that very reason. The Garou didn't survive two Wars of Rage and millennia of back against the Wym because they attacked everything that moved and fought. They survived because they're wolves, and wolves know how to hunt.

Use contrasting images to highlight the differences between the exotic urban Wyld markets and the more familiar provinces of Wym and Weaver. Think of finding an oasis in the middle of a desert or coming upon a garden hidden behind a high wall. Describe the Umbra of a city park in terms that portray it as a respite from the constant of the Weaver and the Wym. Even in the Wyld spirits cluster in these havens, but they're not going too far afield. Garou should find a few allies in these spots.

### *Lupus in the City*

Wolf born Garou find cities almost unbearable. The most extreme of them refuse to enter cities of their

own accord. Unfortunately, the war situation is so well that a pack can always choose their own degrounding lupus have to make do in the city just as the other breeds do—but there they face problems all their own. Storytellers should not hesitate to use the plight of the Lupus Garou to flesh out and add depth to her character.

### *Animal Control*

Lupus Garou find their birth forms the most comfortable ones to assume. Few lupus willingly spend a lot of time in human form. City life, however, does not favor animals that run around without human owners. Lupus Garou on their own can attract unwanted attention from the animal control agencies.

Deatchers, known in the movie world as animal control agents, answer reports that "wild animals" are running the streets. When Garou in Lupus or Canis form confront former or Black Spiral Dancers or werewolves or any of the other antagonists, the ensuing conflict usually leaves behind a detritus of blood and pieces of flesh. To the unsuspecting mortals who come across the aftermath of such a battle, these effects indicate the presence of a pack of wild—probably rabid—dogs. Most Garou can evade normal procedures used by animal control officers. Tranquilizer darts respond to the ultra-healing properties of Garou, while most nets or traps provide only minimal obstacles to Lupus Garou.

Not all animal control agencies serve the best interests of humanity. Pentex has trained groups of elite animal control agents to look for the telltale signs of Garou interference. These experienced agents come equipped with silver bullets, dart guns loaded with Weremoxins and other devices designed to capturing Garou.

### *Zoos*

Zoos provide both good and bad encounters for Garou. On the one hand they usually contain at least some natural-looking vegetation and the best zoos—ones that employ habitat-based environments rather than cages—just might offer Garou a rare chance to reflect on Canis, a condition so hard to come by in an urban setting. Occasionally Garou end up as prisoners in zoos and from the usual comes calling shortly thereafter.

A few lupus Garou don't understand the purpose of zoos and see only places where creatures of the wild are kept—imprisoned. Lost and pack animals sometimes find themselves forced to restrain the rampant competition's desire to liberate all the animals in the local zoo.

### *City Stories*

There are many different manifestations of the eternal battle between the Garou and the enemies of Gaia. With

Bone Gnawers and Glass Walkers may understand and appreciate the many faces of city life. Most Garou find cities unpleasant at best, downright evil at worst. Storytellers can use this ambivalence to good purpose, designing stories set against the urban backdrop. From the initial culture shock as the Garou from the wilderness arrive in the big city to the eventual discovery of dark humor that lies concealed beneath the streets of the metropolis, city stories provide storytellers and players with a constant barrage of challenges and sensations.

### *Country Cousins Come to Town*

The earliest part of telling city stories may occur at the beginning. Why should your pack of Garou come to the city in the first place? Finding a convincing reason to bring the characters to town can provide a challenge for storytellers. Depending on how long you want your characters to remain in the urban environment, you might want to consider some of the following reasons to bring wilderness-based Garou to the land of skyscrapers and cobwebs.

- **Born to Be Wild**—An urban city teenager has just undergone her First Change. The characters' pack receives a summons from a spirit asking them to go into the city and bring out the new pup, or perhaps the cub is from a bloodline tied to a tribe with no members currently living in the city. Once the pack arrives, however, things may not be as simple as they seem.

- **Call for Help**—If the pack has contacts among the Glass Walkers or Bone Gnawers, one of these urban werewolves may request outside assistance if a problem they can't handle on their own. Of course, they probably can't admit the seriousness of the problem or that they have any trouble at all. They may simply call in a favor.

- **Following a Trail**—The pack defeats a group of Black Spiral Dancers but a few members escape to the city. The Garou must travel there to track the enemies down, where they discover that the Dancers have found a ally peculiar to the urban environment.

- **Jail Break**—The pack discovers that some lupus Kinfolk have taken into the clutches of an urban exotic animal collector and must go to the city to locate and rescue them.

- **Umbral Accident**—The pack makes a mistake traveling through the Umbra and ends up deep within the center of the city instead of at a distant caern. This is particularly appropriate if the pack tries to travel on the Weaver's web.

### *Surrounded on All Sides*

Once the characters have arrived in the city, you need to immerse them immediately in the sights and sounds, scents and flavors of the urban environment.

lupus or met's Garou accustomed to living in the wilderness, it is that the confines of a rural sept should experience the impact as a shock to their system. Describe the blare of a automobile horns, the ceaseless background noise of traffic and machinery, the sight of skyscraping haze in pollution, the reek of factory smoke and car fumes, the wail of sirens and the overpowering noise of humans crowded together in a crush on the road, the narrow concrete streets and towering buildings. Homid Garou should also feel beset by these sensations, but they may also feel twinges of guilt for their human relatives' deeds, or a shade more sympathy for the humans in this oppressive environment.

### *City Encounters*

Now that you've gotten your characters to town, what are you going to do with them? What sort of trouble lurks around the corner and down the alley or in the sewers waiting for your pack to stumble upon? The suggestions presented here should give you some place to start.

• **Affairs of the Heart** — One of your pack mates falls in love with a city girl and asks you to accompany him on a journey to convince her to leave her urban life and move to a smaller town. When you arrive at her apartment, however, she is gone and the scent of blood is strong in the air.

• **Challenge** — In order to receive a new Rank, one of your pack must enter the city and live there for a week. During that time he must achieve a series of tasks that include: defeating a feral enemy in a urban spirit and discovering the location of a secret Black Spiral Dancer Hide.

• **Diplomacy: Garou Style** — A pack of Glass Walkers wish to end their long-standing feud with a rival group of Shadow Lords. Each pack claims the same territory within the city. Your pack is outersiders has the joyous task of arbitrating the peace talks and preventing disaster involving fire, carnage. In the meantime, a third party wants to see the feud continue.

• **Hunting for Cadavers** — A group of Red Talons has made a foray into the city, determined to find all traces of vampiric influences. They have no returned and your pack has to find out why, even if it means talking to the walking corpses.

• **Renegade At Large** — A former member of your sept has succumbed to the wiles of a mage who has lured him to the city for her own unsavory purposes. Though the renegade Garou was a abandoned Iktisat rule duty and has received censure by the sept, you still need to prevent him from causing more harm by pursuing his foolhardy course of action. First, though, you need to find him.

• **Still Waters Run Deep** — Something is polluting the river that runs through your protected territory and the cause lies somewhere within the city. The pack must journey into town and try to locate the cause, is fouling the waters and stop the problem at its root.

## *Wilderness and Werewolf*

Werewolf is a game about man-beasts, half human and half that irresistible creature, the savage, undisciplined spirit of Gaia, the spirit of the world as a whole. It lives in the Haki-anima, they are forever creatures of the wild, even when they walk the paved streets of the Wynn-chaired modern world. Only the Weaver-trapped Glass Walkers are uncomfortable in the wilderness. Yet many Werewolf Storytellers will be considerably less comfortable with the topic than the characters they portray. This section is written to serve as an aid to Storytellers in creating stories in the wild. It covers, primarily, the suggestions and comments that Werewolf characters are likely to find themselves in: woods, mountains and the hot deserts of the American Southwest.

### *A Sad Disclaimer*

This section of the Werewolf Storytellers Handbook is an incredibly abbreviated summary of actual wilderness lore, at best about wilderness survival, a sort of crash course in the topic so Storytellers won't be totally at sea trying to set a game in the wild, but those who hadn't a ready reference should please don't try to use historical which is in the wild. There are a number of excellent survival guides available (the United States Air Force survival manual is particularly good for covering all the basics in a simple and very readable fashion). Use one of them, or better yet, several different ones and a lot of advice from someone who has done it before. You can't avoid a miserable death trying not to be killed. As much as you can, know how.

More likely, you will make dozens of volunteers risk their lives and force the government to waste tens or hundreds of thousands of dollars to find you and retrieve your soaked, hungry self from the middle of nowhere. This disclaimer isn't just for your protection and watching the computer legal back every time some clueless government agent to "rough it" and needs rescuing, it encourages legislators and park services to consider regulations that restrict access to wilderness areas, limiting the enjoyment of people who actually know what they're doing. Don't be The City Guy.

## *The Truth About the Wild*

The truth about the wilderness is this — it is hard. There is no "living off the land" in the woods. If you're in trouble, you'll feel a most certain vendetta either when something makes you too slow to run and a predator eats you, or you something makes you too slow to hunt and you starve. It could be arthritis, hunger sickness, or plain old bad luck, but you get it: if your game and that's the end of it.

As a Storyteller, you have two major challenges. The first is to get the hostile nature of life in the wild across to players who probably don't know. It's not that you have a moral obligation to do this, but it's an absolute must if you want your players to take wilderness seriously. The second challenge is to tell the characters that you can't get across the fact that the struggle for wilderness is pressing and that failure has the rest of a aplifications, you'll be hard-pressed to get the players involved enough to make it interesting.

Secondly, this is the view of the wilderness that Garou society not only accepts, but embraces. The Garou see nature not as a static backdrop, but as an ongoing system, a system of which they are a part, and whose hard edges are not meant to be conquered but critical features the Garou must maintain. The Litany embraces the ruthless nature of the world, urging the Garou not to burden the young with the task of maintaining the old. Likewise, the Lupergium was an intervention by the Garou to prevent humanity's use of tools from making them too over-rely on the mechanical. Even if characters have a more modern, idealized version of nature, the vision of nature as a ruthless and entirely necessary struggle is the social context for a character raised as part of the Garou Nation.

## *What the Wilderness Offers*

The wilderness is perfectly well served by stories about the Garou — and given the tone and subject matter of *Werewolf*, it's probably best described as the primary venue. As a venue, it has strengths and weaknesses, and rewards certain approaches.

The wild's strength is the fact that it is a hard place. And like to it rewards a certain skill set which most Garou possess in abundance. Out in the woods or up in the mountains characters are cut off from all the benefits of a consumer society. They can only have what they can carry, and if they don't have it with them, there's no real running off to get it. Characters are also cut off from the benefits of the information society. Cellular coverage is limited at best, data transfer rates are atrocious even when characters can achieve a link. There is no instant calling in of lies or asking for the answers on the Internet. The wilderness

stacked for a Storyteller who wants to make the characters operate on wit and careful planning, and not on their ability to use their Resources to come up with a solution to the problem.

At the same time, while they are cut off from technology, they are also in their natural environment. Though they may not have manufactured tools, they have the tools that nature gave the wolf. Where humans are unable to find food, the characters can sniff out edibles or hunt as wolves. Where humans have to worry about exposure, the characters can endure even the harshest conditions and the cold much more easily. Where humans often find the wilderness tough going, characters can assume a fleet-footed quadruped shape with a body form that makes slipping through dense underbrush easy. This is one of the great strengths of the Garou. They have all the natural tools of a wild beast, and all the remarkable wonders and intellect of the human race. This is your chance to highlight the true strength of the Garou, the Garou nature. Not only are they at home in the concrete jungle of human society, they are also at home in the nature's jungle as well. Take time in the wild to show how effective those natural tools are, and to highlight how the skinchanging of the Garou is more than just the ability to assume a war form, but also to gain access to a new set of strengths that are a part of humanity. Confront the characters with challenges that would be impossible for normal humans, but that are a snap for them with their wolf forms. Have them pursued by trackers who don't have helicopters and thermal vision goggles and every other remarkable piece of technology, and then let the characters run rings around their opponents.

Wilderness adventures also serve as an excellent opportunity for intra-pack bonding and roleplay. Characters in the wild will have only one another for company, and teamwork is critical to any sort of wilderness endeavor. People who take long backpacking trips together get to know each other very well indeed. Adventures like this are a time for forming and affirming bonds of friendship and respect among the members of the pack. An argument may be laid to rest or fanned to open hostilities, and old grudges and blossoms may be forbidden to live.

Storytellers who have been having problems getting members of the pack to roleplay can easily set up situations where the characters are compelled to interact. Face the characters with a challenge in one scene, then have them work together to solve it, and then have them around their camp or temporary den taking a bout the situation they just overcame. You can even just take two characters and say that while performing a task

together, they have a conversation, and then turn to the players and ask them what they're saying. If your players are used to roleplaying, they probably take to it well. But you can also do this to provide an experience for players to roleplay. Set up the circumstances, let them perform a few acts to lead into the conversation, and then indicate they should talk. If it works, you'll get one-on-one interaction. Don't pressure the players beyond the necessary nudges. If the conversation isn't going to catch, it isn't going to catch, and sometimes a halting conversation is the kind that really should occur. Keep alert, and when it ends, segue gracefully to the next scene. As a bit of additional advice, don't make it so that Bob and Joe talk, then Joe and Jane talk, then Jane and Bob talk. That's patently contrived and feels more like a scheduled rap session than genuine roleplaying. It's okay to have everyone interact, but try to make it seem naturalistic and break it up with action or group roleplay.

The bonding is equally easy to inject — there's a reason that wilderness experiences are used as a way to teach troubled youths teamwork. There are countless situations where several characters will need to work together. Anything from clearing a rockslide to climbing a cliff to fording a river. Even dividing up and accomplishing the day-for-day chores is accomplishment when you're living out of a backpack. Present problems that the characters can't solve alone, first, the players to devise solutions *as* character, and then let them carry the plan out. Use all of the crazy "group effort" and "help" rules from the System that let of the Werewolf book, and genuinely make overcoming the obstacle as a group into an important and rewarding challenge in the game. Make the characters work and plan together, and they'll soon develop the sort of bonds that are supposed to typify Garou packs.

## Wilderness Concerns

At the same time that the wilderness can provide lots of story hooks and has strengths that a Storyteller can exploit, there are also weaknesses to a story set here, and pitfalls worth avoiding.

The first obstacle is that unless you've done it a lot before, you're probably not experienced with describing wilderness situations in an exciting fashion. Before you learn wilderness practices, I like ahead of time, or run a number of short one- or two-scene outings or situations to get the feel of it. Try to learn to describe static challenges in an exciting way. Realize how boring or wilderness may feel to some people. Done Scout locations — go out in the woods or up into the mountains and look at the kind of potential obstacles a party might face. How could they bypass

it? What are the valid ways to attack the obstacle and overcome it? What you're looking for is give the players a real problem. If you don't describe it well and make it feel like a genuine obstacle problem, it's really just going to be you calling Dexterity + Athletics or a Wits + Survival roll, and the players trying to roll enough successes. Don't be afraid to make a roll and would be used as a decision that the characters are able to carry out the solution they devise, rather than being something you determine ahead of time. It's just a matter of making a bunch of predetermined Ability tests the players could have stayed at home because you could run the adventure with just some dice and the character sheets.

Also, one of the most effective things about the wilderness as a setting is that when the environment becomes an enemy, it's genuinely terrifying. It's implacable. It doesn't even realize or care that it's killing you. But at the same time, people don't mind roleplaying games to be killed by impersonal forces beyond their ability to influence or control. It's trying to emphasize the harsh, uncaring side of the wilderness.

It's very easy to accidentally create an obstacle that puts the characters in an unsurvivable situation, demonstrate that they cannot conquer Mother Nature. That's really not the point, that's just a more elaborate version of the character opening up her coat closet and finding a Nexus Crawler waiting for them. Even if the situation is designed to bear up the characters make it something more than just a beating. Let them learn or increase Abilities, or get something out of the experience. Otherwise you're just portraying the characters under the guise of a losing version of luck.

Finally, keep in mind that that one of the defining aspects of being out in the wild is the inability to get anywhere else quickly. This can prove quite troublesome if the adventure you planned to pursue is the other than you expected, or the characters are clearly not up for quality time with the snakes and the bugs. Try to think out ahead of time how long (in terms of time) the wilderness trek you're planning on will take. It's a rare gaming group that wants to spend the third straight game session walking through tooth as of the Rockies. Get a sense of how long your group can take a fairly moderate challenge. If that can bear, then make sure the wilderness excursions can't last much longer than that. If it's one or two sessions, then set that as your upper limit. Be sure to underplay a little, because things that already take longer than you expect, and you don't want to have everyone coming back to the next session for "just one more hour of logging in through the bayou." Also, if you're pre-planning events, make a list of what

encounters, if events are must-happens, and which are luxuries, that way a thing seen is a draught of water. You know what to cut out and what to keep while speeding things along.

### *Wilderness Stories*

The great wilderness is a natural setting for many Werewolf stories. But not what kinds of stories? The wilderness is a beginning, not a comprehensive catalog of possibilities. Use it as a catalyst and jumping-off point for your own work.

### *Spiritual Retreat*

Wilderness, wilderness of the Werewolf Darkness is under attack and targeted in many places by the corruption of the Wyrm. It is also a holy place, a place of primal power far greater and far older than the Cana.

### *Wolf Versus Man*

Werewolf poses an interesting dilemma to Cana characters by forcing them to make certain critical decisions about how they'll be using their shapeshifting abilities in advance of any wilderness travel. The very small number of items that can be carried on a given Cana means that if the werewolves plan on using their Lupus form to cover ground quickly, they are very limited in the amount of equipment they can carry with them. Even if they employ the sort of packs designed to hang haul their own food on camping trips, modified so that they can be removed by other Lupus form Cana, the amount of supplies they'll be hauling is minimal. They'll probably have food for no more than a few days worth of wolf food survival necessities like a knife, compass, GPS, a cell phone, map, some plastic tarping and stakes to form a temporary windbreak, and a set of clothes so that when the Cana must assume Human form, they will be at least type I human.

By the same token, if the Cana plan to take advantage of the Human form with its large carrying capacity and to use their ability to use the Lupus form to cover ground is severely limited. While the wolf shape is still useful for scouting, escape, and hunting, it is human gear essential to the werewolf's mobility. With its plodding pace and inability to slip efficiently through undergrowth.

Obviously, there are ways to bypass this natural patently — the characters can cache supplies in a cache, or they can be the supplies. They can abandon the romping and move as upris, scavenging as they go. Whatever the solution is, it requires planning. Just like all successful wilderness decks.

As the body of Gaia and the face of the world, and werewolves are its creatures. In these increasingly dark times, they must often find it necessary to seek shelter and solace in the arms of the forests and mountains that have been haunts of their anima cousins since the dawn of time. Not all gatherings must be part of the sept's sacred rituals. Alone in the wild or running with their pack, they can reflect on what it is that they're defending, regaining their sense of purpose and renewing the ties to the land.

Cana may go into the wild simply to rest from their warping. They may go to find a will to live. They and their packmates may stake out a territory and defend it as their own. Those Cana whose mortal lives force them toward a life of rootless travel probably find this to be immensely satisfying. The skin-changers may need to seek out the spirit guardians of their Gifts, or to contact spirits strange to them and find new Gifts for their people, or to seek out a totem for their pack.

As a Storyteller, such adventures can provide you with the same break the characters seek — a chance to get away from ongoing conflict and return refreshed and to challenge the characters with simple situations or just allow them all to teleplay freely.

### *Fables and Fomies*

And it may be that nature presents the Cana with wisdom and insight. When in the wild, the werewolf opens to spiritual influences, and those influences may well speak to them uninvited. A character in the wild may learn lessons from nature as nature intends, not as they wish.

Doubtless, many of these lessons are simple ones, and really no more than the reassuring touch of the wild encouraging the Cana to breed when they may, to accept a death in stride with the natural order, and to bond with their packmates. Yet others may be more complex — don't be afraid to make the wilderness a mystical place. They may be obvious messages: a stream speaking directly to a Theurge with Pulse of the I was able to tell her the identities of those beings that have polluted the stream, or a forest conspiring to arrange for a pack to come upon something that will teach a lesson. They could be more elaborate, though. Many spirits can provoke visions — who still say that a werewolf's time in the wilderness is crucial, especially if he willingly throws himself into Nature's embrace. It could be that a pack experiences guidance through visions of the best of nature and ancestor spirits, or their totem. The characters may gain great insight from witnessing natural events like a martial lion's fight or a cat's new forms. The Cana may come to understand new strategies from watching a fox stalk a pheasant, but the lessons could be far deeper, such as fighting styles. What if a character is



sophisticated in the wild and finds that the problems he faced were never like the ones he had in the city.

As a Storyteller, this is a chance to have spirits who would otherwise be setting elements and plot or clue dispensing machines become active parts of your game. The characters are no longer just a mechanical cog in the machine, but a character through her spirit. The spirit patrons of the characters (caerns) aren't just potential totems, but active entities who touch the characters' lives and influence their doings. It's also a chance for you to directly steer the game through the intervention of your Storyteller characters. If you see the characters heading toward a fight they can't win or just all the off-the-beats of smart thinking, it's a chance to give them a new twist on the king's illusion of free will. You're not just meddling, you're telling them what's best.

### *Infiltration and Escape*

It's ironic that we've made the world as simple as a place. We've just made it very easy to move through some extremely narrow corridors. The vast majority of North America is sparsely populated or totally unpopulated. While a permanent residence would probably attract notice given time, the wilderness provides an excellent way for small groups of individuals who need to get out of town. While the going is patently slow compared to the cities or places, and in most places you can't travel a day without crossing a road, a group traveling light and mindful of covering their tracks can make a getaway

without any real fear of detection. This can be due to useful knowledge. The city may offer the avoiding situation, but tries in order to preserve the Veil, or approaching a town where everyone they meet may be able to detect their true nature.

For Storytellers, a travel story—particularly a tense one as the characters try to evade pursuit or spend weeks sneaking close to a heavily guarded installation—can be an excellent interlude in a chronicle. In this role, they don't just serve as role playing interludes and little side games. Characters can be involved in a variety of consequences, from a simple escape to a complex mission, an assault or espionage operation. A character who penetrated a sophisticated defense network may even pursue to make a successful getaway.

### *Survival Situations*

Finally, characters can be tossed into a situation where they're genuinely in peril. They may be Kinkaid or even Garret in some sort of dire situation like an airplane crash in a remote area or an attack on an isolated camp that sets them in a prepared flight. Whatever the case, the characters are left with only their wits and what they can eat. This isn't a situation where they can just wait for help if conditions are harsh or the pack is largely hopeless city slickers. This is a very legitimate challenge for Kinkaid, and can win them a lot of points for being smart and tough.

even serving as a chance to try out or learn Gith without bringing a tyvershark woe by the ill-blooded members of the family.

As a Storyteller, this is a chance to put the characters in a bind and force some quick thinking. They probably don't have all their weapons and gear, and they're probably off their element. The characters may be wounded or in the run and. Plan Wilderness survival urban characters will probably be in an alien world. Storytellers that feel the pack is drifting into too much of an urban/civilized mode might want to throw such a story at the characters purely for shock value. While the challenges for the characters are the Gamemaster's ally, the Gamemaster's ally is the Gamemaster's ally. As they panicking just because they're off the "path"? That might not be outside the realm of possibility for a pack's totem or ancestors to arrange such an event just to get the message across. If the characters are smart and adaptable, they'll live and learn; if the characters are unwise and foolish, they'll probably die, and that's one of the lessons the wilderness teaches.

## Wilderness Survival

This section deals with the necessities of wilderness survival, and provides a brief overview of how exactly you hack it in the wild. It is general but should serve to give Storytellers with no woodsy background a fairly good understanding of the wilderness. It is lived. Although some of this could technically be substituted as proper information, ultimately it's not as important for you as Storyteller to know the important points of wilderness survival as it is for you to know the important information the players that require it. Use the ignorance of an over-civilized pack against them. After all, it's much more involving for the players to learn these techniques over the course of a dramatic story than to read it out of a book.

## Plan

Planning is the number one survival rule. Any character going into a situation where she and her companions are on their own had better know exactly what she'll be doing, and she should know ahead of time. A wilderness character preparing for a wilderness journey will work out every day's work ahead of time with a map and an almanac, using the map to find good campsites and estimate travel times, and the almanac to determine the start and stop times for the day's travel. The stop time is critical — it is very difficult to set up a camp after sundown. Without the ambient sky glow from street lights, it gets very dark at night.

Characters trying to set up a tent and cook a meal in the pitch dark will quickly find it both exhausting and prone to damage valuable gear. When planning travel times, wise characters will be sure to allow

generous margins for a member of the traveling party to get in trouble, or for the group to find that the trail was washed out a year ago or has become totally overgrown with blackberry bushes.

Meals should be planned ahead of time, with attention paid to making sure everyone in the traveling party gets the right number of calories for the sort of heavy work they'll be doing. Food is also a major planning issue. It is heavy, bulky, and indispensable. These facts combine to force traveling parties to restock their water supplies frequently, every 2 to 3 days at the most. In temperate or tropical regions, this generally isn't a problem — it's hard to walk a full day without having some sort of running water in and regions, however, the location of water typically dictates the course of travel.

Characters should also plan for what to do in case of injury, including a well-stocked first aid kit and all the gear necessary for a travois. Have an injured member of the group out. Everyone should know how to do a lot of the important first aid tasks. It's no good to have the one person who's a walking medical unit get knocked unconscious by a falling rock. The first aid kit can obviously be dispensed with when the traveling party is all injured, since between Mother's Touch and regeneration there's not much that can keep a werewolf down, but it's still critical if there are Kith or animals in the Gameworld to present a façade of normalcy.

Characters' plans should include an objective wilderness wandering without worrying about what comes next is a luxury. In wilderness, you try off your back. Once you leave the land of convenience stores and shopping malls, you have to keep your goals in mind and try to marshal your resources toward them, because those resources are limited. If you don't spend them well, they'll be gone and you'll have nothing to show for it, and in the wilderness "nothing" means you don't have any food to eat or a place to sleep. Characters who are traveling toward a destination have reaching the destination as their ultimate goal, and all their plans must be in that. Characters stranded in the wilderness due to accident or other happenstance have their return to civilization as a goal. Even characters who have gone out into the wilderness to live as hermits have a goal: achieve a sustainable state of living, where they're gathering at least enough food to balance the amount they eat, while still having enough time to maintain their dwelling and advance any other personal projects.

## Avoid Cold

The second most important rule of survival, beyond planning, is to control your temperature. The human-werewolf bodies are both immensely flexible machines, capable of regulating their internal tem-

perature to allow them to survive in a broad range of conditions. However, the human body is mostly suited to fairly warm temps — anything below 60

Fahrenheit is uncomfortable without clothing, and temperatures below that can cause hypothermia. In hypothermia, the body loses heat faster than it can generate it, until its core temperature drops at low level at which the human body can function. For a naked human, hypothermia can be a risk at even 50°F. Hypothermia is characterized by severe shivering, replaced by a sense of warmth and physical weakness as the body fails. It remains uncorrected, the victim will eventually go into shock and freeze to death.

The remedies to this sound are simple. First, the character can move vigorously, which causes his muscles to generate heat and warm his body. This is only effective at relatively warm temperatures, or in conjunction with other forms of protection. Second, the character can remove himself from the wind. As a character radiates heat, it warms the air around him. Since the amount of heat transferred between two bodies depends on their relative temperature, this slows the rate at which the character's body loses heat. Wind constantly pushes new air against the character, causing his body to lose heat quickly. This makes it seem much colder than it is, and again, winds plus subfreezing temperatures are a combination that can rapidly sap the strength of characters exposed to them. Characters trapped in high, cold winds should seek the shelter of any sort of structure that can function as a windbreak. Huddling also works, and several characters huddled close together can stay warm by minimizing the amount of surface area any given character exposes to the cold.

Third, the character can surround himself with some sort of material that absorbs his radiated heat and retains it, rather than letting it flee into the surrounding air — winter clothing, for example. However, basic weather gear is not the only effective form of protection. Anything that breaks the wind and traps air helps — pine boughs covered by a tarp, for example, will provide some protection. Snow is an excellent insulator, and the best thing a character trapped in a snowstorm can do is burrow her way into a snowbank. This shuts out the wind, and the burrow temperature can go as high as 50 degrees Fahrenheit, allowing even

If the pack stock weather gear is inadequate for the temperature, and they will not go to ground, it cannot go to ground (for example, if they are stranded on open ice) then they will almost certainly die of hypothermia. This will tell even the Gators, unless they have Gator protection from the cold. The astonishing powers of regeneration cannot protect them against the chilling effects of winter. (In game terms, Gators

### *The Wolf in Winter*

Wolves have fur coats and are well protected against winter cold. Arctic wolves can endure temperatures as low as 70 degrees Fahrenheit, though they are a specialized breed. Hypothermia isn't much of a concern for most characters to worry about, though, until about 20°F, at which point most wolves will start thinking about huddling in the snow somewhere. The weakness of a wolf's insulation is that, like goose down, it relies on its fluff to trap air. The wolf becomes wet, the insulating properties of its fur are greatly diminished. A soaked wolf in subfreezing temperatures is an animal in dire straits.

who do nothing to defend themselves against the elements start taking aggravated damage when the cold gets too intense. This damage should accrue slowly enough that the players feel that were wolves, they still be tormented that humans would be in such a situation, but quickly enough that freezing to death remains a real danger, a health level of damage every couple of hours spent without sufficient warmth should suffice.

Characters in cold conditions also have a secondary threat: frostbite. While hypothermia comes from the character's body temperature dropping below safe levels, frostbite comes from the temperature of the surface tissue dropping so low that actual damage occurs. This normally occurs in the farthest reaches of the character's extremities, such as fingers and toes. Like They're the farthest away from the character's body core, and their small size means there's a great deal of radiating surface for only a small amount of tissue.

However, this is not the only place that frostbite can occur, and characters exposed to high winds can suffer frostbite effects all over the face and other exposed skin areas. In its first stages, frostbite is simply numbness and a sensation of cold. As it progresses, permanent circulatory and neurological damage occurs. The flesh will eventually have to be removed or proper blood flow. Very severe cases involve tissue necrosis — the affected flesh simply dies, and will rot off, with all the associated health complications. While frostbite is obviously a minor concern for Canids, it is a serious danger for kith and kin.

### *Acidic Hard*

Heat is not as great a threat to the human organism as cold. The human body has a phenomenal cooling system that, if provided with enough water, can sustain it in the hottest of conditions — unsuited, in a species that evolved near equatorial Africa. The body secretes water, which evaporates, transferring warmth from the

remaining more efficient than simple radiation. Other than the very old, the very young, the sick, and those with breathing problems, very few humans need fear acute heat exposure. Nonetheless, heat-related equivalents to both hypothermia and frostbite do exist.

The equivalent to hypothermia is hyperthermia, or heat prostration. Heat prostration occurs when the

level at which her internal organs function properly is almost at a halt when the character has no water to drink and thus stops sweating, but can also occur when individuals—especially individuals not acclimated

to hot conditions—exerted in hot weather and exert a high effort for long periods. Hyperthermia is very dangerous because a stressed individual can often remain upright until after the point where she cannot naturally recover from the condition.

The first stage of hyperthermia is common called heat exhaustion and is typified by a feeling of nausea, light-headedness, and clammy skin. The victim will, at this phase, generally improve if moved into the shade and given water, preferably water lightly laced with salt and other electrolytes. In more extreme cases, commonly called heat stroke, the skin becomes dry and the victim will generally not recover naturally, though Mother's Touch will probably improve him, as will natural regeneration if he is removed from the light and allowed

Normal mortals are generally treated with a warm water bath and a saline IV. Victims that are not treated properly can die from brain or organ damage, and many survivors of extreme cases suffer kidney and other renal system problems afterwards. With lower werewolves are resilient enough to recover from the systemic damage, they are still vulnerable to overheating, fainting and even death if they abuse themselves enough that they become dehydrated and fall unconscious of sun poisoning too far from water.

The second equivalent of frostbite is sunburn. This occurs when the skin is exposed to direct sunlight for extended periods. Radiation penetrates the dermis and damages the tissue beneath it. Depend-

ing on severity, sunburn can range from mildly annoying to life-threatening, although it occurs slowly. Sunburn is an actual burn.

All humans naturally secrete a skin pigment with radiation blocking properties—melanin—in varying amounts, so that the more exposed a character is to extra radiation, some solar radiation exposure is catalytic for a healthy melanin production process. Some human groups that have adapted to cold, dark environments often have a lot less melanin compared to the norm of the species. These subgroups—such as the Eskimos and the Inuit—are most susceptible to sunburn. All humans will secrete additional melanin to

block radiation as an automatic reflex if they're exposed to sunlight, but this process is slow and cannot prevent immediate burns. Contrary to popular mythology, however dark your skin is, you can still suffer sunburn—the threshold for injury is simply higher. Characters in sunny conditions should cover as much of their skin as possible. If disease-carrying insects are not a threat, light-skinned characters in very hot conditions will probably want to adopt a program of progressive exposure to darken their skin and allow them to minimize the amount of clothing they wear. Darker skin is far more efficient at absorbing heat than skin covered in cloth. Characters that are severely sunburnt can, of course, simply regenerate the skin.

Protection from heat is generally easier than protection from cold. The characters should avoid direct sunlight and heavy exertion during the hottest hours of the day—typically the period from 2 p.m. to 4 p.m.—and drink plenty of water. It is only when they begin to violate these rules that they run a serious risk of injury from heat—the human body is just that good at dissipating heat. Unless the character ignores the basic rules of hot weather survival or end up stranded on the floor of Death Valley or some other flat, sunbaked plain in high summer, survival is probably assured.

### *Stay Dry*

It is critical that characters in the wild attempt to avoid getting wet, at least if the sort of cold and skin damage that wolves fear. This seems like a relatively minor matter, but it is actually quite important. A wet person is effectively covered in a torrent of icy-cold sweat leaching their heat away. Even after the moisture is gone, wet clothing transmits heat inefficiently, speeding the onset of hypothermia. A character caught in a driving cold rain may succumb to acute hypothermia, or be so weakened by the experience she develops pneumonia or some other opportunistic ailment. The obvious solution is to find shelter from rain, particularly cold, gusty rain. Characters that have been soaked should attempt to dry off and dry their clothes as best as possible as soon as possible.

The second reason to stay dry is trench foot. Human tissue isn't entirely waterproof—when you expose it to water long enough, it soaks, swells, and eventually splits. Obviously boots are the worst culprits for retaining water (hence the ailment's name), but damp clothing rubbing against any tissue can cause very serious chafing injuries.

In the case of trench foot, however, the foot turns blue and becomes covered with blisters, all accompanied by agonizing pain. If treated promptly, it can generally be reduced, though the character will suffer a lot of feeling and periodic pain in the

## The Wolf in Summer

In hot weather, all the phenomena insulating proper to the wolf's coat become a liability. It only sweats from its nose, tongue and paws, and while the rest of the beast's body can radiate heat, it is insulated by fur and doesn't have sweat glands to raise the efficiency of radiation. It is not so much a survival hazard as a major limitation on the animal's activity. While very hot temperatures are not incredibly healthy for wolves, they are not directly fatal so long as the wolf has shade and water. However, if the animal picks up any sort of strenuous activity for any period of time, it risks hyperthermia, as its body will be producing heat as quickly as or more quickly than an active human cardiovascular system for dumping it. Storytellers may wish to begin imposing penalties on Hspx or Lupus-form characters in extremely hot conditions after as little as ten turns of activity.

The Cinnos form is slightly better adapted to this "war form" aspect. A werewolf fight Cinnos can generate a lot of heat, between the furnace of Rage and the incredible metabolic furnace that drives regenerative. The Cinnos form is thus equipped with more sweat glands than usual (though not quite as many as the human body), allowing it to vent off excess heat during or after an intense fight. An exhausted Cinnos might be in a slight lather like an overworked horse — which is good for short-term cooling, but not so great for fighting dehydration.

extremity. This is not unlike the tissue damage caused by frostbite, and, as with severe frostbite, there is a strong tendency toward necrosis. The dead flesh often becomes gangrenous, necessitating amputation.

Trench foot is a terrible ailment, and very easy to catch if you don't take care. "It's a disease," says the War 2 manual, "in which the blood supply to the foot is reduced to such an extent that the foot is no longer able to resist the effects of cold." The solution is to change your socks several times a day. Characters unable to do so should dry the socks and shoes they have thoroughly after an immersion. Characters who do not do so will develop trench foot, and possibly lose their feet. While a Garou or Petaquala healed the damage after the episode has passed, it is unlikely that he can prevent the blunting itself.

## Drink Water

Characters may wish to avoid getting wet, but they certainly don't want to avoid water. As mentioned, water is both heavy and bulky. Water weighs about eight and a half pounds per gallon, and is incompressible; you can't easily make it occupy less volume by pressing it.

It's hard to run out of. An exercising character can use over a gallon of water a day, and that includes characters exercising in cold weather. Going without water for more than two or at most three days is quite likely to be fatal. People have lived for longer, but there's usually renal system damage, and brain damage and other organ damage. It's also quite possible.

Normally, water is obtained from streams.

Streams, ponds and rivers. Gathering it is as simple as making sure there isn't a dead fish floating nearby and filling your container up. Surface water is a definite health issue — just because it looks okay doesn't mean it's safe to drink. Much of the water in the wild is contaminated with natural parasites or contains minerals poisonous to humans. Waterborne parasites are nothing to laugh at — they can cause anything from diarrhea (with the consequent dehydration and waste of calories from food the character is unable to digest) to serious long-term organ damage. This is probably nothing that Mother's Touch can cure, but it's still a serious inconvenience. In general, running water is safer to drink than still water, but you still shouldn't drink it unless you have no choice.

There are excellent filters and purification kits available that make drinking wild water safe, and they're quite cheap. Characters should be aware that modern water filters have no effect on the taste of water, so a lot of water, and bring extra filters with them. Characters without such advanced kits will have to rely on more traditional methods. Parasites are susceptible to boiling, but water must be distilled to remove mineral content. Since stoves of any size are bulky, most mineral-contaminated water is effectively undrinkable. Characters should also be aware that commercial filters, like those sold in supermarkets to "purify" residential water, are typically designed toward removing minerals that cause water to taste odd, and not actually purify it — they are not necessarily useful against parasites.

Characters in cold areas may have to melt snow or ice for water. Snow is not good for you to eat in any kind of volume — you really must melt it first. Characters in arid areas may not be able to find surface water of any sort, but it may be possible to dig for water in "creases" in the terrain (where steep slopes meet a flat surface) and, of course, the presence of slanting water courses. Likewise seasonal streambeds often carry a year-round sluggish current through the sediment. Characters in arid situations will normally require a solar still to go.

Such a still is little more than a fairly large hole, preferably one dug in camp earth. The hole is filled with chopped vegetation if any is available (the roots of desert plants work best) and a bowl, cup or other container is set at the bottom. The



werewolves using Hispanolam, Garou have many human-like traits. They go over their wolf and human relatives. But unless the characters are willing to leave the bulk of a kill there rot and take only a few cuts, the carcass must be dressed and the meat prepared. Take some meat out of your refrigerator and leave it in a tub. It doesn't take very long until it gets smelly and is barely edible, does it? It doesn't take any longer just because you're out in the woods. Characters have a day or two to smoke, salt or eat the meat, with maybe another day or two after that if they're willing to go into Lupus form and exploit the tougher canine digestive system to stomach the ripening meat.

So in general, unless the group is traveling very light, it's probably wise for Garou to bring along some or a lot of their food rather than hunting, because hunting takes time and draws attention. In any case, modern survival funds generally engendered, have a better calorie-to-weight ratio than wild food. Meat packs are light, high-energy funds—food bars, nuts, chocolate and fatty meats. Lightness of food is critical for wilderness sojourns of any real length; two pounds of food a day doesn't sound like very much, but it sure is a lot when you have to carry twenty days worth on top of twenty pounds of water and your camping gear. Food should be stored in waterproof containers, and hoisted into a tree away from camp every night. Characters should not store food in their tents, because most of god's animals are extremely hungry most of the time. (Master Bear will not take no for an answer when he tries to stick his nose in your backpack. Sure, werewolves can bear a Kodiak in a fistfight, but do you really want to have that fistfight on top of your campsite?)

### *The Lupine Diet*

Characters in Lupus may "go native" and survive as predators. Wolves must eat about 25 pounds of meat a day to survive, or about 5 pounds to stay reproductively fit, which also means they need that much to stay in "fighting trim." That equals one large groundhog or other similar animal per wolf per day, or about one white-tailed, miteinge or other game animal, for comparable size, every 4 days for a pack of five wolves. Wolves can "go native" and hunt for food, but they're not going them to "fuel up" for a multi-day dry spell, but 20 pounds of meat doesn't stretch very far in anyone's stomach—wolves that gorge will spend at least a day sleeping and lazing it off before they're ready for action again.

## *Human Cultures and Myths*

The world of Werewolf is very much not what modern Western civilization is, and its people. It is a world of spirits and sacred struggle, in which everything has an aspect of holiness and the world seems quiet only because we lack the knowledge to hear its voice. It is, therefore, a world in which many tales people have told each other over the millennia may be partly or wholly true.

Certainly, Werewolf owes its existence to the variety of myths and stories told in the real world. Without the American Indian stories of trickster to act as messengers from the spirit world, without the South American stories of jaguar people or the African tales of Anansi the spider-trickster, without the popular legend of the "maka é mbembe" or the Indian stories of the ragg, without the Norse Fenris and the Arabian Wendigo and the Greek hures who would Werewolf. Given that Werewolf is based on the idea of such myths having a bloody "reality" in the World of Darkness, it's obvious that a little attention to other myths can only benefit the craft. Stories, like any myth, legend or story, can be inspirational for a Werewolf chronicler; all it takes is a little forethought.

### *Changing Stories*

In the real world, of course, there are no Garou. Therefore, no real world tale accurately reflects their influence. When you bring in an element of the real world and explain it in terms of the game's realities, you are changing its meaning. It's very important to be clear about this at the outset, so that you can think clearly about when and how you want to go about it.

It's okay to explain real people's experience of the world and their efforts to make sense of it in terms of fantasy creatures. The answer must be a resounding, sometimes, depending on how you go about it.

Note that the idea of stories that exist in a form and carry a fixed meaning is itself by no means universal among the real world's peoples, past and present. The myths of a living culture, the exemplars and symbols which express people's hopes, fears, values, devotions and enemies, change over time, just as individual people grow up, mature and grow old. Few cultures have ever developed the notion of "canon" in the sense of texts and interpretations that ought not change. (Nor do the notion of canon actually keep things from changing; it only changes the way changes express themselves.)

As an example, consider Uncle Sam, the U.S. general figure, the tall and lanky man in red, white and blue suit and white hair. First appears in political cartoons in the middle of the 19th century. He's been

used to recruit soldiers and to represent the spirit of the nation, admonishing warmongers, as a symbol of America's benevolent leadership and with evil left as the demon of American aggression, as the endorser of commercial goods and as the noble critic of commercialism degrading the country. His proportions vary, because whatever real person or people inspired the artist, all iterations are all know good and he reflects archetypal features.

Other cultural heroes serve similarly diverse purposes. Confucius has been invoked just within the last century to support imperial government, to attack it, to anchor Confucianism in the Chinese tradition of philosophical leadership and to justify the rejection of tradition in favor of reformulation, to beam down on the masses as an primal wise scholar and to glare down on them as the scholar-king, assessor of tyranny. He's been seen as hero, villain and Jesus, and he will continue to give value to his parts and more as long as anyone remembers him. The real struggling scholar of the 5th century BC who taught the principles at the heart of the Analects doesn't matter much to these cultural functions, either: they deal with Confucius the symbol.

Someone isn't doing anything unprecedented when you offer a new explanation for some aspect of a character or describe a different meaning to one of its symbols. In our lives in real life many values are for their simple enjoyment as well as for didactic purposes, you're just doing what people around the world and through history are already doing. The particular mythology you apply to the Werewolf may be new, but the process of applying existing material to suit one's own purposes is as old as stories themselves.

### *Archetype and Stereotype*

The act of reinterpretation is itself neither good nor bad. What matters is how you go about it. One of the easiest ways to make a travesty of someone's soul is to take their words and actions and reduce them to a single, another's last, best trick is the difference between archetype and stereotype.

Archetypes point to what the people in a culture or feel that they ought to value in his heroic person, Uncle Sam represents a glad, twant "square" looking and concern with taxes and pain speaking over practical appearances, while Confucius illustrates the combination of personal humility with piercing intelligence and sense of duty. But no matter what American is Uncle Sam and no idealized Chinese is Confucius. The statement "Americans tend to praise forthright honesty as more important than polished formality of presentation" takes about an aspect of the culture and doesn't say anything, only that all Americans have that feature or even that every single American wants to. "No American can understand war" is a

quoted put-down; "few Americans learn how to appreciate poetry" is closer to a statement of fact. It may or may not be true, but it can be discussed reasonably objectively and it doesn't try to force every single individual into a particular mold.

Stereotypes strip away individual identities in favor of a collective identity. Stereotypes that the speaker intends to positive do this, just as much as stereotypes intended as derogatory. "Gypsies naturally understand the spirits" and "Celts have a special innate understanding of the wildness" are just as common, inaccurate and disrespectful as "all African Americans are lazy" and "all Jews are greedy." The positive stereotypes impose goals and priorities on the people they're about without regard for what the individuals in question may want or regard as important.

Positive stereotypes make it easy to slide into paternalistic attitudes. After all, if this girl belongs to a group with a special affinity with the spirits, wouldn't it be a disservice to let her adopt a religion that denies the spirits? And if that man has the mark of a particular attitude for communing with the force of nature, shouldn't we steer him away from anything so serious as business or science?

In American history, the romantic notion of the Native American as free from the tyrannical shackles of civilization and the wilderness possessed of magical powers for the wonders of nature played a major part in the development of programs and laws that denied Native Americans opportunities to join in the life of less romanticized mainstream society. The belief that Native Americans were innately superior therefore helped keep them poor, ignorant and in unnecessary misery from disease, bad sanitation and other problems that the mainstream had addressed for its own members long before.

Archetypes speak of hopes and fears within a society. Archetypes embody truths and principles that can manifest in many ways, allowing for growth and development (and loss and decay) while stereotypes speak of values that can manifest in only one way, allowing for no movement. Remember that individuals and therefore societies change, and do not commit yourself to impossibly constraining visions of what people in the game world must be, even if you mean well by it.

### *The Werewolf in the Story*

Opportunities and pitfalls travel in pairs through the landscape of potentially useful real world stories as do archetypes. As usual, this is a generalization, not a rule, and the categories are necessarily somewhat arbitrary. They're intended to help you achieve even a half-sensible outlook. There's very seldom one uniquely right and



hour. So you have a great deal of freedom to say "this bit of the game world really accounts for this interesting thing I found in a story or current affairs."

One of the keys to creating an attractive world is that things exist on several levels. You as an individual person are yourself, and also a manifestation of the spirit of your community, and of your tribe and of your nation. You partake of the spirit of your environment, sharing some part of your soul with the life and land and air and water around you. Other sorts of identification may also come into play. This means that an explanation based on something working a particular way because it's part of one group doesn't rule out the truth and relevance of explanations based on the thing belonging to other groups as well.

The coexistence of multiple meanings allows you to use real-world myths and legends to speak of Werewolf matters as well as the real-world concerns they address. Reducing everything to a single meaning of any kind stereotypes it, and you shouldn't rush to do

You should go particularly slow when interpreting real people's beliefs and customs in a fictional world. When you approach the real world as fodder for your game, you should think of it in terms of adding meaning, not taking away the meaning that's already there.

Jackie Sam's hoodies are the national pride in vigor and ingenuity. These are what they are, reflecting different

and diverse heritage of pioneers along with a generous dose of mythologizing and nostalgia in the face of changing social conditions. All of this, and a

well-known truth, and moving it to the World of Darkness doesn't make it false. Rather, it makes other aspects also true. To a Triat scholar, Uncle Sam might show how the Wyld's principle of boundless creativity continues to operate in industrial societies. Technology past the late Iron Age doesn't make the Wyld irrelevant; it opens up channels for birth and the productive chaos from which all things come that rival peoples may not recognize.

Like wise, Confucius is the symbol that rises even in the modern world. He embodies the essence of scholarship in the service of society and the pursuit of

social order through diligent pursuit of virtue. This is as true in the World of Darkness as it is in reality. Confucius also comes to symbolize a meaning that is a check to the Triat: he manifests the "benevolent tyrant" aspect of the Weaver. This aspect of the principle of equilibrium and continuity isn't mad, but its meaning is open to interpretation depending on the

of what you. Just as in the real world, Confucius becomes the example by which rival visions of society may illustrate the usefulness of the World of Darkness he can serve as an example for Garou and others who debate the desirability of the Weaver's

actions in long-lived societies like China. Nothing becomes false here, more things become true.

Draw on the full range of concepts Werewolf offers. Not everything flows directly from the Triat, or from the tribe found most often in a geographical area. What interesting people and natural phenomena reflect the influence of a particular Incarna or Celestine? What

through the temporary manifestation of a connection with one of the great (or small) Umbra realms. Who are the unwitting kinfolk of other Changing Breeds, and who has a family history that keeps bringing them up against the edge of the Delirium? If there's an aspect of the game that you've been wanting to bring into play, a bridge with real folk are often leads players where you want them to go, not just willingly but enthusiastically.

■ **Werewolf-specific concepts don't explain everything.** While it's good for your players to feel that their characters move through a landscape with unexpected dimensions and endlessly interesting revelations, be careful not to trivialize real-world concerns. Not every story is secretly about the Werewolf setting, and you should include attention to stories that really are about what they seem to be about.

Indeed, a certain level of apparent contradiction is intrinsically sound in Werewolf terms. The Garou know the real world, at least in a way. They don't know much about how the magic of the Namebreakers works, for instance, nor do they have a good grasp on the complexities of the lands of the dead in the Dark Umbra. They don't know what all lurks in the depths of the Wyrm's realms, nor those of the Weaver or the Wild. There are secrets in the natural world not revealed to them, either in places where neither the spirits nor other Changers choose to share with the Garou. These limitations apply to all the Breeds, no matter how old. Any of the world like to think they know it all.

So it's appropriate to introduce a myth from time to time whose explanation seems true and yet does not fit smoothly with the forces Garou venerate. Many mythic creators combine elements of two or even three aspects of the Triat. Some cultures ascribe different personalities and responsibilities to the spirits of the planets. Tame animals don't have consistent natures, and afterlives vary widely. The Garou as a race suffer from arrogance and self-righteous pride, and no bad thing to show characters that sometimes there is, inevitably, more than they can account for. Don't do this often enough to make them feel that the rituals are trivial or profoundly broken, because in the World of Darkness the Garou understand (or can understand, if they pay attention) much of the cosmic order. It's just that there's always something more

## The World

• **The world is marvelous.** Like the real world, the World of Darkness contains breathtaking beauty and terror. There are places no human eye will ever see, far from the sun, and beyond the Gaia's reach. There are the glories that strike the unaided (human) eye and ear and just sink in, and that there is more to see on other scales from the evolution of a healthy ecosystem over the centuries to the ritual dance of symbiosis among creatures too small for the eye to see.

When Robert Ballard and his crew discovered the wreck of the Titanic, they found it festooned with strange-looking extrusions that were clearly the remains of meta-features after non-metabolizing bacteria had done their work. Ballard's science team dubbed the features "rusticles," invoking their nature as deep-sea manifestation of rust and corrosion. Several years later, multi-disciplinary scientist Charles Pellegrino and his colleagues actually brought rusticles to the surface to study more thoroughly, and found wonders. Each rusticle is actually a different community of up to two dozen different bacteria species, each with its own feeding requirements, and they form layers and entire crude circulatory systems so that the extrusion of one species feeds the next ones in line. The rusticles are found all over the world, carried by deep-sea currents until they find a suitable home.

Most gamers would think of a shipwreck at the bottom of the sea as not very relevant to them. And yet, here is a whole thriving network of life, whose remains strongly resemble long mysterious fossils of some of the very first living organisms. The Wyld's at work in a place where the sun never shines, in and around the Titanic as in the volcanic vents along mid-ocean ridges and other deep holes.

Here's another reason for a moment of mystic appreciation that owes its existence to modern science. The theme of unexpected beauty in the midst of difficulty is a magical, sapient one that can reward you. reward your players from time to time with a moment of awe and satisfaction along with the more conventional and accessible forms of beauty.

• **The world is terrible.** The natural world is not nice, and a key theme of Werewolf is (or at least can be) that simple answers do not suffice. Any species that produces offspring must include some provision for its members to lie, worry, or even ruin the world, destroy its habitat, and then become extinct. For that matter, extinction is a fact of nature: the overwhelming majority of all species that have ever lived have become extinct, and nature does not hesitate to destroy species individually or by the thou-

sands, sometimes the survival of any life on earth at all has been a matter of chance.



Nature makes no provision for rights as people define them. Predators hunt the innocent without regard for the hopes or aspirations or dreams of the creatures they kill. Seeds and eggs and the young alike are all treated as much larger numbers that can possibly survive, and most die young just as there are deer, for example, as mortal support in the wild, and there are many instances of parasitism, with creatures whose whole existence depends on the ongoing pain of others.

Remember that darkness and destruction are part of nature. While the Wyrm has gone mad, the principle of dissolution existed before it did. Not everything the Wyld ever brought forth was kindly and friendly, and the equilibrium achieved after the Weaver has been something less than kind. One of the most potent uses of the Wyld is about the origins of the dark side of the world, to bring forth comprehensible form for your players, to integrate it with the rest of the characters' understanding.

## Roleplaying Animals

An animal is a companion Werewolf in respect they are in any other White Wolf game. Whether it's the wolfkin that starts up trouble or the equine the pack pursues or a guard of the grove tries to make friends with, animals are a constant sight. Werewolf has an added dimension in that unlike most role-playing games, it isn't uncommon for characters to be able to converse with the rational drapings of the hungry tiger. Game Storytellers should treat animals with at least as much respect as they do the other characters under their control. Let's face it, sometimes when speaking to an eagle, say, you start the point as bumping the local crime boss for information. It could be at least as animal-like. But where to be.

### Perception

A key point in representing animals is to understand how they perceive the world, or more properly, how we think they perceive the world. Take a wolf, for example. Her view is low to the ground, so the top of a table is unknown territory. She can see moderately well, but is better at noting movement than identifying stationary figures. Is a  or a human, she has a hard time distinguishing shades of red, and orange they blend in with green foliage. She sees farther into the blue spectrum than we do, and can see  better in dim light. Wolf's hearing, like wolf's hearing is quite keen, and she can pick up tones in much higher pitch than a human can detect. And, of course, her nose opens an olfactory world we can't

fragments, revealing to her who and what is upwind the way the health of the wolf was marked a tree and how long ago he passed by and any number of other clues about her environment. Finally, she has whiskers that give her feel around her in the darkness of a den—and possibly which way the breeze blows.

Many creatures discover that world through senses that are more than a little alien to us. Some bats and dolphins use focused sound waves to navigate. Many fish, notably eel-poutfish and sharks, hunt by sensing the electricity generated by the prey's own muscles. The compound eyes of bees register far into the ultraviolet spectrum. Hawks have a narrower range of hearing, but can easily pick up movement and focus on a rabbit while soaring high above. Some birds, sea turtles and fish can travel hundreds or even thousands of miles annually to find a specific tree, beach or stream, using navigational cues that are often beyond our ken. Even dogs have been known to journey incredible distances to return home. Sometimes we wish, don't know how animals know what they do, a good example being dogs that sense the change in a cat's epinephrine levels up to half an hour prior to a seizure.

But it's more than just having keen senses. Wild animals are quite simply more adept at using what they have than the average human, who spends his life in a kind of sleepwalk of half-attentions. Survival in the wilderness depends on well-tuned senses with which to find food, avoid predators or other hazards, and those whose nose are as sensitive as the red wolf find themselves hunted for their game pelts.

## All In the Mind

### Thought and Instinct

And conscious thought. To say that animals "think" like us does a disservice to the creatures. In *Lemnia of Avalon*, I have endowed creatures with the smarts they need under certain circumstances. Because we can only guess what goes on in the mind of a non-human, how creatures think has been a controversial subject for a very long time.

Animals seem to think in terms of "if, then, choose, do, let path, the floor will hurt my feet, hurt is in the room, can't get food, it's time to eat." Making the leaps of understanding that connect "if" to "then" is the basis of learning. For example, the alga that happens to be in a part of the bay when the attack comes to dump codies—if it makes the connection between a truck and food will swim towards the source of the engine, expecting a meal. A sea bird that notices a dropped shell cracks against a rock will seek out large rocks to break open mussel shells in its future assault on the food that is on every rock.

At the lower levels of the animal hierarchy, instinct is the basis for most behavior, but as one moves up the evolutionary ladder, so to speak, there is more and more individuality. A hawk will hunt for a single farm but any two bears will react differently to a situation based on a combination of instinct, experience and individual personality. Higher-level animals can more readily adapt to new circumstances. The advantage of novelty. Suburban or park deer grow quite complacent when there's nothing to fear until they can hardly be bothered to move out of the way of a car. In the countryside they tend to be much more watchful for slow-moving vehicles or people on foot, even from hundreds of yards away.

Yet even in "higher mammals" we see "hardwired" reactions, instinctive behaviors that are overcome with difficulty, if at all. Some are benign, like the dog that scratches the floor and turns in circles before lying down. Others are more dangerous: even a zoo-born, well-fed cougar will leap up and rush towards a child running along the other side of the fence. Some animals, particularly those usually considered prey species, have strong "fight or flight" reactions; if held restrained and subjected to prolonged handling or even proximity to humans their systems are overcome by the stress, resulting in death at the scene or within a few days of recapture, even if they weren't physically harmed while captured.

### Now and Then

Most animals live in the "now," their attention is focused in this place at this moment. A wolf different from the average human whose mind is on yesterday's argument, tonight's dinner or any number of entertaining or philosophical distractions. That's not to say animals have no past or future. Usually, the past is a vague place where associations spring up at need. For instance, a puppy raised by a tall blonde woman may grow up to be a friendly dog that snags at tall blonde women. A coyote nearly caught by a trap baited with fish may avoid anything with a fishy smell.

The future is a much more abstract concept. In the case of a fish, it covers a lot of ground, from now to readying a nest when the time for egg laying approaches, or swimming from the sea to a mountain stream to spawn. But the specifics may allow for some thought on the part of the individual. For example, some birds plan to visit a certain nesting site, but if a predator is nearby, they don't yet exist. Even bees can compensate for a moving food source by heading towards the expected new location rather than the last known location.

And just as they make intuitive connections between an action and a positive effect, they can also discern negative repercussions, provided the effect happens soon enough after the cause. When a bird becomes

ill after eating a bad-tasting butterfly, it will avoid similar butterflies in the future. The longer the time between cause and effect the more tenuous the connection in the mind. If a wolf experiences a painful electric shock when it bites a sheep, it connects sheep with pain and may avoid them for a while. If the wolf bites a sheep and three days later a party of hunter-hunters appear to harm it, the wolf will see no connection between the cause (stock killing) and effect (men with guns).

#### Predator and Play

When you look at an animal, you can usually tell the predators from the prey. Prey species such as turkeys, rabbits and deer tend to have eyes and ears placed for a wide angle of view — often better than 270 degrees around — to watch for danger. Predators, foxes, cats, hawks and of course wolves, look more forward to focus on the hunted. Predator brains tend to be larger (it takes more brainpower to outwit a deer than a patch of grass). To human eyes, these hunters are often more “clever,” and more likely to try new approaches to achieve a goal (said goal usually being a snack).

Though they don't hold a monopoly on extracting information, predators have more of a propensity for play. Even as adults they toss bones, sneak up on their fellows and play tag. Otters are among the most accomplished players around, but coyotes and ravens have a well-deserved reputation for fooling around with others without regard to species. Like humans, these creatures seem to need to work their minds and bodies in “recreational” activities. Without novel stimuli to occupy their single-minded brains, captive animals grow increasingly neurotic, resorting to stereotypic movements such as endless pacing or head-tossing, biting the bars or even self-mutilation. This is why many zoos have expanded and “naturalized” animal habitats, as we will see. And so animals may forage rather than simply eating.

#### From Heath to Hearth

Another distinction that should be made is the difference between a wild and a domestic animal. When humans domesticate a species, they selectively breed them to accentuate the desirable traits and diminish or eliminate the undesirable ones. That's why a dairy cow produces far more milk than necessary to raise a calf, while at the same time being docile enough to handle, seeing as any aggressive or protective tendencies were bred out. The upshot is that the creatures in human keeping are often quite unlike their wild relations. The wild turkey is a canny wily bird, while the white domestic turkey is stupid with a capital S.

The same is true with dogs and their wild wolf cousins: both are mentally very alike, yet with key differences. For example, as a rule dogs have been bred to retain certain juvenile traits in adulthood. Friend-

acceptance of other humans (dogs often seeing humans as packmates), social tolerance, willingness to be open to others for the first few weeks of life but after this period of socialization they form deep emotional attachments with difficulty. A related juvenile characteristic is the surtness and eagerness to please that many dogs express even to friendly strangers. People that raise wolves find they must remain ever vigilant lest their charges “challenge” their leadership.

#### Communication

Most unpleasant encounters between human and beast are the result of misunderstanding and miscommunication on both sides. Through color changes, posture and other subtle visual cues, animals communicate the most basic needs and even intentions. People are notoriously lousy at seeing and interpreting the body language of other species, and often said species are no better at understanding us. Two hawks fight those who try to save them, why? Other wise-friendly dogs snarl at attackers and why? It's the people who wish to treat them like friendly cattle.

That's not to say that animals can't read other species' non-verbal languages, only that the interpretation isn't a sure thing. A gazelle uses a lion's body cues to distinguish between a hungry hunter and a recently fed hunter, yet assumes a safari hunter is dangerous because it can't read the human's intent in his movements.

#### In Your Game

We aren't suggesting that you dive into behavior textbooks and scientific journals to plan out each animal's potential reactions (though you're certainly welcome to do so). But it's helpful to have a general idea about how a creature will interact with the Garou.

#### Here are a few (in text wasteful) points to consider: General Temperament

Take your cues from the animal's behavior of an animal. A highly socialized black Labrador puppy that wags its tail at passersby will be more likely to be friendly than a misreared, isolated, unloved puppy will. Unfortunately, more species domesticated animals as a rule will tend to be a little more docile and not as mentally swift as their wilder cousins are (that doesn't mean you should try to pet a fighting bull or outsmart a horse, come on). Domestic animals raised by humans tend to desire to be near people, whereas wild animals and dogs can be just as fearful of humans as any wild beast.

#### Reactions to Garou

Garou are powerful predators who rarely radiate temperamental rage. Prey species, including rabbits, deer and even horses, will likely form a poor first impression of a pack of wolves, no matter how big the latter are. They will see Garou as competition rather than as a threat.

connect it to the creatures that would kill them for food. Large, rough beasts such as bull elk, phanias or grizzly bears might be less inclined to run than a rabbit, may take a beligerent stance. On the other hand, a blue whale probably feels the particular threat at a distance.

Besides reactions to the Garou-ness of a character, there may be behavioral differences based on the character's form. The dog that is more inclined to be friendly to a human will probably bristle at a wolf, a young wolf might have the opposite reaction.

### What's in It for Me?

Animal altruism (assuming it exists — another controversial topic among ethologists, doesn't it?) is outside a species. As our fables aside, you aren't going to find a mouse helping a lion. Even the amazing Mr. Canli Inevitable, which leads humans to beehives expecting a share of the spoils if it doesn't get rewarded, eventually stops bothering. There needs to be some tangible, (or at least perceivable) reward for any action taken on a character's behalf. Usually this involves food, but depending on the animal and the pack's ability to communicate with it, more complex or abstract arrangements may be made.

### Me Hear Good Talker

Animal communication has always been tricky in Werewolf games. Lupus conversation has often been reduced to "Me hear wonders elk bark." Not that those reactions are always inappropriate, but understanding that something is lost in the translation. Imagine trying to be eloquent in a language you speak imperfectly at best; you'll sound childish or stupid, if you get your point across at all, and the listeners will either patronize or ridicule you regardless.

Instead of using badly-constructed sentences when communicating using a Gift, have the animal speak

fluently, but in terms appropriate to its own natural wit. A hawk would describe everything in terms of visual aspects as opposed to sound; it would also be minutely aware of local weather conditions. Though Garou have keen senses, a fox's word revolves around scent and its natural curiosity (a common trait in raptors) makes it more aware of anything out of the ordinary human-caused or otherwise. Include concepts within the animal's experience, but make sure anything alien the players know or confuse it. For instance, the reveal is "not enough with day" but "Tuesday with thing a be."

Callian uses the Gift Beast Speech to ask the local fauna whether some tainted hikers came through the woods recently. He asks a sparrow the response will be something like *Fried Light Web*. The previously mentioned hawk may have more details since the hikers sent a rabbit running right into the raptor's talons. The

fox knows where they went because he followed their trail a while, hoping they would drop some scraps.

### Training

It's not unusual for Garou or Kinfolk to keep animals as guards and/or companions, and such critters are usually trained in some capacity — except for the deepest of deep wilderness caerns, even upus Kinfolk need to be taught where they can't go and what they can't eat. As mentioned previously, animals think in terms of "if-then." If making the leaps of understanding that connect "if" to "then" is the basis of learning, then the training and encouraging the connection is the key to training. Training an animal is easier when you can speak the language (whether by speaking the wolf tongue or using a Gift). If you doubt it, imagine learning a task by being told versus learning a task by being told by a mime. If that sort of direct communication isn't possible, then training takes some skill and a lot of patience. Smart animals learn faster but may also be prone to act up. Remember that animals learn quickest the tricks that mimic natural behaviors. For example, teaching the dog to fetch is relatively easy since fetching things in their mouths comes naturally to them. Teaching a rescue dog, drug sniffer or shepherd involves normal hunting behaviors and narrowing the focus. Teaching a dog to appear cute will probably just frustrate you and annoy the dog.

To sum up: animals are brighter than we often give them credit for, but their perception, intelligence and subsequent behavior is not like a human's. Putting some thought into your animals (and maybe some basic research) is recommended to make them come alive (or to speak) in your game. With the proper personality and reaction, critters can be an important and memorable part of any scenario.

## Getting into the Spirit

Travel through the Umbra means entering a world of spirits. The dual nature of the Garou — part human or wolf and part spirit — makes the spirit world a second home for Garou's chosen warriors. Depicting Umbra pathways and landscapes involves detailing a component that sometimes differs radically from the "real world." The creatures that inhabit the Umbra likewise possess qualities that separate them from the beings that dwell in the physical world.

As a Storyteller, you need to make your players realize that whenever they enter the Umbra, they not only enter a different world, they have the ability to interact with the spirits that dwell there. Spirits represent a very important part of Garou life. Garou learn Gifts from spirits, gain help from friendly spirits, battle hostile ones and sure, both kinds can be foibles once in a while.



... virtues. They can't afford to say the wrong thing, or offer Owl a tiny disrespects.

### *Plant Spirits*

... vault of roses ... the ... the ... and spins ... from bloody crimson ... single rose, larger than the rest ... enter ... the rose-barrow ...

Plant spirits sprout from the earth, their nature rarely manifesting. The spirit of a rose represents essence of what a rose is—occasionally, danger. ... generally do not spend time ... preferring to seek guidance from and companionship with more volatile spirits that understand their own anger and patience, the occasion might arise in which a ... confront the spirit of a plant. Plant spirits are generally better inclined toward shapeshifters with ... Rage than they are toward ... but ... it's not like this type ... for from the end-water. As a Storm ... otherwise be a lack ...

... will veer all in into a remarkable meeting.

Books on plants, herbal healing and collections ... bound in historical and mythical footnotes on the properties of plants. These can prove helpful in bringing your plant-spirits out of dormancy into activity and imbuing them with unique and surprising ...

... of power and desolation ... spread in her supp ... her thorny arms. Though she possesses nothing ... thoughts and motivations. Her petals unfold ...

... symbolize romance and passion, but they ... Sleeping ... versions of the story call the dormant princess Briar Rose. The spirit of Rose should offer Garou ... the promise of deep emotions but also a subtle threat and an obvious challenge. Use words in your description of Rose that evoke power, mystery and longing. Your Garou will never view mundane in the same fashion again.

### *Abstract Beings and Inanimate Objects*

... a rages in the Labyrinth. Bolts of black and ... he evoked around the void of Black Fery ... and shakes with each impact and the



very air that surrounds the Garou surges with hostility. A jagged form solidifies from a stard of lightning. Anger hangs in the air, questioning why you have intruded into his territory.

Though plant and animal spirits may challenge a Storyteller's talent at portraying characters, abstract concepts and inanimate objects pose a different problem. How do you describe an emotion or an abstract idea? How do you bring "life" to a rock? Spend a few moments thinking about what feelings and attitudes you associate with certain words. What symbols or objects do you associate with pain or sorrow or anger? What feelings arise when you think of rocks, clouds, or thunder? Use these words and ideas to construct a personality for your abstract or inanimate object.

The Garou draw back from one another, as hostility surrounds them. Past fights and present grudges hover on the edges of consciousness. The spirit of Anger rises to its full height, its voice hot and searing, scratching its message in the souls of its participants.

Ideas and objects do not have the same spectrum of emotions and responses that humans (or even animals) do. Don't be afraid to experiment with substituting sound and feelings for nouns and words. Create a picture your players will remember as long as their characters do.

### *Mythic Spirits*

Unicorn steps into the glade, his hooves striking sparks as they touch the ground. Innocence covers the great beast like a blanket, but there is nothing gentle about the creature's words. The cat-headed archer acknowledges its existence, but that gesture only serves to emphasize the brutally keener tip of Unicorn's horn. Raising its head, Unicorn holds court, warning of judgment over your pack.

Unicorns will imagine the story of your pack should never be less than epic. When your hunter the Umbra tries to meet with a spirit, whether to petition for aid or to learn a craft, they leave behind the work of the everyday and enter into a place of myth and archetype. Storytellers need to make it clear to their players (and their characters) that they have not only "stepped sideways" into the world of possibilities and potential, but they have also stepped outside the boundaries of reality and into a whole other place. Unicorns are not sweet, gentle creatures of faith and wide-eyed innocence. They do represent the absence of guilt, but they also symbolize total animosity and ferocious freedom. Garou encountering Unicorn should wonder if the legendary custom of using virgins to lure them into captivity is not imprinted in the idea of human sacrifice. Whether the virgin actually survived her encounter.

At first glance, Unicorn appears composed of shining white light. A longer look—and such a gaze brings pain to

your eyes—reveals other hues: cerulean blue, violet, purple, hazy grey and sparkling silver. Unicorn shakes its head and from it long, flowing mane thousands of tiny sparks of light stream into the air, crackling with energy and moving as they surround the pack. One small beam touches the pack leader's cheek and burns—a cleansing fire that scours some small pettiness from the leader's essence.

Trusting that the spirit is not hostile, the pack's spirits. When dealing with fantastic creatures such as wendigos, dragons or chimerae, emphasize not only the sight of the creature but also the aura of power that surrounds it. Use sound and color and even heighten the atmosphere of wonder. Even before your spirit has uttered its first word, the characters should be wondering if they haven't made some horrible mistake in coming into the spirit's presence. If you can create this feeling in your players, then you have succeeded in portraying a legendary spirit.

Now that you have some ideas for setting the stage and placing your actor, the spirit, in the spotlight, you need to put words into your spirit's mouth. Here's how to do just that.

### *Talk This Way*

Spirits have a different way of speaking than mortals. They do not have the same concerns and emotions as mortals. Even Garou have ideas made concrete in embodiments of certain ideas, so they have a different way of thinking and a way of speaking that humans and animals do not have. Spirits are both more and less free than humans or animals. For a free spirit, there are no rules. They do not have the same practical hang-ups or social concerns that mortals have. On the other hand, they exist for a specific purpose, and that creates restrictions on what they may say or do.

Communication tipsies more than just the words a spirit uses; it also includes the context (or lack thereof) of the spirit's experiences. A Storyteller can demonstrate all this through language.

### *Spirit Language*

Owl arches its wings and turns its eyes on the pack's leader.

#### *Speak*

A single word, both greeting and warning, echoes in your ears. The young Ahmum begins speaking, but his rare father, Hegrou, words Owl ruffles its feathers. "Enough. Too many words. Start over." The pack leader takes a deep breath and begins again, choosing his words more carefully this time.

Spirits do not speak as humans do. How they use words and how they put words together, what they talk about, how patient or impatient they are is dependent on their nature. Animal spirits such as Owl or Unicorn talk the same cadence as their animal

elves. Owl's language should use short words, possibly with soft "s" sounds to imitate the owl's elusive cry. Lion, on the other hand, uses hisst guttural words that echo the animal's roar or growl. When speaking Turtle, the Storyteller should keep in mind the creature's reputation for slowness, drawing out words and thoughts to match Turtle's plodding methodical pace.

*From deep within her crimson center, Rose's voice caresses the breeze, carried to your ears in soundwave frenched in a heady sweetness.*

"Touch not the sharpness," Rose cautions. "Linger only long enough to take one perfect petal. Renew your body. Leave softly."

Softly, the wounded Ragabash reaches out and takes a petal from Rose's outer layer. A healing softness fills the warmth with the scent of well-being. She hesitates for a moment, then catches sight of Rose's thorns and thinks better of overstaying her welcome.

Plant spirits have fewer references than humans or even animals. They possess the ability to communicate

with a small edge of vocabulary necessary for communication. They do not often use words that speak of human emotions. Plants know about growth and dormancy. They feel the sun, wind and rain and know the words attached to those forces of nature. They serve as homes and food for insects and birds. They have some earwedge of ideas as well. They do not, however, understand words are good and evil. They know the Wyrm, but perhaps think of the Destroyer in their own terms, calling it the Desiccator, the Great Dryness or the Scorching Flame.

Gaea may have to pull out the meaning behind the sometimes cryptic comments of plant spirits, but this should provide the Storyteller with the opportunity to challenge her players in a way that does not involve combat or the upmanship. Think about the kind of plant the Gaea encounters. An oak tree speaks very differently from a daisy. The tree's words fall heavily in the ears of its listeners, while the daisy's voice should sound as soft and inebriate as if blowing in a breeze. Choose your words and voice to match.

"Why stand you here?" Anger rashed out, its voice clashing like many matched vibals in the roaring wind. "Tell me, or begone!" Its shriek pierced the sensitive ears of the Garou, causing the Gaiward to howl a challenge.

Done cried Anger. Fight and gain your horn or flee and know shame.

The spirit took shape as a rugged wife made of darkness and lightning. The challenge for the night air from the anger spirit had begun.

Abstractions have an even more difficult time than plants. Storytellers should attempt to convey this

inner strangeness to the players through more than just language. Tone of voice plays an important role in describing spirits that correspond to emotions. Anger should speak with harshness and volume. Sorrow should sob its words, while Desire should attempt verbal seduction through soft speech and a suggestive vocabulary. Don't be afraid to experiment, though you might want to practice your spirit speech before trying it during a game session, just to be safe.

Inanimate objects present a similar challenge to Storytellers. How does a rock "talk"? Think of words that are heavy (pun intended) with concussive sounds. Let your voice boom out, but slow down your speech that it takes an apoplectic quality. Rocks have no sense of transience. If your players grow impatient, remind them that their characters are probably just as impatient with Rock, but that the consequences of angering a spirit make showing their frustration unwise.

Incarnate walked forward until he stood before the trembling Child of Gaea. "Banish uncertainty from your heart, young one," the great creature said, its voice bypassing the Garou's ears and settling with warmth within her heart. "You have enough wisdom and honesty for something to save your dying world. You have not always made the best choices but you have acted in accordance with your heart, and so you have done well. I will grant you the favor

Mythic creatures should be mythic. The beasts from legends usually possess great intelligence and extraordinary wisdom. They come from a time before time, an age that did not know the meaning of slang or contractions or idiomatic speech. Don't tell your mythic spirits short by using popular speech or psychobabble. Recall some of the classic fairy tales from various cultures to get an idea of the words to use and the cadence of your speech. Your players will appreciate the time you take to make a meeting between the characters and Unicorn — or Pegasus or Dragon or Griffin — unforgettable.

## Thought Patterns

Remember that spirits aren't the same thing as people or animals. The spirit world is full of symbolism and things are "ruer" to their nature than their physical counterparts are. In short, a spirit doesn't think like a person; it is even the spirit of wholly human concepts like art or romantic love.

One of the most important aspects of spirit nature is that spirits don't really have free will, at least not to the extent that humans and Garou enjoy. They are bound by their very nature in ways that a Western person might find alarming. A fire-spirit will never volunteer to go for a swim, no matter how convincingly a Theurge

argues that no harm will come to it. An oak spirit cannot argue for bending in the wind, just as the tip of a blade of grass cannot decide to stand fast and unbowed. This is a very important aspect of an animistic world; sometimes things are the way they are not because science has yet to contradict them, but simply because that's the way they *are*. It may seem like a simplistic way out, but if you allow a spirit to go against a force of nature, a host of painful, Herculean struggle you lose the power of symbolism that makes the spirit world so important in the first place.

Of course, there are always exceptions—sort of. For example, the more powerful the spirit, the more leeway it has to interpret its role and duties. A shark *can* resist an offering of bloody meat, but the Incarnate of Shark himself might go so long enough to question the person making the offering, or to strike a compromise deal involving the trade of meat for favors. This is partly because Incarnates and Celestines represent a variety of concepts within themselves. Great Fenrir is anger, and haste, lust, and a harbinger of Apocalypse and an aspect of Wolf, and strength and so on. Great Pegasus stands for a number of important things, of which the protection of Wyman and the defense of the Wyld are just two. With these added aspects comes flexibility, and with an Incarnate's wisdom and willpower comes the power to choose its own path—so long as that path serves its ultimate nature, that is. Even the Wyrm cannot choose to build rather than destroy.

Also, it's evident that spirits can change their Tropic affiliation; that's where so many Banes come from after all. However, this change usually brought on by outside entities; a spirit becomes a Bane because it's caught and infused with Wym-energy, or because its physical counterpart is destroyed or corrupted, and so on. Theoretically, only the greatest spirits can "choose" to change their affiliation—and there aren't really any prior to that.

When portraying a spirit, always keep its motivation in mind. That's why, the straightforward symbolic nature of spirit though makes it fairly easy to figure out just where a spirit's coming from, what it might want from a pack, and how it might propose to achieve its goals. Even up the spirit with a few quirks as needed, but really, you don't have to worry about making it as complicated a persona as an actual person.

In fact, a too-complicated mindset in anything other than a spirit of intrigue or deceit might actually detract from your portrayal. Players expect Bluejay to be chatty and Wallowing to be grouchy and so on—use this to your advantage. It's less work and more effective at the same time; what could be better?

Unless, of course, you're dealing with ancestor spirits—but those are something else entirely.

### *And Finally...*

While there are no hard and fast rules for roleplaying spirit encounters, the following guidelines should help you bring your Unbral residents to life and make your players take them seriously as the wondrous beings they are.

• **Use Slang Wisely** When portraying spirits of great age and reverence, use speech that is a little more formal than everyday conversation. Don't use contractions or idioms. Spirits don't usually say "Cool" or "All good." Exceptions do exist, however, and spirits might very well pad their speech with the latest slang. The Spirit of the 1960's would pepper her sentence with terms like "far out" and "groovy." Weaver spirits might use techno-speak. A Bane's offbeat knowledge over suburban trashiness might sound like a suburban teenager himself. Language is symbolic of the spirit's nature, and slang implies modernity—word may or may not suit your purposes. Just remember that most spirits don't say "don't."

• **Use Visual Language** Words not only communicate ideas, they paint pictures. Use language that creates images in the minds of your players. Plan spirits use words that have to do with forces of nature and with the cycles of dormancy, budding, blossoming, and bearing fruit. Anima spirits speak of beauty, of fleeing, of mating and challenge. Abstract words that connote the emotions or ideas they represent. Rocks use words that fall to the ground, or sit heavily on the tongue.

• **Get into Your Role** Bring body language into play by sitting into your role. Turn your head from side to side and try not to blink when portraying Owl. Sway back and forth like a willow tree in the wind when speaking as a plant spirit. Pace grandly about the room when you speak as Unicorn. You can even wear a cardigan sweater or wrap a scarf loosely around your neck when you take on the role of Turtle so that you can imitate the motion of a turtle with the twisting of its shell in times of stress or between winds. Your extra effort draws your players into the mood and increases their suspension of disbelief.

• **Don't Be Afraid to Set the Scene**—Take a few minutes to place your characters in the proper context. Describe the surroundings in which the encounter takes place. Use words that create a landscape appropriate to your spirit. Once you've done that, your players should be ready to listen to what your spirits have to say.



# Chapter Three: The Chronicle

"If we ever meet again, Hazelrah and Daniel, as  
as he took a river in the night, we ought to have the  
makings of the best supper."

Reverend George A. ... s, *Watership Down*

## Beginning

Werewolf does not have an easy pre-determined focus. Chronicles—or even series within chronicles—run the gamut from high drama, world-shaking post-apocalyptic young werewolves exorcising their darkest “defenses” or dealing with their human lives. Tribal politics, the U.S.—the Red Star, the other Changing Breeds—even in the core book where the Storyteller is presented with a daunting amount of information. It can be quite a chore to remember how characters remain constant and what form they can seek what kinds of change. It is nothing of how the tribes arrange leadership and how they all relate to one another.

A werewolf's strength lies in the ability to adapt. A player can have any type of character and be able to play a chronicle to suit them. High drama or “realism”, bloody combat or spiritual

players will enjoy most.

But where to begin?

## Character Creation

“So, where’s this ... going to be set?” asks Brian ...  
“It’s ...” ...  
“are you ...” ...  
“at the basement, parking through ...”

group confers for a moment and decides that since it and Julie are new to role-playing in general, the format is similar with ...  
chronicle makes the most sense.

“Like, do you turn into a wolf on the full moon?” Julie asks.

“Well, yes. Not necessarily, but ...  
basics and then some guys can make ...  
though,” he says, pulling ...  
his game set.”

...

A role player ... es to ... with the characters ...  
... the first ...

the first) steps along the way. The best way to arrange character generation (often termed *character creation*) is to get all of the players together to create characters at the same time. This is especially true for *Werewolf*, as the pack as a whole should receive the same attention as the individual characters.

### *Restrictions*

If some (or all) of the players are unfamiliar with *Werewolf*, it is no biggie; this is good time to explain it. You'll want to let the players know where the game is set, or, as in the example above, let them help you decide) and what, if any, restrictions on character creation you

are imposing. For example, if you've decided that your game is going to center around an urban caern controlled primarily by Class Walkers, you might well wish to restrict Red Tawn characters.

Be careful, though, when assigning such restrictions. Sometimes a player will come up with a concept that while seemingly disrupting things, actually *specifies* an interesting plot possibility. When imposing restrictions, keep in mind why you're doing it. For instance, in the example above, the Storyteller restricts Red Tawns because the caern is urban. Red Tawns feel decidedly uncomfortable in urban settings, so the choice seems logical. However, there isn't any plot given +

### *Merits and Flaws*

Storytelling tool or twank-butt? Useless crutch or valuable resource? Both, really.

Merits and Flaws are meant as optional rules designed to open up possibilities to characters. They provide a way to quantify the subtle qualities that characters tend to have. After all, if your character is going to be a snarker (for example), which is to be expected of a werewolf, even for a werewolf, what's wrong with getting an extra freebie point for it?

Well, nothing. The problem comes when players take Flaws like Phobia (sharks) or a landlocked werewolf or take obsessions or compulsions they have no intention of playing. Of particular worry are Flaws like Driving Gears; it's a potential plot-wrecker if roleplayed correctly and it isn't worth the three points you get for it if it's not. Also, some extremely melodramatic players enjoy psychological flaws like Deranged or Vengeful, because they wish to eat up time in the spotlight or, worse yet, these are the same sorts of players who enjoy playing Feral because they feel it makes them "special."

And, on the other side of the coin, some of the Merits are horribly unbalanced. Immune to Wyrm Finagles or Suffer Tilt? The Traits show a tendency to ignore (or at least can brush the hurt off) some of their greatest weaknesses. Surely any right-thinking player, eager to preserve the integrity of the system, would ask how these Merits are measured and probably just chuck the rest of the Merits and Flaws system for good measure.

The catch, though, is that there really isn't any such thing as "the integrity of the game." There's only your game, and you're perfectly welcome to pitch the system if necessary. Merits and Flaws are optional, and that means if the Storyteller says "No," then the players don't get to take them. End of story.

With all that said, though, there are some good reasons to allow them. These reasons are

under the assumption that a) they will be played as intended, not used as point-dodges, and b) the Storyteller knows what she's getting into.

Merits and Flaws can provide concrete reminders and consequences of a character's history. The character's line was cursed generations ago? Maybe the Pierced Veil Flaw is the lingering reminder. The character carried a berserk frenzy during his First Change and only knows that he came to cover his blood? Perhaps the character is now Hunted, or Hunted-2. This works with Merits, too. A character known to be preternaturally lucky (via the Charmed Existence or Luck Merits) will very likely acquire a reputation (and probably has some little rituals involving a rabbit's foot or something similar) that do their best to alter her fortune. A player who comes up blank on a character's history might find an enigmatic back-story waiting in one Merit or Flaw.

In much the same vein, the Storyteller can use such Traits as springboards for entire stories. If a character has the Flaw Enemy, does that enemy reserve her venom for just that character, or is she an entire pack? What if the enemy is a member of one of the other packmates — or one of their mentors? What if the enemy doesn't consider the enemy to be anything at all, but a long-forgotten friend? These are the sorts of things that

The astute reader might well point out that any of these ideas would work just fine without imposing point costs or bonuses. This is quite true. But in the end, what do three or four more freebie points really amount to, especially if the trade-off is an original idea that the player might not have otherwise considered? Again, as long as the story and not the points (or the "kewl powerz") are the focus, there's really no reason not to allow Merits and Flaws.

son why a player couldn't play a Red Talon, so if a player comes up with an evocative reason for the character being at the caern, why not allow it? Maybe the Red Talon was born in a den and decided to return to the city after her Rite of Passage. Perhaps the Talon is in disgrace from her tribe and is sent to join an urban pack as punishment (what would that do to the pack dynamics?).

The aim is to avoid squelching a good idea or concept, of course, but simply to keep the game on the level that you want it. If a player really had her heart set on playing a Red Talon, and you decide that Talons, for whatever reason, really aren't welcome at this caern, ask if perhaps the same basic concept wouldn't work for a lupus-breed werewolf of another tribe.

You might choose to place other requirements on the group. For example, you might wish to require that each of the auspices be represented in the pack (which requires at least five players). This is rarely a problem; most players would rather play something different than the others anyway. If you plan to much of the first story to take place in a nearby city, but if the characters (humans especially) are native to the city. If so, you might choose to give those characters a few free dots of Area Knowledge (or require the players to purchase those dots).

### *Problem Players*

Character creation is when you get to know the players, if you don't already. You'll get a glimpse at what you can expect during the chronicle, for better or worse. Pay attention to players' decisions at this stage; it will help you decide what kind of game the players will enjoy.

Every group has its problems, and charge is a good time to identify and address them. The story hasn't started yet, so you can nip things in the bud and you can identify behaviors that may prove damaging later. Some of these include:

- **Better late than never:** Punctuality isn't an issue for everyone; a few are and everyone's all right with it until the wee hours of the morning. That's rarely the case, however. If you find that a player is late for the character creation session—especially without reason—ask if it is going to be a recurring problem. It may seem nitpicky, but repeatedly being a chronically late person can seriously derail things down the line, forcing the group to either wait or have the Storyteller play the errant player's character.

- **The man without a face:** Some players, be it because they are new to gaming or because they just can't think of a strong concept at the books table for them. They read the tribe description and come up with concepts like "African warrior" or "Ragabush it closer." This is all right for a base, but if the character is going to

be more than a caricature, she needs some life and detail. The "Preludes" section below gives some ideas on how to coax such things out of recalcitrant players, but watch for ideas that seem randomly assumed. If a human character has 3 Brawl, ask why. After all, that's enough to indicate that the character could fight professionally; very few people are that skilled. Clinging to one question towards a deal over it of "What's your background?" is not going to justify.

- **The mathematician:** It happens sometimes that players forget that Werewolf is a Storytelling game, not a video game. You've barely finished saying that the chronicle will be set at a caern of healing, and how Dove is the caern's item when you get a sheer handed back to you with ratings of 5 in Brawl, Melee, Fire, and Karaoke. Some players equate "success" with "kills," and with that formula in mind, it's perfectly natural to arrange their characters as combat monsters. The trick here is to change the player's focus, not to letue him for being a "twink." Let him know that success is measured by everybody having a good time and by telling a good story. The "good story" part of that requires three-dimensional characters. It's quite all right to play a warrior—the Carou culture is big and violent, after all—but a warrior with some of Sam's traits if the character starts out ready to offend the capnules, how will he develop? If you doesn't prevail here, you might well be dealing with a true twink and explosion via catapult is recommended.

- **The Unique Freak:** No Canum is "typical." Twelve is a distinct possibility, and no player should ever Storytell or allow them to outnumber the pups within tribes, five auspices, later breeds—the combinations are endless. But some players feel that the only way to have a truly "special" character is by playing something truly removed from the group. Other Fera are popular choices for this, as are Aberrations and members of the Lost Tribes. Playing other Fera in Werewolf games is discussed elsewhere (page 187) and has it's possibilities. As for the other foolishness, the best bet is to ask why the player wants to play something like that—the answer is something like "Because it would be cool," then remind the player about the myriad possibilities afforded by the combinations of characteristics listed above. If she's really having trouble finding anything new there, choose her breed, tribe, and auspice randomly and see what the combination suggests.

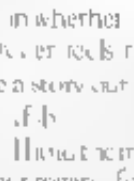
### *Totems*

One of the first decisions the troupe will make as a group is what totem the pack follows. The Storyteller can handle this decision in a number of ways, depending on the type of chronicle she wants to buy.

before the game actually starts. The players total and compare ratings and decide what totem best represents them and their characters, and decide how to spend any Totem points beyond the totem's base cost. The advantage to this method is that it gives the players a chance to discuss their characters and their goals, which in turn gives you as Storyteller a clue as to what to look for in the game. It also helps you to make the game more interesting by allowing the players to choose the "best" or "greatest" bonuses for each set. But don't worry about what it may mean in the long run to serve Charon if it's a good idea to use it. It's a good idea to use it at the start of the game.

Another method is to let the players choose a "quest" to play. This really involves a request of some kind, perhaps an invitation to do something for the group. If he does it, he gets a reward. If he doesn't, he gets a punishment. These totems, if you like, are a promising young pack to represent them, present tasks or challenges.

Whether or not it  
 does depends in whether  
 if the Storyteller feels the  
 need to make a story out of the  
 game chance itself.



the players. I think that pack system  
 is much more regular for they worked  
 to earn it. Regardless of how much  
 if it is a story, it is a story.

the pack finally reveals their totem  
 the "in-play" method is advanta-  
 geous because it allows the players a  
 look at the spiritual nature of

The only disadvantage of this method of recruitment is that it can be time-consuming. A troupe that meets only once a month might wish to skip this preliminary step and get on to the meat of the choreography.

Finally, the Storyteller can choose the extent to which he based the story on the actual events. The characters have among them the Storyteller find what the best fit for a story of the world. The Storyteller has the freedom to determine the role of the pack and establish plot hooks based on the world. It is method is frank.

more true to the legends and traditions than  
is the present legend.

1.  $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$

that it removes an important decision from the player's hands, which some players will find frustrating, as

Any attempt to shift the focus of the book to "The Book of Numbers" is a mistake. The author's intention is to work with the players to discover why the book is shunned or ignored by spirits. Perhaps the author's book is a book to be read, not a book to be read.

## Preface

For the first time, the two authors have written a book, and Sharvett's main character's first change is discussed to some degree on pages 10.

04 of Werewolf This

Ideas on how to run pre-audits for maximum effect and some alternative ways of running them.

Petries, as the main textbook suggests, should be sold along with the Storytel...



a separate room. This is the player's time to decide and roleplay the character's "formative moments" of her yearning for life and the less distraction involved, the better. What happens during a werewolf's First Change should shape that character's outlook fairly seriously. For example, a character that charges in response to an attempted kidnapping or rape is likely to wind up as a heretic. This may be in the character's view that she is some sort of avenger, but it is just as easily might wreck the character with guilt. However, if the character's First Change is in response to something less violent, simply being out under her auspice's moon and changing to run, the character is likely much less stressed about it. She may still feel that it is something to hide, but may learn to control it (since her shapeshifting does not seem to her to be attached to uncontrollable rage) before other Garou find it.

Preludes should also take a character's Background into consideration. The prelude should give the player a hint as to how difficult it will be to maintain Backgrounds such as Resources and Allies over the course of the chronicle. Perhaps the curse results in a character losing her job (reflected by that character not having any dots in Resources) or a friend of the character sees her change and loses her mind to the Dream. At the same time, a character with the Ancestress Background should have dreams and whispers as her spiritual guides try to assist her (which may have the effect of pushing her to the brink of sanity). A character likely won't have a fetish during the prelude (unless it is some sort of formative heirloom that she's also owned. If that's the case, what happens if she sets it off by accident?)

Metis and lupus characters require different approaches to their preludes. A lupus werewolf's attitude towards humans is a very important consideration, as the majority of Garou she will meet will be human-born. Did she grow up in captivity, loved and warm, loved by human keepers? Or did she skulk around a farming community, her territory shrinking every year, living in fear of being shot? The prelude should also serve as a chance to practice roleplaying the lupus mindset. Wolves don't think the same way that humans do, and it was a wolf that successfully being able to think in concepts rather than images should be key to roleplaying the character. As the lupus learns about humans, she'll discover that her instincts can be used against her, and she needs to ignore them sometimes. This revelation should reassure as any that a human werewolf endures

have been part of werewolf society since birth, and are arguably better equipped to deal with the sudden transition into "active members" of that society than human and lupus Garou. However,

the stigma attached to their birth should loom for every aspect of their upbringing. Imagine being a metis. Phobos, and being told that your auspice is responsible for your actions, many of which you are a walking violation. A metis will likely know the pack's home secret better than any of the other characters (as she very likely grew up there) and should know the other members' names, by name and by nature. The prelude is a good time for the metis to "expose" these characters and discover how they feel about her.

Diverting the preludes in many sessions is one (and probably the best) option, but what if the group is pressed for time? The Storyteller may choose to simply give each player a list of questions (email works quite well for this). The questions should be similar to the ones found on page 104 of *Werewolf* and should be tailored to each character. Ask a metis Background names, Allies and Contacts, where the character got the Fetish, any illustrious Ancestors. If the Storyteller allows Metis and Flores, twice should receive attention here, too (see the sidebar).

Another possibility for preludes is a game called "hot seat." This involves each player taking turns sitting in the center of the room and letting the other players ask questions, which the player then answers in character (or at least about the character, as perfectly

during this game). The advantage of hot seat is that the players will likely think of some good questions that the Storyteller does not. Also, for a player asks about a character, even if the character flavor fiction exists, the other players will think about it even if they aren't asked. There are several caveats to hot seat, however. First of all, some people get uncomfortable

the spotlight and that should be respected. Also, make sure that the player is writing her own answers down. If she doesn't, she will likely forget interesting details that you could use as plot devices later.

Whatever method of prelude the Storyteller chooses, she should pay very close attention to what each individual player focuses on. If two different characters include the deaths of their fathers in their concepts, but one player writes a detailed description of her life with her father, the circumstances of her death, and the day of the funeral, whereas the other character spends more time wondering how her horrid father abused her, not to mention as a Garou and other past-Charge events, you have some good clues as to what each player finds important. Perhaps the first player could run across an uncle she barely knew (and in the chronicle, uncle, who can tell her things about her father that she never got to discover. Maybe the other character by showing herself so completely into her life as werewolf is trying

to escape something from her animal side. Even if the players can't see you straight out what is important to them, the things they choose to detail should give you more than enough material.

## *Thematic Elements*

The players have gone home for the evening, and Matt sits with a pile of character sheets and a stack of Werewolf books, not quite ready to sleep. The players decided on Landstana as their home, and Matt decides to create a seiyu the southern reaches of the state, with a spitting distance to the Gulf of Mexico. With that decision made, however, he isn't sure what this chronicle is going to be about.

Matt reflects that the characters are all, in their ways, strangers and strangers. The pack is a motley crew, indeed. Different cunes, two mutants, all young, all rather ignorant.

As old a group as they are, Matt reflects that they resemble the current Garou Nation perfectly—overshadowed by doubt and fear at odds with each other, and thrown together only by circumstance (Most decide that the fate of them are the only chance at the sept). If they can learn to recognize their differences, they could teach the Garou Nation as a whole, but teach them what? Matt considers, and his eyes fall on his stack of books again. *Nawisha Corax Mokole*—what if this young pack did recognize with some of the other Breeds?

It is such a big task that knowing where to start is difficult. Depending on whether you want the characters to influence the chronicle or vice versa, you might start with character sheets.

Let the player's characters, of course, and the ways take center stage—which is why character creation is presented first in this chapter.

When outlining the chronicle, you'll want to consider whether it will be driven primarily by the characters or by the plot. Like you'll want to pay attention to themes and motifs, and employ symbolism and atmospheric elements to make the chronicle live for the players.

## *Chronicle Focus — Character vs. Plot*

Do you have a plot ahead, forming in your head, one requiring the intrepid pack of Garou to struggle through it? Or would you rather let the pack form whole cloth from the player's imaginations, and see what suggests itself? Either method has merit. If you have strong ideas about where the game will go, the game will feel more structured and probably more epic. If you rely on the players and their characters, build the chronicle one story at a time; you will certainly see those characters develop, and the players will probably care about the events in the chronicle a great deal more.

You can combine these methods, of course. You might choose to start off a chronicle with a story that

to get them working together and establish the setting of the chronicle, and then later design stories more personal to the characters.

An important factor in all of these decisions probably the most important—is what the players want. This is the *Heart of the Matter* of the Werewolf game, but if the players are more interested in playing a new story, say go ahead and better listen to them. This doesn't mean that the players should control the chronicle; you're the Storyteller, and you're perfectly within your right to do as much or as little stage-setting as you feel necessary. Just be aware of your players' thoughts on the matter and be ready to make some concessions to them if needed.

## *Theme*

Most Werewolf books (indeed, most White Wolf books) talk about a theme and mood important to the book's subject matter. The two terms are similar, but fundamentally distinct. In brief, the theme is *what the story is about*.

For example, in the example above, Matt decides that a major theme of his chronicle is going to be the young teaching the old. This is a variation of the Marked on Descent theme mentioned in the Werewolf book; the characters, whether they know it or not, are going to show the sept what the Garou should be, not what they once were. To further specify this theme, Matt decides to use the other Fera and the War of Rage as focus points—the young pack has a chance to stone the other Breeds, the wounds left by the Garou war on the other Breeds.

But how to make the theme shine through in the chronicle? The Storyteller needs to consider each individual story. As the story begins, he should think of ways to integrate the story's events into the overall theme of the chronicle. If the theme of the chronicle is that the Garou are a one, without teachers, and effective, "revolving" Garou traditions as they go, then a new story should probably include a new facet of the society that they never learned, and must now try and cope with. In the example above, Matt might introduce a member of a different Breed during each story.

The Storyteller should not be heavy-handed when applying the theme to stories. If the players wish to make the chronicle in a different direction, try to apply the theme to the stories they wish to tell, not rank the plotline back to where you feel it should be. The "You're in and Scored" theme mentioned above might be a good one to use if the pack decides to quest for another sept of Garou to help them, but that quest would be a fine story. Don't make the theme feel forced—don't go throwing the players out of the story.

## Mood

The mood of a chronicle should "set off" the theme. The mood describes the general feel of the chronicle, and can be expressed by such things as weather, attitudes of Storyteller characters, and the music the Storyteller plays during the game (if any). The mood should enhance the player's understanding and appreciation of the chronicle, so if the players don't seem to be "getting it," the Storyteller might need to make the mood a bit less subtle.

The mood can and should play a large part in how the Storyteller structures the game. For example, Matt's chronicle is thematically about the young menbers of a traditional society schooling the old. This suggests a hidebound, traditional backdrop, but the stated setting for the game is southern Louisiana. This simply means that the traditionalist mood needs to come through in other ways. To enforce this mood, Matt might decide to have the sept leader be especially xenophobic toward new members and visitors to the septaireture, and while the monks are as formal as some other septs, the same Garou perform them in the same manner every month. Thus, although "that's the way it's always been" ambience will set the characters (who, as mentioned, are not only new to being Garou but outside in many other ways) into the roles as teachers and rebels, whether they mean to be or not. It is emphasis on "knowing your place" and "following tradition" helps to create the mood of orthodoxy and hidebound ritual.

The Storyteller can (and should) use visual elements as well—perhaps the sept grounds include the decaying remains of a once beautiful plantation house. While in past years, the house was magnificent and included slave quarters and several other outbuildings, all that remains now is the main building covered in moss and vines, cellar flooded with swamp water, snakes sunning themselves on the porch.

Note, however, that just as not every story needs to be tied slavishly to a chronicle's theme, the mood of a story might well vary greatly from the mood of the chronicle. Suppose the characters go on a quest far from their home? The mood will likely be very different, simply because the surroundings are so different. However, the Storyteller may wish to throw little reminders into the story just to keep the overarching mood in the players' minds. While visiting a distant sept, the characters from Matt's isolationist Sept of the Bayou might run afoul of a cranky, suspicious Master of the Rite, and one of the characters might mutter "just like being at home."

Even more than the game's theme, the mood must be maintained. If the Storyteller uses a certain fragrance of incense to set the mood, he should use it for each game. That way, when and where the pack does go traveling

and as deliberate. Doesn't use the scent, the players will notice a change. Now that the characters are far from home, Storyteller characters should be played consistently — that way a sudden (or even subtle) change in personality will tip the characters off that something's amiss. The Storyteller might even wish to choose "theme songs" for important places or characters, offer a while the players visit, and then return with its character. This is a wish to give players something to think about if the players are wondering which sept leader to ask for advice, playing a given character's song might be helpful without forcing the players to "listen."

## Game Design

"All right ladies and gentlemen," says Matt as the players take their seats. "Go ahead and work. The End. As always, we're 'Chronicle' on your character sheets. Anything needing anything explained before we start?" He pauses while the players glance at their sheets. They talk in hushed confusion, so Matt presses play on his stereo and the sounds of wolf howl quietly play in the background. "All eyes are on you as you take your places around the moon fire. This is the first moon you're attended as a pack, and the elders of the sept —"

"Are we gonna order pizza?" pipes Ryan. Matt shoots him a glare and grinds a reminder about out-of-character interruptions, but concedes that the idea has merit.

events of the chronicle, but how does the Storyteller decide what those events will be? How does he populate the sept or create enemies for the pack? The theme of the chronicle is a fine concept, and it's a good idea to provide the Storyteller with music ideas, but how do those things translate into game play?

## Inspiration from the Players

It would seem a no-brainer, but Storytellers often ignore the characters in designing the game. This is a mistake. If a player starts as a character who has developed a rivalry that nearly erupted into actual combat during a recent Passage, why couldn't that rival have taken a minor sept position (such as Wurm Fox) and held it over the character's head? If a character is obsessed with learning the Silver Record, perhaps the sept is home to an ancient but widely renowned Gadiant who knows a large chunk of the Record by heart.

Placing such importance on the character's motivations and goals encourages the players themselves to emphasize those things. When the Storyteller finds herself stuck for ideas, glancing over the pack's character sheets may well yield some plot hooks.

## Mythic Cycles

A detailed discussion of the different types of folk and epic patterns in literature is beyond the scope of this book.

though the Bibliography contains several good suggestions. However several suggestions of using such patterns in Werewolf chronicles are presented here.

• **The Hero's Journey:** You don't need to know anything about mythology, sociology, or literature to use the Hero's Journey. All you need to do is have a good *Star Wars* or *The Matrix*, or any one of hundreds of other films or books. The Hero's Journey actually has twelve stages, which typically happen in a predetermined order. These steps are:

1) **The Ordinary World**—The characters in the story live as

2) **The Call to Adventure**—Exactly what the characters are jaded from their ordinary lives and forced into action (or reaction).

**The Refusal of the Call**—The characters save themselves during the Call to Adventure, but for whatever reason, do not pursue the matter further.

4) **Meeting with the Mentor**—This can be a mentor as dictated by the Background, or he can simply be an elder interested in the characters. The mentor usually explains the Call to Adventure and answers the characters why they should follow it.

5) **Crossing the First Threshold**—The characters enter the story world heartedly. This stage marks the no turning back point; they are enmeshed in the adventure for the duration.

6) **Tests, Allies, Enemies**—The characters gain information about their enemies, make new friends, discover traitors, and endure battles and hardships. Regardless of what happens here, it should relate to the story as a whole.

7) **Approach to the Inmost Cave**—The characters discover their goal, what they need to do to defeat the villain(s). In some cases, this means figuring out what their enemies actually are.

8) **The Supreme Ordeal**—The characters lose. They lose a battle, lose hope, one dies — in general, they are defeated. This is the stage where the characters hit rock bottom, and it is common that a warrior

9) **The Reward**—The characters reap the benefits of their tenacity; although they suffered a defeat, they come away with a bit of information or another edge that will allow them to best their foes.

10) **The Road Back**—The characters haven't won. They must make a sacrifice or implement whatever they gained during the Reward phase. This usually involves being pursued or otherwise dogged by their enemies.

11) **The Final Threshold**—The characters confront their foe(s) and use what they've learned to win. The victory may indeed be costly — the characters may not all survive it — but in the end, there should be some noticeable change.

12) **The Return**—Renown is handed out, rare challenges ensue, the pack's leadership may change. This is the denouement where all of the characters trip the Final Threshold, realized that they left things behind, but tied up somehow. The end of the story should receive at least as much consideration as everything before it.

The Hero's Journey does not need to be structured this way; it can and should be varied or even be a weird formula. Take into account where the characters begin — perhaps there really isn't an Ordinary World for them. Perhaps they don't refuse the call and wish to pursue the adventure from the get-go. Don't force it if it plays out below a pre-ordained schedule of events just because Hollywood always seems to.

• **Urban Legends:** Urban legends are folkloric stories presented as real occurrences that usually carry some sort of message. That message can be real and applicable, or it can betray a society's fears and prejudices, but either way both specific urban legends and their general tone can make for good Werewolf stories.

For example, stories have circulated for years about giant alligators in New York's sewers and about catfish living in reservoirs. Nothing says these tales can't exist and plausibly — or even a little — the *Book of the Wyld*, in fact. But urban legends and fantastical legends make a good story fodder, too. I'll do a short story of the kidney thieves, where an unfortunate victim wakes up in a hospital bed five days after a wild party, only to discover that one (or both) of his kidneys have been removed to be sold on the black market. There's no truth to this story — but doesn't it sound like something that would happen in the *World of Darkness*? What if such a victim was *Kullback* to one of the characters — or worse, what if the victim was *Carano* (this would require a drug potent enough to knock the character out, but that only adds to the horror)? Who would do such a thing? Pentex DNA?

Rather than using urban legends as plot hooks directly, the Storyteller may simply take that style and impart it for a story. Urban legends usually have a poetic or ironic twist or at the very least a simple moral. The familiar story about the babysitter who receives phone calls from a madman in an upstairs phone for example, has a very clear moral — child care demands a great deal of responsibility, and the child should be checked often, threatening phone calls or no. The "kidney thieves" story usually involves a traveler who meets a stranger at a party or club and wakes up missing organs.

This story is as vicious as a take care when traveling. The Storyteller can work in these simple yet brutal methods of driving home the truths of living in Garou society. Perhaps a member of the sept develops a wasting disease that



characters to see if the concepts they dreamed up will stand against the rigors of roleplaying, and to see if those concepts are appropriate to the chronicle. The storyteller is testing moods, themes, ideas, his own characters, and his storytelling and gamemastering abilities. The first story needs to have effort poured into it — it is, after all, the measuring stick by which every other story in the chronicle will be judged.

### *Length and Breath*

A first story probably shouldn't go more than three sessions. There needs to be a distinct end to it to emphasize that this story is a lead-in to the chronicle, but is not the whole chronicle. The story should be fairly self-contained — while it can certainly introduce plot hooks that are left dangling, the main challenge of the story should be resolved. This gives the characters a mission or victory they can claim (or perhaps a defeat to live down) and gives the players a good "umping-off" point.

If the players are not familiar with *Werewolf*, use the first story to tightly incorporate as much of the game as possible. Comb it, the Umbra, Gifts, rules, spirits, etc. Give the story a tight overview of *Werewolf*. Don't focus too much on one aspect (especially not combat) — let the players sample various elements. They will decide (and perhaps you know) which parts they like the best.

### *Tweaking*

When the first story is over, you may wish to allow the players to "tweak" their characters slightly. Perhaps a player (I prominently referred to her Jaws as a high school student) has a rating 3 Athletics. You might consider letting her swap dots from another Ability to bring her character in line with this past experience. Just as a play can't really be appreciated unless it's seen in production, a character can't fully be tested except in game play. The first story should be considered part of the preliminary stages of a chronicle, and that means minor changes to everything (characters, plot, and so on) are acceptable.

You should also nail down any house rules you decide to use by the end of the first story. You might decide that the bitch rules presented in *Werewolf* are "too soft" and rule that a roll is botched if more ones are rolled than successes. Tell your players about this change, test it during the first story, and keep it as such.

### *Experience and Other Rewards*

It's a common incident in how much experience you give out at the end of the first story. Reward players with encouragement — a particularly good scene might merit experience points granted on the spot. Likewise, it is acceptable to dock experience from players who saw-wait or disrupt game play consistently. Just make sure

you have a system for doling out experience so that if someone asks why they only received two points this session instead of three, you know how to answer.

You may pay attention to Renown. Do the characters accrue Renown during game play, or is it all granted at a point when the characters tell the stories of the exploits, which puts a great deal of responsibility on the pack's Goll and/or Chapter One? Give the information and advice on Renown and Rank, but keep it all consistent.

Decide how difficult it is for characters to earn Gifts and raise other Traits. Don't allow one player to simply spend the experience and learn a new Gift while another must go on a prolonged spirit quest (unless the latter character has some stated handicap when it comes to learning Gifts, of course).

### *Downtime*

After the first story, the Storyteller must decide how much time passes between stories. This is important. If the next story begins only a day later, the characters have barely had time to breathe, much less recuperate (which might be exactly the effect you want). Ask the players to consider what the characters do during the downtime. Do they attempt to learn new Gifts or tricks? Do they seek training from Jol or Garou, or do they return to their pre-Garou lives given half a chance? If they wish to follow up on leads and leads discovered during the first story, ask them fully. They are compensating you on a well-crafted rate by paying attention and caring about the story. Your thanks should take the form of letting their characters follow the paths that the players find intriguing, and using those paths to craft the next story.

### *Middle*

Once the chronicle has begun and a story or two have been told, Storytellers may be tempted to *loose*. After all, the pack has likely made some friends and enemies — and the players have discovered what they like and do not like about *Werewolf*. If the plot seems to end, why aousing combat, why not throw it into every session? If they enjoy questing into the Umbra, why there are thirteen keys mentioned in the core book — enough for more than a do-

The danger here should be obvious. No matter how exciting a plotline was when the players first experienced it, it will not have the same effect the second time. During the body of the chronicle, the Storyteller should keep her eyes on plot, not on repetition. That's what's the chronicle going? This section deals with how to make sure the chronicle goes somewhere, preferably somewhere entertaining.

## Chronicle Development

Matt closes the door behind his players and walks back into the living room. He puts away the books and the character sheets, and flips open a notebook to write down the events of the recently concluded session.

It is not the same doubtful, tentative bunch of players who began the chronicle with *Halla's* character, *Veola*, is pregnant. This will entail her making another character, probably at the end of the next story, as *Veola's* unborn child is too far along to shapeshift. Brian's Fenris warrior has stopped drinking, and has functionally assumed leadership of the pack, even though *Veola* is still technically alpha. The Red Totem, Julie's character, has begun accompanying Blood Rain and the other Red Totems of the sept on their "hunts." Like the other Totems, Red Shadow does not know that Blood Rain is a Black Spirit spy. All small, the characters are coming along nicely. But where to go next?

### Pack Development

As the chronicle progresses, the pack must develop as an entity. Each character develops separately, but tracking character progression is simple (at least in game terms) as the players spend experience points. The pack's development, however, is a bit subtler.

Pay attention to what the characters do during downtime. Do they go their separate ways? Do any of them pay homage to their totem? Do they hang out together as friends, or do they consider each other co-workers? A pack has a spiritual bond, and most pack members would fight to the death to protect each other. That doesn't make them friends, however, and that truth can be hard to understand.

If the pack does not spend any time improving itself as a pack, perhaps they find pack life as harder to live as their mystical connection erodes. Perhaps their totem grows distant or shows favoritism to the pack member(s) that pay attention to it. If the pack starts fragmenting, introduce a Storyteller-controlled pack that makes the characters look pathetic. The pack is one of the central components of a Werewolf game, and it needs as much attention as any of the werewolves that comprise it.

One reason the pack needs so much attention is that a pack in the End Times has a quest to complete. Once that purpose is filled, the pack need no longer remain together. Indeed, it is possible for a character to join a pack while still young, stay with that pack until it completes its quest, and then join another pack later (though this is by no means common).

As Storyteller, you should be thinking about the pack's quest from the very first story. The pack's totem should be a guide—a pack that follows Fenris, for example, likely has a different purpose than one that follows Dagon. Also consider who it has the pack

member belong to—a tribe composed mostly or entirely of Uktena and Wendigo might be destined to right some great wrong the Wyrmcomers inflicted the Pure Land. On the other hand, a pack composed of Wyrmcomers might have the same purpose, but the stories involved would be quite different.

Perhaps most importantly, listen to the players. They will very quickly tell you goals for the pack, and although it might pain the Storyteller to set aside a carefully planned storyline, hearing the player's rousing cheers as they destroy their arch-enemy or reopen a lost pathway to a home realm inevitably makes it worth while.

As the pack's path becomes clearer, you can start giving them signs and visions of their destiny. Open as many possibilities, especially if the pack's Theme has learned the Gift Sight from Beyond. The way that other beings react to the pack might also foreshadow their fate. If a pack's purpose is to prevent a caern from defilement by the Wyrm's forces, perhaps spirits begin referring to the pack members as "honored guardians" or "noble defenders." The pack will probably assume that the spirits are referring to their duties as Gair's defenders, at least for a while.

A pack's Renown should also help to gauge their purpose. If the pack has a reputation for prowess in battle, Abaddon will likely acknowledge that when they meet the pack. You can gauge a pack's Renown by averaging the permanent Renown scores of the individual members; you could keep a loose record of Renown for the pack as a whole. As Galliards begin singing tales of the pack's exploits, the pack might discover that someone has seen visions of them performing some great deed. The deed may well become their purpose.

As the pack develops, you might consider a story that stresses (or puts stress upon) the bonds between its members. Play on the differences between the characters' backstories and attitudes. Perhaps some of them feel that the Wyrm is the greater threat, while others fear the machinations of the Weaver. Put them in a position where they must choose their foe—all things being equal, how does the pack rankle that kind of decision? Another way to highlight the importance of the pack is through its totem. Totems are not omnipotent, or necessarily benign forces; many of them have agendas, what means they sometimes work at cross-purposes with other spirits. Take a good look at the pack's totem and see what images and stories come to mind.

### Character Development

Each member of the pack has her own story to tell. As Storyteller, you must be ready to help the players integrate these stories, and there are many ways you can help players to develop their characters.

One of the simplest is to guide experience point expenditure. Buying new Traits should always be a joint effort between player and Storyteller. The Storyteller is the final judge of whether or not a character is ready to buy a new Trait or increase an old one, and because increasing an Ability or Attribute is a twenty percent increase (each such Trait has a five dot maximum), a substantial amount of study and practice should take place before raising the Trait. Be particularly careful about letting players raise Abilities: four and five dots (avg. such a score indicates that the character is among the world's best at the Ability). Also, take into consideration the character's foibles when allowing (or restricting) experience purchases. If a character is comfortable in the spirit realms and pretends talking to spirits is beings to trying to deal with spirits, it doesn't make sense for the character to buy a new Gift every

month; you may well rule that these poor Thurgs need proof that a real character can talk to learning a Gift before he summons a spirit to teach it. Likewise, if a character wishes to learn a new language, make sure that she is devoting the necessary time to it. If you plan on taking a great deal of downtime between stories, the player can simply say "My character devotes three hours a day to studying," but if the character needs to learn a language while a story is actually going on, another player needs to find the time for the character to hit the books.

Before experience is spent, of course, it has to be earned. Another way to guide character development is by the Learning Curve point award (see page 180 of *Werewolf*). If a character has learned anything during a session, the Lesson grants an experience point. However, the Storyteller should make sure that what the character learned isn't going to be forgotten by the next chapter.

If the character gains some interesting insight into the pack, the Garou, or herself. If a character comes to the conclusion that the elders in the sept are just posturing and aren't really as great and wise as they're made out to be, write that down so that you can refer to it in later games. Perhaps the Wyrm's tale is the catalyst for the character's rebellious thoughts against her. And what if she voices her attitudes and the elders find out. That might make for difficult rank challenges later on.

Each character has to show a history, a story that began long before the character joined the pack. The more detail the players provide about their characters' pasts, the more attention you can give to their futures. Likewise, if a player leaves large segments of his character's past empty, which the Storyteller should discourage during the Prelude, or even those minor past events that don't get filled, the Storyteller is within her rights to make some history up herself (with reason and with player approval, of course — the player should remain control of her character). After a session has passed,

look at each character's history and background and see if there are elements that are as yet unresolved that could be worked into upcoming stories. Likewise, look for any developments. New enemies, new friends, new major battles (and possibly battle scars) — all of these things can change a character's outlook. So, what if a character had a girlfriend before becoming a Garou and hasn't seen her since she offered to join the pack? Or, after venturing through Wyrm-infested cesspits and Limbra reaches, she comes to visit and asks why he hasn't written lately. How does he view her? Is she a safe haven from the horror that his life has become? Or is she a stifling reminder of the "human life"? Lupus and metis characters may have similar experiences. What if a lupus werewolf desires to visit her old territory and finds much of it paved? What if a metis has always wanted to find his real parents? Any of these can become stories for the entire pack, and because they involve the characters (at least one of them) so directly, the stakes are much higher in such stories. Also, they encourage pack development, as the entire pack lends its efforts to the needs or desires of one of its members.

Renown and reputation continue to characterize development in much the same way that they do pack development. Perhaps a character enters Garou society without a dead name, and gains one during a story. The story of how the character gained her name will likely be told at a moment bolstering the character's Renown and cementing her place in the sept. As characters gain reputations, other Garou, even enemies, might seek them out for advice and aid in certain endeavors. Such reputations are usually specific: warriors, it is unlikely that a character will ever be known simply as "a good fighter." Instead, the character's penchant for tearing out opponent's throats might become a subject of conversation — even among her enemies. As characters gain Renown and experience rank, they should find themselves shouldering new responsibilities. A group may be required to train new Guardians, Galliards, Philodox, and Thurges are expected to learn rites of various kinds. Of course, one really knows what to expect from the no-moon.

### *Story Development*

As the pack progresses towards whatever goals it may have set, keep in mind the direction of the story. While the players may take control and develop their own agendas, and while these agendas may take on the stories to realize, the Storyteller must always be ready to throw the characters' heads into another plot twist. Some Storytellers, after a few stories (or even just a few chapters), run dry and find themselves floundering for ideas.

Inspiration for new stories is all around us. Read the news — there's always something interesting somewhere, and perhaps the latest one will let you

good Werewolf story. A law, a book, a film, a television, and even a music can suggest a story.

However, in the middle of a chronicle, the best source of inspiration might well be what has gone before. Are there any dangling plot hooks that could suddenly become crucial? Does the pack have enemies that could show up to make trouble? Avoid gratuitous use of "bad guys" here. If they're going to show up to challenge the pack, their plan shouldn't be "throw ourselves at the pack until they kill us." Ask yourself what the antagonists want that would bring them into conflict with the characters.

If nothing from the chronicle to this point inspires you (or if the chronicle is still young enough that the characters' exploits haven't had far-reaching consequences), throw the pack a curve ball. Perhaps a venerated elder dies, apparently of natural causes. One such death can easily fuel a story. Someone, after all, must perform the Gathering for the Deceased. Perhaps the elder left instructions with another Camar regarding the treatment of his body—or his furs! And what if the elder didn't really die of natural causes at all?

Another possibility is to ask the players what they would like to see, which the Storyteller should do periodically anyway. One method that works well is to ask the players to suggest plot hooks for the chronicle, and see if any of the suggestions match up. The players will likely remember events and characters that the Storyteller thought insignificant at the time. If the players think the chronicle was more than uncharted wilderness, then the very first session was important in some way, make it so. Create a personal history for them and bring it into the chronicle gradually, taking with you a vision and agenda. You can also let the players subtly shape what they see. "Remember how the guy is? And how he picked at his food? I bet he's a Carrax." When you hear things like this, put on your best poker face and let the players enjoy saying "knew it" when the Carrax man grows fatter.

### *Storyteller Character Development*

The elders of the sept, the characters' lovers and friends, even the pack's worst enemies—these characters are as deserving of development and growth as any

## *The Dreaded Metaphor*

*Fuck you, I won't do what you tell me.*

*Rage Against the Machine, "Coming of Age in the Sixties"*

Some Storytellers view Werewolf as "cannon" religiously. It's a cornball in *Rage Across Ohio*, then it fits in the chronicle. A major problem is that a lot of people been reminding the character's sept and the pack was looking forward to meeting him in battle.

Other storytellers, of course, are also warriors. After all, the Golden Rule—supposedly the only inviolate rule of the game—says that the game belongs to the players, right? So why are I Telling you, the Son of the Wyrm, desecrating sourcebooks? Not in your World of Darkness, he didn't.

Frankly, either of these attitudes is fine. The metaphor isn't there to dictate how you run your games. It's there to make the world of Werewolf a bit more dynamic. If something happens in a sourcebook that you feel would never have happened in your chronicle, ignore it for better yet, have your players pack become the stars of the show. We don't mind. You know the needs of your chronicle better than we ever could.

Still, one good idea would be when a player scribbles up a new sourcebook, reads about a "canonical" event, and wonders how a major facet of his character around it? Do you reject the idea simply because it would rely too much on the canon? Of course not. Read the sourcebook, it gives you an idea of what if it all the details has good story potential. If it works with the player's character, whatever is necessary and go forward with the idea.

On a related note, if you're planning on making a change to an established canon, or changing a canon, it's a good idea to let the players know before you begin. I never really got to decide that the Carrax have already won the war in the Amazon, or have made peace with the Amazonas, or even to note that the bite of a werewolf is infectious (if it matters, see Chapter Five for tips on various Werewolf games, in fact). But the players deserve to know about it, so that they may make such changes into their own chronicle when creating their characters. Plus, you might want to run a session or two on the first. You might lose the whole idea, but your werewolves learn "Grits" from spirits, but your players may feel differently and might well resent such a functioning aspect of the game being yanked out from under them.

In general, just remember that the books, sourcebooks, and other resources for Werewolf are not instructions or rules. They should provide ideas and plot hooks, not force you to give up playing a certain tribe because a book says they all disappeared one fine day. With all that in mind, don't let the metaphor make you angry, unless you're every event every book, and with a little disclaimer saying "We use this idea in our games if you really want it," the books should be a lot more helpful. Open your eyes, content. There's a lot of good material in these books, so let it inspire your stories, not influence them.

that the players control. These characters learn from their mistakes and experiences just as the players' characters do, and their motivations and goals especially with regards to the pack can and should evolve. If the Storyteller characters are not well rounded and interesting, they're little more than the "salesmen" vendors of computer "role playing." The more detail the Storyteller puts into her characters, the more the pack will feel that the story is a living, breathing drama.

This doesn't mean, however, that the supporting characters are to be treated as "NPCs." Sometimes they don't know what they're talking, but they can understand what they're asked. If you have a good grasp of a character's background and knowledge of the times, it's a good idea to make a "what she knows" list (a little book of a Storyteller character's sheet or in a notebook), you run a much reduced risk of portraying the character inconsistently — and the more consistent a character is, the easier it is for the players to notice when something does change.

**Friends:** The pack's allies and friends can be difficult to play well. It is tempting, for both the Storyteller and the players, to regard characters represented by Backgrounds (Allies, Contacts, Kinfolk and Mentors) as resources for the character to call upon. Consider these Backgrounds to represent not the actual people, but you, the character's relationship with them. By making lots in the Mentor background, the player isn't creating a higher-ranked Garou. He's creating a relationship between that Garou and his one self. In the mind, these relationships need to be maintained, and the extent of that maintenance is largely up to the Storyteller. Mentors may demand help with complicated tasks, or may send young Garou on missions to fetch artifacts or spirits. One character's Mentor may be the rival of another character's Mentor, and if two warring elders may begin a sort of "pissing contest" as each one has charge to outdo the other's.

**Ally:** Allies are the character's friends, and that means that the Storyteller needs to know not only what the Garou gets out of the relationship, but what the Ally gets out. It's great that the character bonds with the ally visually, and since they're friends, the character can ask her/him to look on any nonmental times, but what does the Garou do for the ally, other than increase their howling team's average? The Storyteller should occasionally have Allies contact the character and ask for whatever favors the character would seem to be able to grant. For character ease, for all periods of time without interruption. Allies consider whether or not the Ally will take offense. An old college buddy with whom the character exchanges Christmas cards, such as

casual contact with otherwise, will probably not be annoyed at not hearing from the character in months, but the bowling buddy will be justifiably miffed if the character misses a game night three weeks in a row.

**Maintaining Contacts** is much simpler. Since a personal relationship is not assumed, as it is with Allies, Contacts can usually be called upon with impunity. However, the Storyteller can still use these characters outside the story. Suppose the character has a Contact who happens to be a secretary for an executive at King Breweries. What happens if she gets promoted to management? The character now has to worry whether or not her new position will harm her — and what that might mean to the Garou. Likewise, since Contacts often don't have any particular loyalty to the characters, the pack's enemies, either to gain information or set up ambushes may learn them on. Also, if the police ever have a reason to investigate a character, they will look up any known associates. A Contact with a good memory and a reason to talk can often give out damaging information on a character.

**Kinfolk** even more than Allies require a character's attention. They are family, and that means that they can relate to Garou in ways that no one else (including other Garou) can. The temptation to use Kinfolk as bait — having them kidnapped by Black Spiral Dancers or possessed by Banes — can be great, and there's certainly a way to motivate characters. However, beware of turning kinfolk into weak, helpless mortals who exist only to be rescued. Kinfolk are most Garou's greatest link to the human world. The Garou prevent and usually werewolves from taking active roles in society, but they can often work through Kinfolk. This requires treating them well, of course, and some Garou don't. As Storyteller pay attention to how a character treats his kinfolk. Does he visit them often, or does he shy away for fear of leading or embarrassing his family? Does he include them in Garou society, or does he keep them protected as much as possible? **Kinfolk: Unsung Heroes** provides an in-depth look at Garou-Kinfolk relations, and gives some good ideas how to best use Kinfolk in a Werewolf chronicle.

**Foes:** Chapter Four goes into detail about various kinds of antagonists that may show up in a Werewolf chronicle and how to use them well. However, something to keep in mind, no matter what sort of supernatural power or abilities that antag. have, they should develop and grow from their contact with the pack.

If the pack fights a pack of Black Spiral Dancers and is one of the survivors will probably remember the "Carnal scene" that murdered their pack mate and will return to even the score eventually. But those Dancers don't have to simply show up savoring and foaming, spitting fire for do-or-die combat. Perhaps they watch the

and weaknesses. Perhaps they set up ambushes or learn Gfts to compensate for the town shortcomings.

But even beyond the level of strategy, rivalry or enmity is to be kept hot between the pack and the

reputation as the "Constant Foes of the Screaming Sludge Pacifier" is one side perpetuating the feud simply

perhaps the fight is more personal. If there is history between the pack and their enemies, did it (if it didn't happen during the actual chronicle) How did the first skirmish end? Has the pack witnessed their

And enemies need not be Wyrms (or Weavers) servants, anyway. Police hunters, even a character's own family can fall into adversarial roles, and as they learn more about the pack, their tactics and attitudes should change. Perhaps a cop is chasing a character on suspecting terrorism charges and discovers that the "terrorist" is actually a werewolf. That cop isn't necessarily going to immediately go home and start loading shotgun shells with silver. He might ask around on the force to see if they've seen anything similar, which may attract attention from other agencies, which then might investigate

first place? When developing antagonists, keep in mind how much they know about the pack and who might be able to get hold of that information.

Some characters may have some downtime activities. Perhaps a character's Ally gets divorced. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new job. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new house. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new car. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new pet. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new friend. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new enemy. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new life.

some notes about what they've done during downtime. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new job. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new house. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new car. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new pet. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new friend. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new enemy. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new life. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new job. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new house. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new car. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new pet. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new friend. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new enemy. Perhaps a character's Ally gets a new life.

### Player Issues

ask a guy he hasn't met, "Hey, Matt," she says, "can my boyfriend play a night?"

nerved. He comes over, in, however. It turns out that Hilde's beau has a character ready—a Rune Weaver who completely ignores about Gamma culture and was never given a proper Rite of Passage. Matt opens his notes

character in. He does warn his new player that he isn't going to force the pack to take him in or even accept him.

around the room. He introduces himself as Brian Bus. Matt shakes his head as the other players laugh. Lost, hopeless and ignorant. Brian's a sacker. A first light in, junky Matt. OK, he can stay.

### Creating and Losing Players

A troupe that stays constant long enough to make a story is a troupe that is a troupe. One member will drop out for one reason or another, or one of the players wants to bring a new boyfriend or girlfriend along to play. How should the Storyteller handle it?

Getting new players in the middle of a chronicle can be difficult to handle gracefully, particularly if you have no need of another character. This can be especially difficult in Werewolf, where each character is burdened by a totem and adding new members to the pack requires ceremony and challenges.

character might just bring things up and sidetrack the story. Plus, the new character would have the amount of attention at a time she deserves. Also, since Storyteller

within her rights to refuse a new player if she feels that the troupe is too large.

a one-shot game including the new player, especially if the troupe is too large.

new player should, if at all possible, meet and play through so a game or two, getting a feel for where the character is coming from and who he'll be in the area in which the chronicle is set. If the new player doesn't have a character concept, the Storyteller might be able to suggest one that would fit into the story well. If the story is set in a realm of his own, perhaps another

for itself finding out about the new player could play a role in the troupe of the first chronicle.

Gaming players normally have a bonus to a chronicle. A new character can take the chronicle in new directions, spice up pack dynamics, and, if necessary, shake the game up a bit. Losing a player can do this as well, but rarely does it go as smoothly.

Players can drop out of games for any number of

Family or job concerns can force people to

take a back burner to more important obligations. Sometimes a player will quit a game she finds boring. This is why it is so important to maintain communication with all players.

A player that leaves can talk to the Storyteller if she starts losing interest in the game as much less likely to simply quit.

If a player must leave a game, ask why. If she truly isn't enjoying herself, the troupe is better off without her. If, however, the problem is something correctable, work to fix it. If she has a problem with scheduling, see if the troupe could meet on a different night. If the problem is something temporary—final exams, perhaps—offer to temporarily sideline her character and run a side game when her schedule calms down. Most problems can be worked around if the player really wants to remain in the group.

If the problem is with the group, however, the situation becomes somewhat less flexible. A troupe that

loses a couple may be in trouble if the couple breaks up. In such a situation, try not to take sides. Simply tell the affected parties that if they cannot resolve differences and play together, at least one or both of them will need to stop saying "I" and start saying "we." If they cannot resolve this themselves, it may be time for the Storyteller to excuse one of the players from the group. This can also happen if a player is causing problems and offending other players (see Maturity, below).

### *A Caveat for Storytellers*

Ask the new player—not the player attempting to bring her in—if she really wants to be a part of the game. It happens, sadly too frequently, that a player wishes this significant other to be part of the hobby (which is only natural) and the significant other in question goes along with it without a clear idea of what the game is all about. Make sure the player has some

idea of what the game is all about. Make sure the player has some interest, or at least curiosity, about Werewolf. If you are unsure, ask if perhaps the better idea is to let the player watch a game and observe for a session before actually playing. Take time to answer any questions she has about the game and the character.

And please, for the love of the game, don't let her go home with the idea that she can just drop in and play whenever she wants. You don't want a new player who is only playing to humor her boyfriend—it's nearly always just a matter of time before

Asking someone to leave is never easy. The most straightforward way to handle it is to calmly explain to the player what the problem is, and tell him that the other players would be more comfortable playing without him. If the player offers to make an apology and try to do better wherever the problem behavior is, let him, but don't make any promises. This is obviously not an enjoyable part of being a Storyteller, but the point of the game is to have a good time, and if one player disrupts that good time for everyone else, the Storyteller needs to make the proper adjustments.

### *Character Death*

Having a player leave the game is, of course, very different than losing a character. A character might disappear from the action for any number of reasons. She might die in battle or become wounded or sickened to point that she can no longer travel with the pack. She might even become tainted and wind up in Erebus.

If a character becomes inactive because the player wishes to retire her and play a new character, all a Storyteller can do is try to fringe the events so that

the character doesn't disrupt the story too much. Try to set up the event during the course of a story so that it doesn't feel like a random event, and focus on the character giving her the send-off (even temporarily) that she deserves. (Of course, this may result in the player deciding she really likes her character after all, but that's just part of the fun of being a Storyteller.) If possible, try to introduce the player's new character during the story as well.

If, however, a character dies in battle, the Storyteller has two options. She can let the chips (and dice) fall where they may. Battle is, after all, a dangerous pastime, and a sudden casualty may serve to remind the pack (and the players) that even the mighty Kithain are not indestructible.

On the other hand, it is a game. If the players would obviously feel cheated by losing her character to a random throw of the dice or the character left with a Broken Star, it's up to you as Storyteller to judge whether or not the drama story is a character's death is worth the trouble of introducing a new character. If you let the character "off the hook," stress how close she came to death. Have one of the elders perform a Rite of Wind and have a Galliard sing her praises, but at the same time, perhaps her Kithain lover is suddenly standoffish and aloof, trying to cope with a most losing his beloved. Make the threat of death real and scary, and even if death doesn't actually touch the pack, it can have an impact.

If you do decide to lower the proverbial hammer, however, play the moment up for maximum drama. Run the character's deathing as the Departed, making sure the rest of the pack gets a moment to say a few words. Show the reactions of the Storyteller characters close to

the deceased, particularly kinfolk and close friends. And what if the character has friends who don't know about the Carol? It falls to her packmates to make up some kind of story to tell her friends. A packmate's death may very well fuel a story on its own. Never cheapen the moment by glossing it over simply by bringing in a new character at the end of the session. That's disrespectful to the character, the player, and the story.

### *Maturity*

Talking about maturity when discussing a fantasy game in which the "mature" people involved pretend to be werewolves might seem a bit incongruous. However, maturity really is key to playing *Werewolf* well, and it has little or nothing to do with the game specifically. When we speak of maturity within the confines of a role-playing game, we actually refer to treating other players with maturity and sensitivity. Characters are what they exist in the real world and certainly exist in the World of Darkness, eliciting reactions from players. These include rape, molestation, sex drugs and money, family member death. This doesn't mean that these things can't be used as game elements, but a good chronicle's last chapter should not discuss any topics best left avoided. If a player feels uncomfortable during a game, that player isn't having fun, which is, of course, the point of the whole thing. As Storyteller, it's your job to make sure that the game is fun for everyone.

It's also a good idea to make sure that everyone's voice is heard. You can encourage this kind of behavior by example and by keeping communication lines between you and the players open. If one of the players is being offensive, it falls to you to smooth things out (see Problem Players on page 113).

### *End*

As with any good role-playing game, a chronicle has to end. Hopefully, the ending comes at the right time—the Storyteller doesn't have to end the game prematurely and has not tried to drag it out beyond its logical conclusion. This section offers some advice on how—and when—to end a *Werewolf* chronicle.

### *Preparing for the End*

When is it appropriate to end a game? When the characters reach a certain rank, or dispose of their greatest foe? Or when the players simply get tired of playing *Werewolf*?

It's a difficult question, and the answer is often difficult. This is one reason to start thinking about the pack's quest early on in the chronicle (see Pack Development, above). If you have ideas for what the pack's

spiritual quest will be, the chronicle should end with them completing it, or perhaps failing to do so.

### *Premature Ends*

Ending a chronicle before its time is always an unhappy possibility. If players or the Storyteller suddenly discover that they must withdraw from the chronicle, it is often better to end it than to struggle to keep the story going. Make the last story something really special. Ask the players to create any characters they would like to see again (if only for the purpose of wreaking revenge). Bring the powerful antagonists out for a fight to the death (see Final Battles, below). But beyond all of the violence and pyrotechnics, try weave the threads of the story together. See if it would make sense to combine several tangling plot points, simply to give some closure. If the characters have tentatively abandoned a line of human magics, suddenly finding themselves beset by crab-like Banes in the final chapter that the pages were saving the Bones from the darkest reaches of dark Umbra. What if that conclusion goes entirely against what you were setting up to? The players won't know it, and as long as you present it convincingly, the story will suffer from a last minute behind-the-scenes change.

If there are pack members that have skeletons in their closets, try to flush them out during the last story. Such things really should be resolved before the chronicle's conclusion, so that the characters complete their nemesis with clear consciences, but if the chronicle must end suddenly, that isn't always possible. Have the nemesis in question throw the character's darkest deeds in her face. Test pack loyalty at every turn. In desperate situations, when the stakes are highest, will the pack turn on itself?

### *Planned Conclusions*

If you have time to build up to a conclusion, however, take the time to wrap up any loose ends that don't have any bearing on the final story. If you've planted seeds that never came to fruition, however, scrap them. Even if you had a great idea for a story in Pangaea if the characters never picked up that ball and ventured there, you shouldn't force them into it now. Again, keep your imagination open with the players and find out what's really important to them. Make a chronicle, which characters that they like to see, and that they can't wait to visit or revisit before the end.

Decide on what is going to happen during the last story. What event is going to mark the climax of the chronicle? *Werewolf* is about saving the world, and then it's a rush to identify that thing that a whole world is now going to be about: the battle. Are the characters going to lead an invasion of a Black Spiral Hive? Attempt to hold a Grand



## Running the Apocalypse

While a final battle on such a grand scale is hardly necessary to have an exciting conclusion, it is quite tedious to imagine the characters actually invading M'Kraas and cutting out the heart of the Wyrn. Or what if you wish to bring the Final Battle raining down on their heads.

One important consideration is to give the characters a clear goal. Werewolf is not a war game; it's a storytelling game, and that means that large-scale battles involving minis are not really this game's style. If the Apocalypse has begun, consider what the characters would do about it. Is there one target they should attempt to destroy? Or perhaps Coda targets them with surviving the Apocalypse to make sure that the Carus don't die out. Maybe they can even stop the Wyrn from eating the world (or the Weaver from creating it) if they can retrieve a mighty fetter from the Umbral reaches. In that case, the final battle becomes a race against time, and a battle against any Wyrn or Weaver mutants who might want to stop the characters.

If the Battle actually takes place, read up on "final battle" mythology and take notes. Ragnarok has already been mentioned, but what about the Book of Revelations, you might want to consider finding a copy of the Living Bible, as it's much easier to understand than the (flawed, misquote of the King James Version)? Most religions have a myth about the end of the world, and most of the time the gods themselves come down from Asgard (or wherever) to settle old scores, crush their enemies, and generally make trouble. The World of Darkness should be no different. Perhaps ancient vampires rise from their graves to consume whole cities. Maybe the giant statue at the site of the Awakening in Washington D.C. rips itself from the ground and goes on a rampage. The Ver should be the least of the Carus' worries during the Apocalypse; the humans are about to find out the truth anyway.

Another major issue you must consider before running an Apocalyptic story is: Can it be stopped? Either way, there are advantages and disadvantages.

If the Final Battle cannot be stopped, the whole game changes. Unless you have been running the entire chronicle up to this point with the final Battle in mind, everything that happened heretofore is for naught, and that can be very frustrating for the players. Do not run the Apocalypse simply because you think it would be an exciting ending to the chronicle. If the Battle is unstoppable, find some way to give the characters hope. Give them something to fight for, even if it's only that they might destroy some powerful Wyrn creatures before dying themselves.

If you give the characters a way to prevent the Battle before total chaos ensues, beware of the "two-seconds-

## Code from a Machine

No matter what kind of end you choose for your chronicle, it's even for a short story. *Deus ex machina* occurs when a Storyteller-controlled character arrives to save the characters' lives. The problems here should be obvious: this plot device robs the character of his or her humanity. Smart? Yes. "Human"? No. The Storyteller takes control of the story so far away from the players that they don't even have a hope of influencing it.

The players and their characters are the heart and soul of the chronicle. It does not matter how good a character the Storyteller has created, if how well she can destroy him. Never use powerful characters to steal the pack's thunder. They are the stars of the show, and they deserve better than that.

Of course, if they call up inilly and ask you to come save their necks, that's different. But then, if you can save them, they're not in any real danger of dying, and they can't complain.

"In-the-timer" effect. Innumerable action movies end with a race against the clock: only to see the hero disarm the bomb/become the Ork/hit up the alien mother ship two seconds before the "explosion." It can be done, but even when it is, it can be instead perhaps a preventative measure simply evens the odds a bit for the Carus. Perhaps it goes to a battle. For example, maybe the pack stumbles on a way to free the Wyrn from the Weaver's clutches. The Wyrn might still wreck the world in the process, but then there might be something left over.

## Aftermath

When all is said and done, the last Black Spiral vanquished, the fallen characters buried, what happens then? Where does the troupe go from there?

As Storyteller, answer any questions the players have about the game. Chances are there are plot points they did not understand that they would like clarified. Spell the answers to them. Now that the story is over, there is no harm in letting them "behind the curtain," so to speak.

You should have some questions for the players, as well. Ask them "How did I do?" Get feedback from them, find out what they loved about the chronicle, and, more importantly, what they think you need to work on. Don't take offense if the players have a say with you long enough to finish a chronicle, they probably had a great time overall.

You may wish to make a break from Storytelling for a while. One of the other players might like a run in the director's chair anyway, perhaps with a different game. Take the opportunity to participate in a chronicle, probably with some new appreciation for what both the players and the Storyteller must do.





Though the hero may win the day, it is his terms  
that he must live by. Men  
know that evil comes in all shapes and can, of course, shift  
shapes at will. Evil may enter the world in the guise

Richard Fries and Arthur Ortiz (editors)  
*American Indian Myths and Legends*

## The Triad

“the spirit world,” and “people who turn into wolves” die. It is one of the basic elements that makes Werewolf what it is. Without the Triad, there’d be no impending Apocalypse, no threat to our world, really, there’d be much less for a werewolf pack to do, and the spirit world would be profoundly less interesting besides. Two out of three of the Triad are forces that spawn legions of antagonists for the average pack of Ghouls, and the third isn’t even the rally

For all that, the Triad isn’t easy to pigeonhole. Werewolf isn’t a game about clearly identifiable Good and Evil. The W is no true friend, nor the G a true enemy. It’s just in such dire straits that they’re forced to find themselves defending it, but of necessity, there are spirits allied to W and Weaver both that are more ally than enemy.

the truth is no matter is that the cosmic dance Wym, Weaver and Wld is a complicated one, early as it plays out on Earth. The Triad is countless antagonists disservice to these directions of Creation, and their influence down the line of the W.

If there’s any way to win the Apocalypse at all, he thanks to a deeper understanding of the Triad they should be doing, where they’ve gone wrong to get their pack on track. In chronicling the journey, the hope of winning the Apocalypse is key to show your players in-game things that they can understand. And in chronicles where the hope, only the possibility of racking up an impressive resume of deeds before your glorious end, it’s

### Other Resources

If you pardon the seemingly shameless self-promotion, the principles we world-builders have covered here are also examined in further detail in the *Book of the Wyrn*, *Book of the Weaver*, *Book of the Wyld* and *Subsidiaries: A Guide to Pontex*. Although we've made great effort in this chapter to avoid redundancy and give Storytellers the most helpful distillations of the information in question, a single chapter by nature can't provide as much detail as these sourcebooks. The three books of the Triad (and the *Subsidiaries* spin-off) are by no means necessary for a *Werewolf* chronicle, but for those who want the most information possible on the subject of antagonists, they're hard to beat. We apologize to the self-serving recommender, but I can't thank you for your patience.

### Expanding Horizons

One gray truth is that the Triad lend themselves to some fairly unimaginative stories, if not handled carefully. It's painfully easy to let a chronicle devolve into a repetition of "Look, That object/person/animal of the Weaver/Wyrn/Wyld. We should destroy/kill/pro-

After a while, these tasks take much work, and the players seem to enjoy it. But if you're interested in presenting the Triad as something more than a duo of antagonist spawn/genre trappings and a quest object, it doesn't

do it. By stressing the Triad's multiplicity and their less-than-all-encompassing earthly influence, you can help your players see the Triad in the light they deserve.

### Multiplicity

One of the most fundamental concepts behind the Triad is that they operate on a cosmic scale, according to some legends the three of them essentially run the Universe itself. And because of that scale, each of the three is not larger than the named apply a simple word like "is" or "Creation." Just as Gaea is both desert and glacier and swamp, each member of the Triad has a multitude of facets that express the whole.

Be very careful if making absolute statements about the Triad; those can easily limit your game's spiritual aspect in unhealthy ways rather than providing helpful guidelines. A statement like "The Wyld is Creation, so therefore it cannot destroy" is not only inaccurate (the Wyld is more than Creation) it's utterly unable to do interesting things with the Wyld. A spontaneous outbreak of flesh-eating bacteria can be seen as very Wyld (as might a natural disaster — do you really

want to rule out the possibility of either just because of an off-handed absolute statement of "fact"?)

The multiplicity of the Triad is your friend. A Garou or Balance can detect as just as much "of the Wyrn" as a spirit spawned by a Maely in Incarnae; a spirit of technological innovation might be "of the Weaver" and it might be "of the Wyld." By showing your players the different aspects of each Triad force, you encourage them to think more about what it really means to be ascribed to one of the Triad. And when your players start recitate these different facets, they begin using that knowledge to their advantage. The puny Garou revert to the Wyrn-spirits they should be rather than the Wyrn-spirits they are, discerning the magical elements of the Weaver from those that are necessary and worthy of preservation and so on. As noted before, this is some of the most useful work they can be doing if they actually want to win the Apocalypse, not just die gloriously.

### Earthly Influence

It's easy to fall into a certain mindset when working around the struggles of the Triad: namely, the assumption that everything of any significance is "of" one of the Triad, bolstering its cosmological patron's power to contend with every minor goal it achieves on earth. Now admittedly, assigning a Triad affinity or allegiance (whether or not the person or entity in question is aware of it) is kind of fun, but when you start asking questions like "So are the Imbued of the Balance Wyrn, or what?" more seriously than "Oh, well, if you can run on the machines

Remember, in a perfectly functioning universe, most everything in the physical world would likely be equal parts Wyrn, Weaver and Wyld. A healthy person would have a set of horns granted by the Weaver, the capacity for growth and procreation (granted by the Wyld) and the ultimate fate of death so that the cycle could continue (granted by the Wyrn). Now, since the Wyrn has its ability to properly function as Balance (or so the story goes), this perfect universe is now impossible, but the imbalance that the Garou fight against isn't as simple as it might seem. An ordinary person, an animal, a philosophical idea — all these can be "of" either Wyrn, Wyld, nor Weaver.

This is, by the way, the main reason that werewolves tend to be so nervous or trigger-happy when they sense the "taint" of one of the Triad on a person, supernatural being or section of the world. In a perfect world, one that had no need of Garou, such beings or places would be few and far between. The presence of Triad taint implies a problem, the sort of problem that the Changing Breeds were allegedly created to resolve. The wise Garou, when confronted with such a "tainted" entity or locale, first asks himself why the taint is present, and then asks himself

what he can do to resolve the trouble (if indeed the unusual scent indicates a problem.) Not all shapeshifters are this wise, of course, but it would be doing the Changing Breeds a disservice to assume that even the wisest elders don't act with at least a little forethought.

## *The Wyrn*

The Wyrn is the leading candidate for "most misunderstood member of the Triad," simply because it is, and has been, so many different things to so many different shapeshifters. It has been the Balance Wyrn,

personification of careful destruction in the interest of a smoothly running universe. It has become Corruption, the embodiment of Destruction gone wrong. Some have called it Entropy or Death, others associate it with Madness, Hatred or even Evil. The Wyrn is all of these things, and not truly any one of them.

Once nearly the Balance Wyrn, the terrible sleeping Wyrn and Weaver alike, the Wyrn has now become the Corrupter Wyrn, a force of spiritual as well as physical decay. According to Garou cosmology, the Wyrn's consciousness has been lost to madness, trapped within the web of the Weaver. Its effort to escape has given its darkest drives and aspects lives of their own, splitting them into new heads of the Hydra: the Triatic Wyrms, and the Urge Wyrms.

As a result, the Wyrn is stricken with something akin to multiple personality disorder—but because of the scale of the entity, each one of its separate "personalities"

whether it be Long neck or serpent-necked. Most shapeshifters who use the name "Hydra" to distinguish the Wyrn—as it is now, divided and mad, from the Wyrn—as it was, the great serpent of balance. For those Garou who know anything about the Wyrn's true nature, the task at hand is not "killing the Wyrn"—it's severing the twisted heads that have sprung from its body.

## *The Heads of the Hydra*

As noted in the *Werewolf* rulebook, the three Triatic Wyrms are the primary "children" of the Wyrn, the three great heads that grow from its body. The first, Beast-of-War, is the "Courage Wyrn," it is associated with violence and destruction. It is the least subtle of the Triatic Wyrms, and it has little need of subtlety, every war, every act of mindless violence, every grim deed for reasons other than survival, feeds Beast-of-War, strengthening it for the day it can break free and smash Creation into dust. Many Black Spiral Dancers revere Beast-of-War above all other aspects of the Wyrn, hailing it as the Father of the Apocalypse and the spiritual patron of their mad crusade.

The second Triatic Wyrn is Eater-of-Souls, the "Consuming Wyrn." It is the aspect of an wholesome hunger, of the desire to draw everything into itself and

thus make all the universe into the Wyrn. Greed, gluttony, lust and desire of all sorts fuel its power. Unlike its brethren, Eater-of-Souls once managed to manifest itself physically on Earth, where it surely would have devoured the entire planet if not banished by the sacrifice of the earth-Croatan tribe. Although this act weakened Eater-of-Souls severely, the tape of consciousness committed to Earth is the net that continues to strengthen it so that it may someday return. The naked greed of rentex and incorporation is one of the strongest allies Eater-of-Souls has.

The final Triatic Wyrn is in many ways the most dangerous, for it is both the most subtle and the most self-aware. The Defiler Wyrn is the expression of ultimate corruption, of degradation and misery and a spiritual as it is notably active in the schemes of its followers, who are in many ways the worst of the Wyrn's servants. The Defiler Wyrn hates innocence, virtue and spiritual strength, and works to tarnish and corrupt them into vices, emotions that serve its own purpose. The Defiler Wyrn has its adherents among all the followers of the Wyrn, although variousish or antithetical to its goals. Loathsome Black Spiral Dancer factions and packs of looting-creating flames are among its favorites.

Below the Triatic Wyrms are the Urge Wyrms, manifestations of each of the Wyrn's darkest desires. As the Wyrn sought to escape the Weaver's web, its basic emotions splintered off into separate "heads" of the Wyrn, like tough being forced through a steel mesh. Each Urge Wyrn and its servants do indeed strive to work for the ultimate freedom of the Wyrn, but the Wyrn against came first, after all, how can a manifestation of corrupt Desire itself set aside its own urge to promote corrupt Desires in others? The Urge Wyrms work to make themselves stronger by fostering their own needs in others. Some Garou scholars fervently hope that the Wyrn manifested as yet undiscovered Urges of somewhat more intrinsic and potentially keystonelike genetic Wyrn itself, but the evidence for such benevolent Urge Wyrms is sorely lacking. The recognized Urge Wyrms are as follows:

- Fochok, the Urge of Fear
- Vorus, the Urge of Greed
- Mahstrac, the Urge of Power
- Karnua, the Urge of Desire
- Abhorra, the Urge of Hatred
- Angu, the Urge of Cruelty
- Baakshan, the Urge of Violence
- Khaalorbbh, the Urge of Jealousy
- Psochik, the Urge of Lust
- Sykava, the Urge of Paranoia
- Gree, the Urge of Despair
- Letnargg, the Urge of Apathy

The final four greater aspects of the Wyrms are those that were born when the Wyrms' corruptive force contacted the four elemental forces of air, earth, fire, and water. Huga, the essence of Smog; H'nugg, the essence of Sludge; H'mas, the essence of Bilefire; and W'akaaa, the essence of Toxin. These four elemental forces are the corrupt elemental spirits that serve them, are the aspects of the Wyrms that have the most to gain from pollution of the natural world, and are therefore most interested in your activities. Rumor has it that there are two more essences relevant to the As an spirit world corrupted versions of metal and wood, although the Garou Nation has yet to formally recognize these.

### *"The Wyrms Did It!"*

One of the most common misconceptions about the Wyrms is a matter of taking the Garou too literally. Werewolves, and indeed many other Changing Breeds, tend to play the poor state of the world at the Wyrms' feet, to blame the Wyrms itself for the actions of its offspring and devotees. Although technically true, this can lead to the impression that the Wyrms pays much more attention to the details of the world than it actually does.

Consider the plight of the drug-addicted prostitute slowly becoming a fumer. Although most werewolves would easily admit the Wyrms to blame, they don't usually mean that they think the Wyrms itself walked down and commanded a Bane to corrupt this particular woman in a power—and thereby possess in. More likely, the Bane attempting to possess her did so of its own volition, given its ingrained need to foster the spiritual vice or "sin" it stands for. It's possible that the Bane may have even directed to this woman by a higher power, but said higher power is likely a persona, servant of Karmata at best, probably not the Defiler Wyrms itself, and certainly not the Wyrms itself in its might.

Use this hierarchy to your advantage. The greater the threat of the Hydra, the more potent the corruption. Convey this by starting small, then gradually showing your players more and more of the hierarchy of corruption that is the Hydra. Save the direct intervention of an Ugg Wyrms, the Maelp'ra incarnation, for the hell of the Wyrms itself, the end of the world, or even a chronicle. Not only will the threat be more powerful, but the players will also gain a greater understanding of how much the Wyrms is and isn't directly responsible for. They can continue to use simple terms like "The Wyrms forces" and "This serves the Wyrms for cause/sake," but without assuming that the phrases have nothing beyond the most obvious.

And when your players realize that so much spiritual corruption occurs without the Wyrms actually thinking about it—then, with any luck, you will be rewarded with a most satisfying shudder.

And when your players realize that so much spiritual corruption occurs without the Wyrms actually thinking about it—then, with any luck, you will be rewarded with a most satisfying shudder.

### *When to Use the Wyrms (and When Not To)*

The big advantage of the Wyrms (and all spirits) is that it's a fine motivator. Not only can it threaten outright violence, but it can threaten to spare the threat of a Black Spiral Cavern tale to that of a captured Dancer lying at a character's feet, manipulating him on his "pretty sister"—and then

too. A burgeoning Wyrms threat is a great way to get your players' attention and launch into an evening of savage action and horror. Horror and monsters are optimal "blood and guts" opponents, should you want a dirty, bloody Wyrms-as-Destroyer game.

However, you should also use the Wyrms subtly, not only for contrast, but also to reinforce that the tangle, bilefire and ichor are only a portion of the Wyrms' arsenal. Bones are particularly effective for stories that emphasize the quiet, seductive aspects of Wyrms as Corrupter, but clever Black Spiral Dancers and fumes work well, too—as do humans, if supernatural beings who have no idea what the Wyrms is, much less that its deeds are directly strengthening it. And certainly prepare stories where the Wyrms is best "fought" not through direct combat, but through combating its spiritual influence: helping out at a clinic for abused women, feeding the hungry and homeless, even helping clean up a neighborhood. *Werewolf is a game about spiritual—and saving the human spirit is as worthy a goal as tearing the throat out of a corrupt land developer (if not more so).*

By all means, avoid the temptation of having the Wyrms' forces directly at work in every encounter with the spiritually corrupt—vampires are an excellent example of antagonists that are in many ways "of the Wyrms," but who know nothing of the Apocalypse. Dealing with a pimp or who buys and sells adolescents as blood toys for other teenagers is as wicked as it is with the themes of Wyrmsish corruption and defilement, but if the story is run without even a glimpse of a Bone or fume, all the better. Humans are equally wonderful antagonists for stories of this nature—save for the fact that when the Garou finally track them down, they put up considerably less of a fight. Stories such as this help emphasize that the fight against the Wyrms is fought on all levels, not merely on the most literal—they emphasize that the Wyrms, like all spirits, is not just its member-

what it stands for.

### *And the Balance Wyrms?*

Considering the once noble purpose of the Wyrms, it may be tempting to bring in some agents that still serve the Balance Wyrms as it was, to showcase that the Wyrms' corruption is not inherent. Old Wyrms-spirits that have resisted corruption are the obvious choice.

choice, but these should be few and far between. It's no easy thing, availing your now-corrupt brethren for pillaging an enemy. Such sports are best used as the objects of great contests: potential sources of information and power that might be the Garou's last hope for defeating the Wyrm. And, of course, they'd register to Sense Wyrm, which would be yet another way to not be the same thing as detecting evil intent.

But as far as mortal agents — well, there's a little secret.

In a way, the Garou — indeed, almost all the Changing Breeds — are the closest thing to an active force upholding the deals of the Balance Wyrm to us. They defend the Wyld — not because they believe it's their friend, but because it is the weakest of the Triad. They fight the Wyrm and the Weaver, trying to cut them back to size. Most hope to cure the Wyrm rather than destroying it, so that Balance might be restored.

It just goes to show you that being "of the Wyrm" is sometimes a good thing.

## The Weaver

Although the Weaver is a much less multifaceted entity than the Wyrm, it still suffers from the same basic problem: it is not what it should be. The Weaver's original purpose of giving structure to the unformed, handing the laws and certainties of the universe, has been perverted. In its purest state, the Weaver represents reason, science, law and order — all concepts with the potential for good as well as ill. But with the Weaver's malice comes a perversion of these ideals. The Weaver is now the force of reason that strangles out possibility, of science that directly opposes mysticism, of law and order pursued for their sake above all other ideals.

This does not of course mean that science and technology are considered "evil" in the World of Darkness, even in Werewolf's cosmology. A werewolf can haul a cab, fire a pistol or use an ATM without having sin red on his conscience. Technology is not inherently evil, and extreme elders, particularly those of the more Wyld-apsed tribes, but it's generally held that technology and science are now innately corrupt or to blame for the proliferation of these things, and the way in which they've been used.

As an example, take the pursuit of medicine and science meant to delay, cure and eradicate disease. Certainly healing the sick and easing the pain of the old is a worthy cause. But in the World of Darkness, the Weaver's malice influences humanity to develop such advancements heedless of whether or not humans are morally capable of handling such a respon-

sibility. If the humans preserve their own lives without regarding the tribulations, thus causing more of a population problem, that's no concern of the Weavers.

And the Weaver's influence has also helped to wind up in the hands of the richest and most powerful, keeping them in power indefinitely while strangling later generations' chances of determining their destiny. What does the Weaver care? As a result, one of the best intentions is misused and abused, contributing to the poor state of the world. The Weaver's idea of progress throws off all natural cycles, puts power to destroy the world in the hands of those who aren't sufficiently prepared to use it responsibly.

The Garou see this trouble, too, and that's why they consider the Weaver as she is now an enemy. Most werewolves suffer Renown penalties for relying too much on "Weaverish" power rather than their own abilities; it's considered unwise to place yourself in the enemy's power. Cities expand but don't contract, urban sprawl devours new land all the time, while the areas at the heart of the city corrode and die, turning the Wyrm's playground. The Weaver's influence is a very real concern, and not for the stereotypical "environmental science bad, forest good" reasons popularly cited.

## When to Use the Weaver (and When Not To)

The Weaver and its minions are perhaps the most versatile group of supporting cast in *Werewolf*. They can be the worst of enemies or the best of friends — a though admittedly the latter's likely only for *Garou Walkers*. Whereas *Garou* can easily feel a moral obligation to oppose the Triad or Urge Wyms, opposing the Weaver is less a matter of morals and more a matter of ethics and practicality. This allows for some juicy moral dilemmas: trying to reform, restrain. Does a man of science deserve to die if his work threatens the balance between human and nature, even if the answer is always clear, despite the scientist's willingness to make that judgement call?

For most werewolves, the Weaver represents the alien — the man ideals taken to the spiritual extreme. Using the natural cycle Weaver-focused stories are optimal for stressing this sense of alienation and oppression. The Weaver can also be used to challenge how your players' perceptions — are all labor-saving devices necessarily a good thing? Do we really need cars and highways? Or if your players are more laid back in outlook, you can challenge the assumptions just as easily: is all progress really bad? What if a particularly perceptive human who could make real progress in the fight for *Canis* was born with an ailment that would be fatal without Weaver-medicine? It seems strange to classify the Weaver as flexible, but the trick she serves in the average Werewolf campaign is just that.

Remember that the Weaver can be as subtle or as unsubtle as the story demands. Toss your player on edge, you can easily describe a very faint but persistent dragon in their characters' ears while they're in the Penumbra of an urban area. Although certainly a no threat, this sound neatly conveys the unrelenting, pervasive nature of the Weaver. On the other hand, you can certainly get the players' attention by setting a massive "home-and-a-half" spirit-spirit to the size of an eighteen-wheeler on their heels. But even though such a threat is more "mixed" and can't forget to make the pursuer just as relentless, in order to properly convey the Weaver's unyielding, mad obsession.

Also, not everything scientific/technological or even human should be "of the Weaver." Although most man-made structures appear as webs in the Penumbra, if they appear at all, spiritual "Weaver-taint" should be present only when appropriate. A log cabin or a deep woods shouldn't evoke the Weaver, even if there's a lightning bolt or a meteorite or a computer with internet access a touch of the Weaver's webs would be appropriate.

And finally, remember that the Weaver represents Progress just as much as she represents Stagnation. Scientific innovation is the finest proof that the Weaver is more than just unyielding form — it is the Weaver's finest tool for hammering (or locking down) unbridled potential into limited form. Each scientific advancement may add to the knowledge of the world, and seemingly more possibilities.

Although once a thing is proved to be true, a number of "impossibilities" are removed as possibilities forever. In a way, the Weaver represents evolution and even change.

The question is whether or not her idea of evolution is truly what's best for the universe.

As always, remember that the Weaver is a thing of spirits and formless — intentions (near as much as actual implementation). When asking yourself if something should be "of the Weaver", don't think in terms of the letter of the law, but in the spirit.

## *The Wyld*

At first glance, the Wyld seems to be the junior member of the Triad in more ways than one. It's not a proper antagonist such as the Wyrm or Weaver, it

does have more raw power near as organized as the Wyrm or Weaver. It's still stronger in places, but across most of the world (at least the portions of the world that your chronicle is likely to explore), the primal force of creation and flux is badly in the hands of the Wyrm. The Wyld's responsibility is to protect and nurture the Wyld places, in the interests of balance if not of life. Some tribes such as the Black Furies take this duty even more seriously.

And in the course of defending the Wyld against the depredations of its stronger, more rapacious siblings, some Garou and some players, it can seem to get the impression that the Wyld is the really evil. After all, it represents (among other things) fairly benign concepts such as the birth and growth. It isn't listed among the antagonists in the rulebook. Some even reason that the Wyld is more "of Gaia" than the others are, that it like Gaia is the humnality of werewolves everywhere.

This preconception is, like many others, not very accurate.

Like the other members of the Triad, the Wyld itself does not have the interests of the Garou — or of any other sentient race on Gaia's face — in mind at all. The Wyld simply is. It does its best to fulfill the role ordained for it at the beginning of creation, and it else be damned. If a pack of werewolves, or their caern, would be adversely affected by a sudden burst of Wyld energy in the area, the Wyld isn't going to scale back its efforts to grow and thrive there any more. If a tornado would change course to avoid the caern, in fact, getting the tornado to change course would probably be easier for the Garou; weather-spirits have Gaia's best interests at heart, but Wyld-spirits do not. The Wyld answers to its own inner mandate and nothing else.

Needless to say, this tendency can make the Wyld difficult for werewolves. A werewolf sworn to defend the Wyld is bound to protect something that might turn or turn at any moment, for no understandable reason what-soever. The Wyld itself is just as alien as the other Triad members, a Celestine so vast that its must power at lagglings are little more than the "thoughts" racing along what might be described as its nervous system. Wyld spirits can be negotiated with, of course, they operate more closely to the Garou's own level, and "think" in a more understandable fashion. But they are inevitably reflections of the Wyld itself, and share in its chaotic nature.

In all the world, few things are more sobering than the Garou theory that the world is what it is today because two of the fundamental forces of the universe were driven mad in creation — and the third has been as near as mad as makes no difference all upon.

## *Antagonist or Ally?*

Like the other members of the Triad, the Wyld is amoral. It acts on what can best be described as instinct, pursuing its original purpose — to create raw potential and act as an agent of change — to the exclusion of all other goals. Whatever overall consciousness guides the Wyld, it's not likely it is no more aware of the Garou's efforts than an elephant is aware of the antibodies that defend it from disease.

Yes, the Garou defend the Wyld from the depredations of its siblings. Yes, some strike pacts with the Wyld.

spirits and call these spirits “friend” — after a fashion. However, the Wyld itself does not respond with gratitude. The difference between a priest with a Wyld spirit in sequence with the Wyld is roughly equal to the difference between one’s relationship with one’s pet dog and one’s relationship with Nature itself.

As Storyteller, you have the remarkable freedom to manifest Wyld as either a gradual change in your chronicles and as an uncaring hostile force in others. The Wyld is in the mudslide that levels a village of innocents just as much as it is in the spark of life that thrives at the heart of a waste city. You can keep your players guessing as much as you like. Eventually, they realize, to come to the same conclusion that the majority of the Jarou Nation has made — that there’s little gratitude to be had in deterring the Wyld, but it must be done anyway. The alternative — a world without the creation of new things or the force of change — is too horrible.

### *The Wyld Is Not Gaea*

It bears repeating. It’s fairly easy to confuse “the Wyld” with “the wild” — to assume that the Wyld is also the force of the wilderness itself, the spiritual reflection of the portions of the world as yet unshaped by humans. From the strictest Werewolf viewpoint, this isn’t the case.

Werewolves tend to look at it in these terms: The Wyld represents the *potential* for life, the Weaver represents the *laws* by which such life must abide, the Wyrin reflects the *end* of life and the *warning* of the cycle — but Gaea is life. Gaea is the soul of the universe, the high-ghor portion of the cosmic being that reacts to forces such as love and beauty, although some cite her as the original author of cruelty and other negative emotions as well. Werewolves also more often paint Gaea as capable of emotions herself, particularly the emotions of a mother devoted to her creation, than they consider the Triat capable of such higher ideas.

In the default interpretation of the cosmic myth, the Wyld is strong in untouched natural places not because it is the soul of those places, but because the Weaver is correspondingly weak there. Gaea is also strong in these places, partly for the same reasons, but also because these sites are where the natural world runs at its “purest” — the ecosystems functioning as they have, for as long as possible since the world began. The two share a similar interest — but this doesn’t make them the same.

### *When to Use the Wyld (and When Not To)*

The Wyld is actually one of the more important motifs in Werewolf — and yet it isn’t always appropriate to have Wyld energies or spirits making a personal appearance in your chronicles. One of the fundamental problems in the state of the world is that the Wyld is beleaguered, the weak member of the Triat that runs the

risk of being annihilated or overruled entirely. It’s difficult to convey this desperate state of affairs if you have Wyld spirits popping up as supporting cast every session.

For that matter, the Wyld will be a more effective tool in your Storytelling repertoire if you use it not only sparingly, but also evocatively. The Wyld should set the players on edge at least a little bit — its manifestations are methods unpredictable and its power often startlingly dangerous. Consider the frightening spontaneity of a tornado, the random nature of an outbreak of illness, the uncaring nature of a flash flood. While most of the manifestations of the Wyld are dangerous, those in the doomed area, they could be — the chance is always there. The players (and their characters) should feel the risk inherent in any Wyld manifestation, it’s the double-edged nature of the Wyld that makes it so interesting.

The Wyld is obviously well suited to stories that involve strange patches of land, sudden natural disasters, irrational outbreaks of chaos and other such motifs. Its alien nature complements the unfamiliar settings where it’s likely to thrive, a trait you can use to your advantage. The farther the characters get from the civilized areas, the more players are comfortable with the more the players will themselves feel slightly out of their element — an emotional state that, while rarely powerful, will work to your advantage when introducing the Wyld elements yourself. The wilder (or Wylder) the land, the less what the players might fear — which is all for the best.

As noted in Chapter Two, the Wyld also has its place in urban chronicles — no city is strong in the Wyld, and surely the Weaver and Wyrin are even stronger. The weaker thing’s influence there, but the Wyld is part of urban life nonetheless. It appears in the random accidents, good and bad, that befall a city’s inhabitants, and thrives wherever the Weaver’s laws of conformity alter, such as in the slums and abandoned areas of an inner city. Feel free to use the Wyld in an urban environment just as you’d use it elsewhere — to create tension, but also hope

### *Which Is Bigger, Gaea or the Triat?*

The answer to this question has been widely interpreted, vaguely. Some Storytellers prefer to interpret their cosmology such that the Triat is universal, whereas Gaea is limited to the immediate vicinity of the city, both physical and spiritual. Others prefer the idea that Gaea is the Universe and that the Triat are her wayward children — albeit children with the power to slay their mother, should it come to that.

The Changing Breeds themselves don’t know the answer, often hotly disagree. The GMs don’t worry about my “book-legal” right to bring a hammer to the question — your answer is the one that matters.

## Pentex

Trust him not with your secrets who when left alone  
will hurt you more than ten men at a point.

— Johann Kaspar Lavater

It always starts small.

In the course of their duties of protecting and clearing up the lands around their caern, a pack of werewolves begins, among other things, to start picking off the humans who are doing the most ecological damage to the land. In some cases, a little Kintfolk activism or interference is all that's required; in other cases, stealth and misdirection can turn a little offense into a full-on assault. In more extreme cases, a little sabotage or eco-terrorism is the order of the day. It may not be the most efficient way of doing things, but it appeals to the Garou desire to see their enemies founder and fall.

And as the pack continues these various actions, they start to notice a few familiar names. When they travel farther from their caern or exchange news with Garou of other septs, they start noticing that a few corporations seem to be more ruthlessly callous toward the environment, more brutally conscious of efficiency and the bottom line. A few names start working into the pack's vocabulary: Enkron, Magdon, O'Tolley's, R... rhoo.

But as the investigation continues, the pack finds worse things. They find that these corporations follow the aggressive "take people need our products" tactic a bit more seriously than other companies do. They discover that some of these corporations have hidden guards at their manufacturing plants, tomors that couldn't quite feasibly pass for human during a job interview. They also discover signs that someone in upper management must know a few things about summoning Bones to act as golems.

Then they start to find hints that there's something bigger behind these corporations. Something larger and more powerful than these little industrial machines — an entity that's able to give these corporate giants' CEOs orders with impunity. They start crossing paths with elite black-ops teams of killers, assassins targeting them as "potential problems." And some of these elite teams give them the hint that supernatural's patient number one among them.

And once the pack's finally aware of the tremendous scale of the threat facing them — of the sheer natural and political power this entity can bring to bear on the Garou and their lands — they finally have a name for this most insidious of enemies.

### Running Pentex

The above description may not be the detailed way that Pentex enters the average little niche-bit formist

were-w... yes, that's exactly how they found out about Werewolf's corporate behemoth of an antagonistic organization. It wasn't because a giant van with the Pentex logo rolled up to the caern and started disgorging wave after wave of heavily armed tomors in snappy corporate uniforms, that's for sure.

Pentex is all all but invisible megacorporation. Pentex itself makes no products that you see in the store yes, towns and subsidiaries that produce many of the household name products of the World of Darkness, but Pentex itself is a largely administrative body. Most people go their entire lives without ever seeing the Pentex logo. And that's exactly the point.

Where the Black Spiral Dancers are the dark counterpoint to the Garou, and the Banes are the embodiment of spiritual corruption, Pentex serves the role of the mostly mundane, mostly subtle threat that operates quietly in the human world. Much of Pentex's evil is the same sort of devotion to the "bottom line" that you see in companies in our own world: simple, easy-to-understand selfishness. At the lower levels, Pentex and its subsidiaries could be any disreputable corporation in our own world — but the key difference is that the higher you go, the more Pentex becomes like a twisted conspiracy movie. The managers start becoming more and more intelligent, but no less malicious. Their various... no, against the environment and humanity can no longer be attributed to shortsightedness. As the characters uncover more and more of the nasty little secrets hidden at all levels of the organization, the plots to destroy the good-natured conspiracy theories like oil companies suppressing cars that run on water. The truth — at least in the World of Darkness — is considerably nastier.

Before we get to the nuts and bolts of who works for Pentex, what they do and why, let's consider effective ways to use the shadowy company and its subsidiaries.

**Werewolf game.** This is the big picture: the details can wait a few minutes.

### Cardinal Rules for Using Pentex:

- Pentex, thematically, is the stuff of conspiracy novels. Greedy entrepreneurs using every thing within their power to leverage their financial and political power, cautious corporate decisions, secret cabals of *People in Power* — that's the stuff of the *Dark Conspiracy*. Pentex and its people have plots within (you guessed it) more plots. Everyone seems to work together, but there are always secret dissenters and plans afoot. Player characters may get drawn into some of these plots and think they've got a handle on what's really going on behind the scenes, but chances are, they're only going to scratch the surface.



• So, maybe you don't want to let its name be used in the field. Even people who work directly for Pentex itself. Like their First Teams or other agents, don't run around in t-shirts sporting the Pentex logo. Any werewolf (or other being, for that matter) who finds out that an entity called Pentex actually owns the chemical company Magidon is either lucky or lucky. Either option is a lot of trouble for the snoop in question. The powers that be at Pentex would find out, and then someone is digging around in the trash.

• There's a lot more to it than death. Pentex can corrupt, manipulate, or even an opponent, though it's usually more effective, and enjoyable, than simple murder. Consider the delightful arts of blackmail and intimidation should a character find out too much about Pentex or a subsidiary. Poisoning a valuable person or a valuable piece of equipment could be a lot more effective than simply killing them.

It's so effective a "penalty" (and more effective because this action will probably mean the death or retirement of his character) ponder having a "ringer" who looks like what the character looks like, but for reasons other than being a ringer.

• Denial. It's a key word in Pentex. They always have a rational explanation for any incident of mayhem, plus a happy coincidence to take all the blame. Be warned, though, that if you overuse Pentex and always deny the players the chance to get some revenge they're going to get bored and frustrated. Don't just do it, but talk about what the company is doing as your game progresses, and then one day, if you think it's appropriate, do let the players blow the lid off it. It should be a great moment in your chronicle. With Pentex, paranoia is a lot more fun than it is in most other games.

• Not everyone is a villain. Some are simply hapless workers slaving away the best they can so they don't get downsized in the next "corporate restructuring." Plenty are awful examples of humanity, to be sure. The job is a lot harder than it looks, but not a lot of people are willing to do it. Some are just plain evil. There are those that are worse — former willing servants of the Wyrm, or people who have been corrupted by the Wyrm, or people who have been corrupted by the Wyrm. But the worst thing that can be said about a great deal

of Pentex employees is that they've learned too well to keep their head down and not make trouble. To paraphrase the old saying, evil prospers when good people stand by and do nothing.

- Pentex like any good company, diversifies. Not everything they do has the stamp of the Wyrm upon it. Some of the antagonists in a Pentex story might be minions of the Weaver (Pentex supports much advanced, high technology and homogeneity), while others might be a third party (such as a vampire's catspaws). Many more might have no supernatural ties at all; they're simply doing things that endanger Gaea, whatever other we're trying to get at stake.

- Tension is a good thing. You want the players to have butterflies in their stomachs each time they oppose a Pentex agent or face from one of the subsidiaries. They should be concerned and worried about the outcome; it shouldn't be a walk in the park. What the minions from Pentex don't have in terms of brute strength, they do have in the form of information and certain dangerous pieces of technology in their side. They don't do a lot of research and can cook up foul toxins and weapons that really can hurt werewolf lives. Play up this creepy factor as much as possible.

- Make it personal. A figurehead of one of the Pentex subsidiaries would make an ideal adversary; players will always be interested in your conspiratorial plots if these affect the characters in some direct way. Maybe this Storyteller character serves up a pack's plans to protect a certain wilderness area from a group of Kinfolk. Whatever the reason, the character is a thorn in the pack's side. Draw it out and let the danger reach a nice hot boiling point before having the big showdown.

- Throw out plenty of red herrings, but don't forget to actually let the characters discover some truths about Pentex and its subsidiaries along the way. If you don't let the werewolves feel they occasionally accomplish something, the players will get jaded and bored. You should probably have some sort of resolution in your mind even if it won't appear for a long while. Not much is worse than a conspiracy plotline that doesn't periodically have some closure to the loose ends.

- Believability. For a lot, Pentex is large and difficult enough for you as the Storyteller to decide just how you want to use them in your game. Do you want them to be the ultimate in shadowy gritty realism, or are their plots going to seem more like the most outlandish bad clichés? The answer, of course, is up to you; consider your mix of players and characters when talking Pentex to fit your individual chronicle.

### *Sources and Resources*

Movies and television shows focus on conspiracy themes, cover-ups and supernatural mysteries have a ways been popular. Just a few of the classics and newcomers you should consider watching for inspiration on running Pentex:

*The Insider* (thereby a must-read, not just for tactics, but also as proof that people don't need any motivation other than avarice to be "evil"); *A Civil Action: Conspiracy Theory* (Patrick Stewart as the villain is an extra bonus); *Enemy of the State*; *La Femme Nikita* (both television show and movie, which are very different); *The X-Files* and *The Lone Gunmen*; *Millennium: Murder at 1600*; *Erin Brockovich* (topical environmental destruction); *The Game*; *No Way Out*; *Ninth Gate*; *The Manchurian Candidate*; *Three Days of the Condor*; *All the President's Men*; *Citizen X*; *Crossed*; *Pain Blanket* and *True Lies*, campy but fun, and if it's too old for you, try *Blade*, *Evil Dead*, *Exorcist*, *do with that whole Roswell/Area 51 business*.

### *Pentex Goals*

So what exactly is it that Pentex and its subsidiaries hope to accomplish? What's their bottom-line agenda?

Well, the first thing to establish is that "what Pentex wants" is kind of a misnomer. Most of its various agendas can be traced back to "what the Board of Directors want", which is a very different thing entirely. Each person on the Board of Directors has his or her own motivations, ambitions and personal image for "changing the world" to say nothing of those who're not. Generally though, the two main factors behind Pentex policy and action are those employees who know about and serve the Wyrm, and those who don't.

Those "in the know" are the vast minority at Pentex. It's entirely possible that there are people even on the Board who don't know what the Wyrm is, and would be terrified at the thought of being played as its puppets. Further, those Pentex figures who do know of the Wyrm (and who, in most cases, worship it) have their own variety of motivations. Some are sworn loyal to the face of the Wyrm; they know best (it is, after all, a *Maegh*, incarnate rather than high-ranking Wyrm spirit), others naively think they're the ones paying the Wyrm's fees for fools. The agendas of these "enlightened" executives are greatly but generally fit into a similar pattern: the desire to break the human spirit, making all of humanity an ideal market of consumers. When the world has nothing to offer that's more attractive than what Pentex can provide, Pentex will own the ultimate monopoly. When the "enlightened" order and their environment is destruc-

nive measure, it's often as much to destroy something else that might stand in the way of the new ideal "work environment" — and if those damned pesky Garro suffer from the measure, too, that's all the better.

The second group, and by far the more numerous, are those Pentex employees who don't know about (or with few exceptions, believe in) the supernatural. The majority of Pentex managers worship not the All-Consuming Wym, but the Almighty Dollar. These people just don't care about anything more than increasing their own profit margin, even if they phrase it in terms like "now I can buy that sports car I always dreamed of" or "now I can send my kids to a really prestigious college." Such characters should need little elaboration: there are plenty of colorful models in our own world to provide inspiration. The most salient point is, of course, that these people help empower and encourage Pentex's most avaricious and unethical projects, simply because it helps increase their own share of the pie. (Those managers that are more interested in their personal ethics than an increased paycheck don't last long at any of Pentex's subsidiaries.)

To accommodate their goals, Pentex subsidiaries do their best to keep competitive in the Information Age. Currently, Pentex pursues intelligence chiefly in communications (television, telephone and radio), imagery (photography, surveillance) and electronic means (computer data and the Internet). They use these arenas to determine their enemies' capabilities and intentions, analyze the results of opposing companies' projects and secrets and negate counter-espionage. The current corporate climate frowns on less subtle acts of psychological terrorism or blatant binding-fanes-intoxication, so corrupting regional managers who blatantly attract too much werewolf attention without achieving actual results are easily replaced.

Profits are up, and slowly but surely the top managers' information about werewolves is increasing. Not much could be worse for the player characters than to face an enemy with both real-world power and supernatural connections.

### *Pentex Bureaucracy*

Pentex is aware of divisions and subdivisions; each pursues its own projects and agendas more or less independently, though all are accountable to the subdivision and division directors, and ultimately to the executive director. The main picture includes the following divisions, with subdivisions noted in parentheses. For many more details see Book 4 of the Wym, Second Edition.

Each head of a division and subdivision sits on the board of directors, actually making Pentex a little different from its subsidiaries, where the executive

are the folks who end up as the board members — and most are ignorant of the various companies' true aims. Not unlike real-world companies, virtually no outside directors sit on the boards of subsidiaries. However, for the subsidiaries, the officers' identities are usually a matter of public record, which of course serves Pentex's needs perfectly, should a necessary screw-up, the chief officer and his or she are perfect fall guys.

### *The Executive Office*

The Executive division comprises the executive director, the president of the company and the CEO of Pentex. The director monitors how well the other divisions' goals are being met, holds veto power over all company policies and oversees board meetings.

### *Project Coordination (Public Relations and Finance)*

As the name implies, personnel in this division oversee the many ventures of Pentex and its subsidiaries. Project coordinators plan endeavors that will be in profit to the companies; they also monitor public perception of subsidiaries and make sure it is positive.

It is a coordination of efforts among personnel. This is the largest division of Pentex, and its director and subdivisions hold considerable power.

### *Acquisitions (Information Collection Systems)*

The Acquisitions division is self-explanatory, at least. The aim is to acquire, by whatever means necessary, companies that will benefit Pentex and its goals. The division uses corporate espionage and blackmail on a regular basis (like so many other megacorporations), and to this end, the Acquisitions operatives collect information and data on potential acquisitions or anything deemed useful for use as future ammo. This division also keeps an eye on the behavior of all Pentex employees, setting up "disappearances" if necessary, and arranging contacts among certain valued business partners (the occasional Black Spiral dancer or vampire has found its way into Pentex corporate culture).

### *Operations (Human Resources)*

The Operations division oversees the day-to-day affairs of Pentex, including monitoring subsidiaries on a regional basis. Management of work is done under this division, although indoctrination is probably a better word than training to describe the treatment of employees even those at the higher echelons. Upper-level management in Operations also works directly with subsidiary directors at Pentex's various underlying companies.

### *Special Projects (Project Iliad and Project Odyssey)*

The Special Projects division is the smallest entity within Pentex, but also the most potentially dangerous. It oversees various experiments and research projects, including a good deal of genetics and the

development of biotech. I had focuses on creating a more wild. Odyssey concentrates on the development of psychic abilities.

### *Other Units*

Pentex also has a number of 'floating' projects that can be most troublesome for the characters. These include the more maverick schemes of Pentex and its subsidiaries, so Storytellers should feel free to plan and develop these projects (or new ones) as they see fit.

#### **Project Aeneid**

Once a hopeful crossover endeavor between Projects Odyssey and Illud, the aim of Project Aeneid was to create a reproducing Pentecoxia Mini-Feeder and insert it into the brains of psychics. The end result would be a telepathic minor tactical agent by any standard, although test subjects demonstrated an inconvenient, insatiable appetite for a human brain matter. Recently though, the project has been suspended, although not from any ethical objections, but because of Spec Ops Projects, Harold Zettler deemed that the psychics in Project Odyssey were too valuable to sacrifice. This act received strong agreement from Kira Yamataka, director of Odyssey, but extreme dissent from the head of Illud, Francesco. Illud's top man is extremely anxious to get revenge on both his twin Yamataka, his boss. Zettler, for scrapping his pet project. Black Spirit, Chancer Philfox is a singularly distasteful creature, but he may be willing to sell out to wreak havoc on his enemies within Pentex. The enterprising Storyteller could portray this into a moral quandary for the werewolves here, as the cooperation with Francesco is enough to get some inside dirt on Pentex, or no.

#### **Pentex First Teams**

First Teams are cadres of highly trained agents who usually work in small units. Their usual objectives range from minor sabotage and all-out attacks on organizations to assaults on specific targets or packs related to the more common tasks of infiltration and deep secret network. They are generally a last resort, sent in when lesser methods just aren't getting the job done. Combat-oriented First Teams have had a dozen agents or more in each cadre; espionage teams typically include only two or three. In theory, a director can assemble squads with whatever specialties are needed for a particular mission, but in practice, pairs or trios of agents generally work better, working with each other and tend to stick together when possible. Specialties include computer hacking, organized thievery and similar types of tasks. If at all possible, a team will include a psychic from Project Odyssey. Most First Teams are considered as expendable as cannon fodder or the strike force. One change that Mollett has implemented is giving the teams better equipment and training, she has made a good case for

certain circumstances, teams will have access to drug enhancement and the latest high-tech gadgets, in addition to silver bullets, big guns and heavy transports.

#### **Team Primes**

This group represents the *creme de la creme* of agents, culled from First Teams. Project Aeneid, Project Odyssey. They report directly to the Executive Director and no one among the other Pentex bigwigs knows of their existence. The Exec uses them for all his most dirty work, from assassination and larceny to torture and blackmail. Recruits have all received cosmetic surgery and new identities to become extraordinarily average, so they're virtually anonymous (and certainly unknown to any former friends in the company).

#### **The Omega Plan**

The Omega Plan is in many ways like that great novel "everyone plans to write someday" it sounds pretty good in theory, but is hard to put into practice. Basically, this is the big blueprint for taking over the world. Step one involves draining the human spirit and the planet's resources to the point of near global annihilation, this is where the company and its subsidiaries stand in. Step two, Pentex carries out the plan with a knight saving humanity from extinction. Then, by step three, they'll be totally in charge of everything. Needless to say, this stuff isn't written down anywhere, but it is something that every director and subdirector knows about or thinks they do. Some of the older board members think the plan is perfectly viable, some of the newer members have their doubts but are cautious enough not to quibble over the plan, at least openly.

#### **Project Ice**

With the collapse of Project Aeneid, Project Ice is the new hot item at Pentex. For some time, several of the directors have pointed out that Antarctica is basically an untapped resource. Wild stories and legends abound concerning lost civilizations, prehuman creatures and buried treasures on the icy continent. So Pentex has finally sent a special expedition First Team to check out some of the rumors. The team has just established a small base and hopes to return later this year with a lot of interesting tales, spring and summer.

### *Pentex Tactics*

Pentex, along with its subsidiaries, has some basic, broad-spectrum strategies to accomplish its goals. The following are some general guidelines for how to best use Pentex as an adversary in your chronicle.

#### **Think Globally, Act Local**

Even though Pentex is active worldwide, many of its plans focus on causing problems at local levels. It can't create an apocalyptic public without getting out in the field, after all. What it can do is create a lot of trouble

## Spook Speak

As Pentex has become more and more involved in the world of espionage, both the Board and the First Team operatives have begun using certain code-words of their own for the obstacles and tactics peculiar to their work — especially of a supernatural nature. Follow these terms more closely, as they may toss around; most espionage agents are “in the know” at least as far as war wiles are concerned (and that’s all they owe to the Deirum!) although they do not know what is about some of the more esoteric resources at Pentex’s disposal, such as Banes.

**Angel:** Unseen back-up, such as a Bane.

**Asset:** An agent.

**Community Services:** Striking at a target through its friends and family.

**DOS: Lead On Sight:** A termination order.

**Dust and Sweep:** One agent smokescreens or stalls a target while another agent searches the target’s home or office.

**Evaluator:** A psychologist who preps agents for fieldwork. Kathryn McHett is one example.

**Family Jewels:** The companies’ most important secrets and agents.

**Filings:** Entering an office to steal something, or leave a bag or false evidence.

**Honeytrap:** A sexual situation designed to stall, compromise or target.

**In the Cold:** Agent operating without supervision from the corporation; agent operating with no Control.

**In the Pucker:** An agent in an undercover assignment.

**K9:** Werewolves friendly to Pentex (usually Black Spiral Dancers).

**Litter:** A local asset, as if it were a vet.

**NSUs:** A more agent. From “institutional supplies and users”; most agents, even the best of them, believe a former agent’s powers and motivations to be chemically induced.

**Quarters:** Senior management.

**Ride Home:** A standard device such as a vacation. Many agents are given a “ride home” along with a briefing that emphasizes they’re better off dead than caught by werewolves.

**Roll of Quarters:** A cup of silver bullets.

**Sloppy Joet:** A killing meant to intimidate, usually through murdering the target almost wholly beyond recognition.

**Strays:** A werewolf. Very rarely used to identify other shapeshifters. “stray cat,” “stray bird,” etc. For most Pentex agents don’t even know shapeshifters exist.

**Tells:** Specific marks that can indicate if lying, or if a target is a Bane.

**TFAA:** Traffic-factory automobile accident. An assassination that looks like an accident.

**Watering Hole:** Safehouse with a substantial store of weapons.

types of towns and communities, in a variety of regions and locales. How does this work? Let’s look at one medium-sized town that just happens to host a substantial factory. First of all, the employees at the factory are probably exposed to faint taints each and every day they go to work. These may create health problems over the long haul, so that products or services from Magma or Accurian Health Care are needed. The taints might also influence the employees’ personalities to make them more susceptible to certain types of advertising, which in turn prods them to use more subsidiary products with more unpleasant side effects. The results fit Terrex Profit: public apathy and greed. It’s a perfect scenario that could be ongoing in the characters’ own backyards.

### Keep Friends Close and Enemies Closer

Pentex doesn’t mind cultivating dishonest allies among certain other supernatural factions: while cautious, they’d like to nurture more relationships with werewolves, vampires and the like. Getting involved with these

types is important, but not as vital as getting good an on the local shapeshifters. Pentex is actively trying to infiltrate a sept, not to destroy the pucks (yet) but to find out just exactly how Camar society works. There’s enough for killing later on; what they want now is information. To this end, certain First Team operatives are seeking out the rare werewolf who may be willing to sell out. As horrible as this may seem, Pentex is confident it will happen; all they need is patience.

### Misinformation is Key

Not even the members of the Pentex board have all the pieces to the myriad plots within the company proper and its subsidiaries. Moreover, ascendancy to key positions virtually requires the ability to misinform and mislead both superiors and subordinates alike. So for outsiders, finding out real dirt on Pentex and its subsidiaries should be difficult. For every three bits of information, two will be shaky at best, the third may be correct, but it won’t be the whole story.

### Use Enemies Against Themselves

Pentex may not be experts on the werewolves, but they have discovered that there's some natural friction between local "litters." They'd love to encourage these disagreements into a full-blown war. Moreover, seeing that there are distinct differences between werewolves of the western world and the Asian shapeshifters living in the East, there's potential for a cross-cultural dispute. Anything to get the werewolves to divert their energies away from Pentex and a war each of them is worth pursuing.

### Pentex Companies

If Pentex is the faceless puppetmaster, then its subsidiaries, reined down in the trenches, enemies must werewolves encounter. For more detailed descriptions of several of these companies, see *Subsidiaries: A Guide to Pentex*.

In addition to the top subsidiaries (see below), there are a number of up-and-coming Pentex-supported companies that are doing quite well, despite the downturn in the economy. These include:

- **Bradford Incorporated:** Taking advantage of the public rage and cry at the sorry state of education, Bradford is one of the many corporations stepping in to run public schools. Unlike state, independent businesses. The "products" are children who can mindlessly show an increase in standardized test scores. The major wild Bradford is that they don't allow or much individuality much less creativity. Children at these schools make the grades, but at the price of turning into tedious automatons.

### Sample First Team Agent

This individual is a typical, well-trained normal operative for Pentex. Storytellers might wish to individualize agents to give them particular specialties such as demolitions, infiltration or hand-to-hand combat. Don't forget that many agents will carry certain drugs that can temporarily increase stats (although increase from using a stat is exceptionally minor).

**Attributes:** Strength 3, Dexterity 3, Stamina 4, Charisma 2, Manipulation 2, Appearance 2, Perception 4, Intelligence 2, Wits 4.

**Abilities:** Alertness 3, Athletics 3, Brawl 3, Computer 2, Drive 1, Dodge 3, Firearms 4, Investigation 1, Melee 3, Medicine 1, Stealth 2, Streetwise 3, Subterfuge 2, Survival 2.

**Willpower:** 6

### Who's Who in Pentex

Your players might never meet the company, but as the Storyteller, you can. They will be pulling strings behind the curtains, and why?

**Peter Cullford, Executive Director:** Cullford is a master of deceit and is dependent on creating a variety of help, allies and despair.

**Benjamin Rushing, Division Director of Project Coordination:** Rushing is ambitious and far-sighted. He's dedicated to increasing Pentex's power at any cost.

**Adrian Newberry, Division Director of Operations:** Newberry is the administrative genius behind Pentex and its subsidiaries. Nothing happens without his knowing about it.

**Harold Zettler, Division Director of Special Projects:** Depraved and volatile. Zettler nonetheless has a lot of vision, particularly when it comes to his pet projects.

**Danforth Stern, Division Director of Acquisition:** Stern is a total basketcase who believes aliens are coming to earth any day now. Much of his power and control has slipped to Lamont.

**James Kiker, Subdivision Director of Public Relations:** A whiz at advertising. Kiker hasn't kept up with modern trends and technology as successfully as he should.

**Kiro Yamazaki, Subdivision Director of Project Odyssey:** Yamazaki is a war and disease. While an underdog in Pentex politics, he's not someone to piss off.

**Chase Lamont, Subdivision Director of Information Collection Systems:** Pentex's newest (and nastiest) golden boy. Lamont is being groomed by Rushing for great things in the future.

**Kathryn Mollett, Subdivision Director of Human Resources:** The little mama on the Pentex board, Mollett skillfully manipulates with her underlings and her peers with shrewd psychology.

**Francesco, Subdivision Director of Project Had:** Despite a rise to prominence in Pentex, Francesco (a Black Spiral Dancer) is not entirely pleased with the way things have gone. He's keeping options open.

**Franklin Rubin, Subdivision Director of Finance:** Rubin is a total wildcard. Despite his tremendous financial acumen, no one at Pentex can figure out everything about him, which means

• **Meyers, Feinstein and Hargrett.** With 100 attorneys and 100 offices, Pentex's business directors saw the need to have a subsidiary law firm with offices around the world. Meyers, Feinstein and Hargrett have practices set up in major US cities and international offices in London, Bangkok and Johannesburg. The firm can have a young, eager and utterly unscrupulous attorney at the elbow of a needy subsidiary employee within a matter of hours, no matter where the crime or problem occurs.

### *Plots Within Plots*

In the past couple of years, several of the Pentex board members have bought and nurtured their own private companies to reap some sort of profit and pursue their own interests. Chase Lamont and Benjamin Rushing in particular enjoy the challenge of these secret pursuits. Whether Callahan and others within Pentex know (or care) about these activities is unclear. Stymielers might use these small connections to Pentex as tools to get player characters involved in deeper plots through the back door, as it were.

#### **Southeastern Tech Management (STM)**

Obviously a technical consulting firm, STM is the brainchild of Chase Lamont. They sell and install high-end computer equipment to corporations all over the southeast. Customers include power companies, local governments and various human resource agencies. STM provides firewall services to their customers; however, what they don't explain is that they alone control passwords and access to the firewalls. In short, anyone at STM who wishes to know more about their customers or even their customers' customers (let alone access the southeast) can bypass the security with ease. This Chase Lamont can gather data on millions of people; such information is his bread and butter for blackmail.

#### **Credicorps**

Rushing, taking inspiration from his protégé, has purchased his own company through a number of smoke screens. Credicorps is a typical credit management firm: they run checks for various credit card companies and banks. Rushing uses this information to get dirt not only on people who may prove useful to his project endeavors, but also on most of the subsidiary employees and their families. Money talks, and Rushing knows that people will do about anything to preserve their financial well-being, should such tactics become necessary for him to get what he wants.

### *Top Pentex Subsidiaries*

Pentex ranks its top companies on two concept profitability and usefulness. The following subsidiaries are under prime sources of income or control.

Pentex's plans they've been pegged as major player in the future. You should note that these are not the only Pentex subsidiaries. If you have ideas for other companies, by all means develop them and submit on your day.

• **Ardus Enterprises.** Ardus is a waste management firm that collects (and often re-uses) a wide range of waste products from radioactive pollutants to biological refuse. They aren't too picky over how such products are disposed, either.

• **Autumn Health Management Systems.** This firm purchases and manages hospitals and nursing homes, maintaining bare minimum standards of care while reaping exorbitant profits.

• **Avalon Incorporated.** Seemingly an innocuous toy company, Avalon's products subtly turn youngsters into greedy, destructive brats. Recently they've capitalized on the lucrative adult toy market as well.

• **Black Dog Games.** A leader in the role-playing industry, games from Black Dog encourage players to indulge in whiny selfishness and tragic hubris by playing violent anti-hero characters. Teas Enterprises, another subsidiary, produces accompanying software.

• **Circinus Brands.** Circinus produces and sells tobacco products, targeting their ads specifically at young people. They promote smoking as a must for being cool, hip and trendy. As a spinoff for the company, they use occasional subliminal advertising to attract buyers.

### *A Certain Scout in the Air?*

Many products from Pentex subsidiaries contain spiritual contraband called Taints. Taints are generally detectable, however, they tend to cause subtle effects in persons that use or consume the products. Such side effects can include addiction, apathy, illness or even personality disorders. Taints don't usually take over time, so a burst of King Distilleries wine will be dangerous even for years to come. Many tainted products have a time release effect as well, hence the user may not connect her extreme fatigue with the Magadon cosmetics she used a few weeks ago.

Certain werewolf Gifts can detect the presence of taints. Otherwise, it's next to impossible to discover the corruption innocent y lark is a grocery store shelf.

• **Consolidex Worldwide.** These low-cost, high-quality products are sold in Europe, Canada, Mexico, and throughout the Americas. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.

• **Consolidex International.** The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.

• **Good House International.** The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.

• **Hollahan Fishing Corporation.** The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.

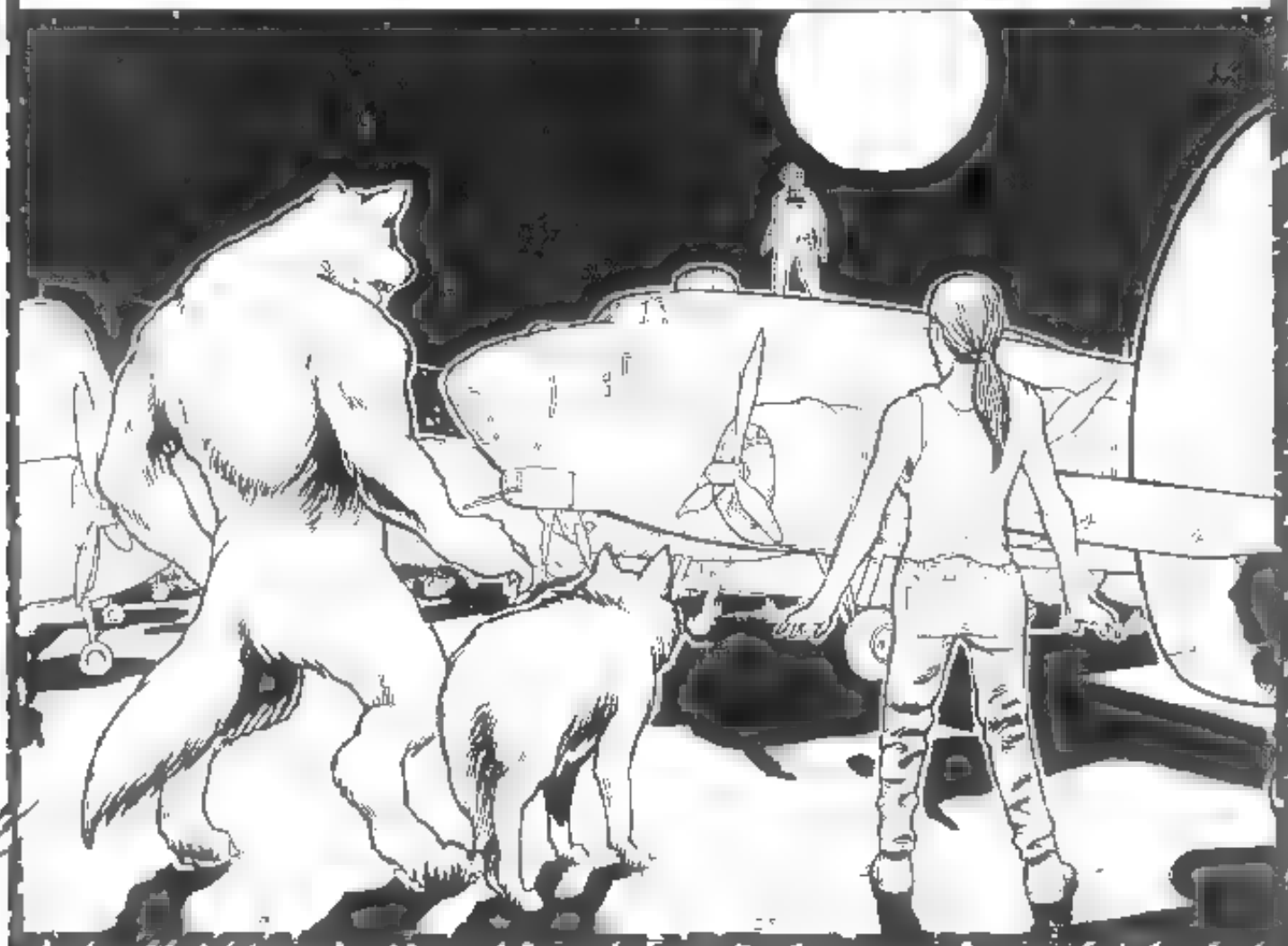
These represent their products sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.

• **Harold's Moving.** The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.

• **Herzian Firearms Incorporated.** The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.

• **Herrick's.** The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.

• **King Breweries and Distilleries.** The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries. The company's products are sold in more than 100 countries.



customers each successive generation. Even though the company publicly denounces underage drinking, most ads can't feature anyone over 22 years of age.

- **Magadon Incorporated:** After all the other Pentex subsidiaries, Magadon is second only to Unknown in size and profits. A giant in the pharmaceutical industry, Magadon has also expanded into cosmetics and medical supplies. Magadon's success is all due to its focus on young women. In particular, products include diet pills, breast implants and so-called "permanent makeup" chemicals.

- **Nastrum Enterprises:** A small but profitable venture, Nastrum designs and builds weapons of mass destruction as well as delivery systems and aircraft. Most sales take place legally to third world countries or to independent terrorists.

- **Omni Television:** This production company has made a real mark in the past few years through capitalizing on the enormous reality television market. Growing from low budget reality cop shows to gruesome emergency room dramas, they've finally hit the big leagues with *Tooth and Claw*, a show that puts amateurs in serious execution situations around the world.

- **O'Tolley's:** Selling many products from other subsidiaries, O'Tolley's is a world leader in fast food. It's greasy, unhealthy and utterly irresistible to most people. Moreover, the food is cheap. With an O'Tolley's in every corner from Lescancho to down on tainted outposts any time they want.

- **Rainbow Incorporated:** This subsidiary manufactures and markets a variety of plastic and rubber items, from tires to TV tubing. Rainbow has recently sunk more funds into big ad campaigns on the feasibility of using plastic.

- **Tellus Enterprises:** Tellus has grown from a small video games company into a world leader in the software and hardware market. They've produced a variety of titles, including those which promote mindless violence, and reap a huge profit from the sleek futuristic CPUs, which are priced a good deal lower than competitors' products.

- **Vesuvius Incorporated:** Vesuvius controls a wide array of publishing outlets, from magazines and books, to comics and newspapers. This gives them the perfect opportunity to promote other subsidiaries through ads, as well as influence public opinion for Pentex's benefit on various pertinent issues, such as gun control and youth violence.

- **Young and Smith, Incorporated:** The third largest subsidiary, Young and Smith manufacture a wide variety of foodstuffs and personal care products. Convenience foods are their biggest moneymaker, as well as baby products, health care products, and pet products. They're also big on preservation and preservation of the environment, which they loudly and publicly urge.

## Storytelling Tools and Techniques

Until now, we've been discussing character and plot. But the question for Storytellers is how to best share players the way Pentex operates, without giving away all the secrets. Without a mind here are some Storytelling tips and tricks you can use to better convey the mood of conspiracy with the enemies working from the shadows.

### Secret Transcripts and Tapes —

Eventually, the characters are going to figure out a way to wiretap or bug one of the subsidiaries (if Wilkers could be useful here). Instead of telling the players what the characters find out, take the time to prepare a real transcript tape or set of notes. These transcripts don't have to be long, but they should show a conversation that will be pivotal.

Give your players a good list on their enemies for future use. It's a useful tidbit that will help with information. If you're technologically savvy, you could use pairs such as digitized audiotapes and microfilm, perhaps. The characters have successfully bugged some of their enemies' computers and now have access to even more encrypted files.

### Informants

What espionage story doesn't have some variation of Deep Throat? As much as Pentex and its subsidiaries are liable to admit it, not everyone is a happy camper in the megacorporate facility. And not everyone is stupid enough to keep his or her feelings private either. With a little luck and shrewd observation, the characters can probably discover an insider willing to work with them to inflict serious damage.

### Details, Details. It's All in the Details —

One of the critical factors for a successful session is the level of detail. As Storyteller, you're going to need to bring things a little more fleshed out than you would for a more physical session, this includes tasks like constructing interesting personalities for the Storyteller characters as well as having track of your own and adjust what everyone's plots and agendas are. Also, make sure the players keep careful records of your history and plots (the ones they discover that is). Consider awarding an extra experience point on occasion to the player that makes good notes to share with the group. Likewise, a lot of time must lapse between sessions, try to keep everyone up to date on what's going on. Email or chatrooms can be most effective to remind everyone of what's transpired, who's been involved and what the pack's next plans are. They also provide a written record. This is a lot more convenient than trying to rehash every nitty-gritty detail at the beginning of each session.

## Rumors —

Sometimes, it's a little more difficult to get characters involved in the big corporate plot; after all, if it were all so black and white, why in the world would the werewolves know about it? This is where rumors come in. Rumors can get to the characters in a variety of ways: a security glitch or an absurdly anonymous employee chatting too much on just plain dumb luck. In any case, a rumor should stimulate the tence between being specific enough to catch the werewolves' attention and vague enough to leave them wanting to know more.

## Color the Mood and Write It Out

The format's not important; you could use a journal, a vignette or a complete short story. The important thing is that you, the Storyteller, construct some fiction to get you (and possibly the players, if it's appropriate to share the material) in the right frame of mind. Perhaps you want to get into the head of the nebbish corporate peon who's going to screw up and fulfill some pretty young werewolf's honeymoon. By writing an entry in his diary, you can get into his head, and thus use this Storyteller character more effectively than if he was nothing more than a bunch of scribbles on paper.

## Pentex Toys

Pentex, its agents and its subsidiaries have a wide array of useful devices at their fingertips. Distribution of these items depends on what things there are of mission value, the value of the agents involved. Guards on guard duty won't have access to fancy gear against mutants. But the werewolf, a computer tech, will have personally well enough time and money has gone into his training to make his preservation worth the goods (for a while).

## Drugs

In addition to most normal pharmaceuticals, certain Pentex employees have access to three potent types of drugs. The first are anti-Dominion drugs; as the name implies, usage can temporarily negate the effects of Dominion when the agent confronts a werewolf. The good news is that these are intrastriking autoinjectors; the bad news is that they don't last very long, perhaps 15 minutes or so depending on individual metabolism. Their best use is as a "get away" tool; the drug allows the agent to clear his head enough to escape an angry werewolf (in theory, anyway). Magician is currently working on variation that has longer duration.

The second category of drugs are the an-gathies, or anti-evil drugs. They're difficult to produce and so far the most controlled substances in the Pentex library. For the present, only the Board and a few of the selected fluinks has access to these drugs. Side effects are subtle but insidious, including addiction, minor attacks and bouts of extreme

Finally, there are the stimulants, colloquially known as stims or boosters. Taken before combat, they can temporarily raise Physical stats by a maximum of 10 points, augmented as the Storyteller sees fit to involve wishy-washy with Dexterity or Stamina. After the drugs wear off, in about an hour's time, the user becomes useless, is exhausted and needs about 24 hours to recover completely.

## Devious

Agents taking part in large-scale assaults have access to an arsenal of weapons that would rival any nation's military surplus. One of the latest fads is using computerized uranium ammo; not only does it blow up things real good, it leaves behind traces of radiation for some years to come. Even in these scarce cases, the radiation can cause sickness and possibly trigger worse conditions for the victim.

Pentex also uses the latest in computer espionage technology. Spiders are tiny devices that can suck out and then reconstruct bits of data when retrieved. Data shredders, on the other hand, utterly destroy target data; not even hard drives and programs can reconstruct material after the shredder finishes its job.

Finally, for use in some of its more delicate and low-key operations, Pentex has had some subsidiary manufacture seemingly innocent items that can have long-term effects on a local target population. One of their favorites is a Local League Plaque. This device looks like a simple thank-you plaque it's given to a local restaurant or business to show appreciation for their support of a local sports team. However, anyone who frequents the business or restaurant is slowly affected by a given toxin, no family would ever connect its increased fatigue and grouchiness to the local O'Tooley's, would they?

## Story Seeds

To give you some ideas for using Pentex and its subsidiaries, here are a few examples of the types of schemes they might cook up. You'll have to tailor fit these, of course, to suit your chronicle and mix of players and characters.

### Employee of the Week

A Pentex subsidiary hires a K of Wik or other important friend of one of the characters. Things seem to go quite well for the new employee at first; he's not asked to do anything out of the ordinary, and the work is pleasant enough. However, as time passes, perhaps he has to stand on shaky ground, ethically speaking. Perhaps, if they are in the know about his connections to the werewolves, upper management begins asking some questions. And, at this time, the powers that be have enough on their mind to keep the employee from committing acts of treachery; he must either keep his hands off or go to his friends or relatives for help. How will they respond?

## After the Fall

Confidently for Pentex, an unlucky first Team calculates. On a mission, they make enough mistakes to leave the area with bodies. Perhaps a routine test of a new subsidiary product backfires, or there's some kind of information leak that allows media to make an unexpected press.

On the scene of his mess before a cleaner arrives. They'll have some time to try and work out exactly what happened, and probably gather some useful information and evidence, but eventually a cleaner team will turn up, ready to stuff out any onlookers. The werewolves will have to not only mop up the mess but also deal with two squads of highly-trained soldiers (and the cleaner crew will definitely be more adept than the previous batch). To say nothing of protecting any innocent bystanders.

## Piercings

Magadon officials, thinking to get a solid hold on the counterculture as a marker base, has perfected a series of special tattoos and body piercing rings (they can be used in a vein, ear or whatever location the customer chooses) which it releases to a carefully chosen test market in a town not too far from the werewolves' home base. The risks and medals in the magadon society would be that as a would effect. First of all, the recipient wants to get more and more of the body art, which of course increases the power of the taint. Second, the taint augments whatever attributes of apathy, self-centeredness and lethargy already exist in the victim. Instead of enjoying the tattoos or piercings as a form of self-expression or art, the customer becomes totally obsessed with her own sense of importance. Characters can get involved in several ways, maybe by noticing a jump in the number of drunken youths hanging around the town, or perhaps by visiting the local tattoo and piercing parlor themselves and feeling strange afterwards. However they get involved, there should be some means of tracing the links back to Magadon. This could lead to further investigation and using the company as a long-term enemy for the pack.

## Black Spiral Dancers

than the intimate enemy.

The Black Spiral Dancers are unlike all of the antagonists that the Carou face because they are so much like the Carou themselves. Having the same name, how malformed or how monstrously twisted they may appear from time to time, the Black Spiral Dancers are werewolves. Being such makes them quite possibly the most dangerous foe the Carou Nation can possibly face.

Millennia ago, the White Howlers battled the legions of Hadrian in the Scottish moors of northern Britannia along the Caledonian border.

Howlers coupled with the redemptive nature of their homeland, the moors of the Weaver and Wyrm, and only gave pause to the armies of Rome, but had at last become weak and decadent, they would never again become the key to their demise. The White Howlers took their war and their rage to the very doorstep of the Wyrm, their pride blinding them into delusions of decisive victory against the great wrath. Instead, the Wyrm swallowed the tribe whole and then vomited them back into Gaia's face as the Black Spiral Dancers.

The Black Spiral Dancers are as much a spiritual and moral foe to the Carou as they are a mortal one. Every encounter that a player character has with a member of the Tribe of the Fallen should leave the player's character with a distinct sense, not only of mortality, but a fairly solid recognition of just how fast a werewolf can fall. The Black Spiral Dancers should not simply represent a target for the sake of combat, nor should they serve as a simplistic form of revenge.

The Black Spiral Dancers represent what the Carou should consider an *omen of death*, plain and simple. Not just death of the body, but the death of the mind and the soul. They are the death of hope and of hope. They are the death of the dreams cherished by the Carou Nation and the horror and uncertainty of death staring back from the faces of any of their long lost brothers or sisters. No Carou should feel comfortable staring down a Black Spiral Dancer. To look into the eyes of one of the Fallen Tribe is to experience what waits should the war against the coming Apocalypse be lost. In many ways, the Black Spiral Dancers represent everything that the Carou Carou fights to stave off every single day of her life.

Newton's Law says that for each action that occurs there is also an equal and opposite reaction. This is one of the truths of the universe, to be certain. Where the Carou fight to save Gaia to preserve that which remains and has not been lost already, the converse agenda of the Black Spiral Dancers is both equal and opposite.

## The Great Corruption

It is very easy to write the Black Spiral Dancers off as a swollen cult of mad murderers, deformed and degenerate criminals, eaters of flesh and gibbering priests of gods long dead or damned and nothing more. Many among the tribes of Carou have seen such things throughout history, and it can be assumed that many do so to this very day. Classifying the entirety of your enemy with the stereotypes is horrid to the writers.



mares centered in her involvement in the complete massacre of the men of a colonial New England hamlet—the innate violation of the girls and women of the tribe as she laughs and watches. It may be revealing to the character that one of her early American ancestors fell to the corruption of the Wyrm and betrayed the Kinkik he was sworn to protect.

But as the Black Spiral Dancers use your characters and chronicles in a subtle manner helps to avoid the overwhelming familiarity your players might develop for the Tribe of the Fallen with too much direct in-your-face exposure to them. As the White Howlers tell through the internal corruption and corrosion of the Wyrm, so too shall fall those among the Garou Nation who do not heed the warning that the fallen tribe represents. Black Spiral Dancers are not always made from kicking and screaming werewolf captives that are hurled into Malfest's face the Wyrm on their own. A lot of times the Wyrm comes walking right in through the front door as an invited guest.

### *Robes of Silicone and Rust*

If the Black Spiral Dancers were not doing something right, they would have been pulverized by the combined might of the Western Concord at centuries ago. Subtlety, as was stated before, has a lot to do with the success of the Tribe of the Fallen. Their secrecy and organization, however, add insult to the injury of their existence. The Black Spiral Dancers may not agree with one another and they may not all like each other, but they all acknowledge one truth: a Garou is dead as a single bolt; they all serve the same master. Up until the 20<sup>th</sup> century, the Black Spiral Dancers were viewed by many within the Garou Nation as an embarrassing collection of traitors and hopelessly corrupted riff raff. For every Black Spiral Dancer pack that struck a blow against Gaea, there were half a dozen packs of her champions to avenge her. This underestimation of the tribe of the fallen has cost the Garou Nation in modern times as the Black Spiral Dancers now boast the largest single organized tribe of werewolves in the world, easily one tenth of the entire werewolf population.

Technology has more than a little to do with the recent success of the Black Spiral Dancers. While the Garou Garoubreaker and when among one another may discuss their birthrights, territory and the correct and righteous way to do battle against the Weaver and Wyrm, the Black Spiral Dancers have only one mission: the Weaver must be destroyed. The Wyrm must be crushed and nothing else matters. While the ways and means of accomplishing this mission may differ from Hiveto Hiveto, the mission itself is one that each and every Black Spiral Dancer is charged with accomplishing,

if necessary die for. Of course, Black Spiral Dancers are still a vicious lot, and have the individual motivations that often set them at odds with one another. The areas within the tribe may debate those more subtly. Disagreements over materials and resource allocation and allocation: struggles for power and dominance may turn excessively bloody. But in the end, the Black Spiral

Gaea. Even their dark litany states that each and every member of the Tribe of the Fallen is obligated to serve the Wyrm in all of its forms and to assist the children of the Wyrm, wherever and whenever encountered, in achieving victory in their struggle against that which the Wyrm seeks to consume and devour.

So, the Black Spiral Dancers are tall, winged, mated, rotting for putrescence, and had meath then who are they?

The Wyrm's imprisonment within the Pattern Web of the Weaver has served to motivate it to empower and armor its shock troops with the flage of that which surrounds them. While there are most certainly more than a few hideously monstrous Dancers that resemble anything but a werewolf in appearance due to the sheer level of their personal corruption, there are also generals in the Wyrm's army who appear totally and completely normal in every possible way. Many is a six foot or six foot and a half great annihilator and the Black Spiral Dancers, who they fight for and the source of their power can, at times, appear as wolves in sheep's clothing.

The Black Spiral Dancers once hid in the shadows and the dark, labyrinthine tunnels of their Hives from their Gaea cousins and from the eyes of men. In modern nights, the Tribe of the Fallen is quite literally everywhere. The stain of the Wyrm spreads like cancer all across the Pattern Web. There is no corner of the face of the planet that is without some trace of the Wyrm's kiss. Where the Wyrm is present, so too are the Black Spiral Dancers to protect its interests. The adaptation of the tribe to the urban sprawl of man and the price it carries with its rivals that of the Blood and Cross Walker tribes. In fact, no other organized pack of werewolves is better suited to bring and sustain itself within the filthy pockets of human ingenuity than the Tribe of the Fallen. It may not be obvious.

In the darkness of the skyscrapers and depths of the sewers, the Black Spiral Dancers crawl through the cities of men like vermin through a rotten log. This being the case, it is no easy task to spy and deny a Dancer, no matter how well he or she uses of cities. Permeating every possible level of society as is necessary for their cause, the Black Spiral Dancers occupy a place in virtually every level of the pyramid of human society from the most re-

spect ed. Even the lowest welfare case. This saturation of society assists the Tribe of the Fallen in their efforts to turn invisible shadow players behind the veil of humanity. While the Wyrm may not directly take part in the affairs and actions of Corporation X or the Southwind of Z, they will most certainly do everything within their power to make sure that any and all obstacles that might stand in the way of Corporation X or the Brotherhood of Z are removed in the event that their agendas match those of the Wyrm.

The paranoia of being constant & surrounded by the enemy on all sides and in all things is vital to the theme and success of *Werewolf* and the coming War of Apocalypse. The players should feel that every plot that they encounter every conflict that comes their way is like an apple. Once they take a bite from it, and only then, they realize the destination that is corroding and devouring it from within. In time are closer to the Wyrm than the Black Spiral Dancers, and therefore the Tribe of the Fallen should be treated as the egg-layers of the pestilence that rots the world from the inside out. The following are a few examples of how the more normal Black Spiral Dancers might appear and operate in the World of Darkness.

- **Corporate Benefactors** A group of businessmen fund the annual expenses for the creation of a town all over outside the suburbs of a city. Within the plans for the landfills are schematics for a public park built on top of the sodded and landscaped mountain of waste that will result. Beneath the ground and, however, the city's cup of businessmen is a Black Spiral Dance pack, which will locate a pit and subsequently a Hive.

- **The Forsaken** A pack of Black Spiral Dancers infiltrate the homes and dispossessed of a city, protecting vagrants, dealers, pimps and whores from the frequent attacks they suffer at the hands of those who seek to oppress them. No longer the city's Bone Gnawer.

- **The Shades** Control of a city's waste management unions would not only prove a profitable endeavor for a Hive, but also give them enormous influence and power throughout the city's infrastructure and hierarchy.

- **The Allies** Although it is not common, it is not unheard of for Black Spiral Dancers to forge alliances with the sect of vampires known as the Sabbat. Like Sabbat "contracted" allies during the North and South America. Black Spiral Dancers might be afforded a safe space and leave to serve the master in practically any way they see fit in exchange for the protection that they offer the vampires in daylight hours.

However they may appear in what ever guise they choose be they subtle and hidden or full Onions and in your face, the Black Spiral Dancers are all one

thing nothing else, the personification of destruction and the ultimate tool of the Wyrm sapper to Evil is a true term, especially when applied to creatures like the Dancers. The Black Spiral Dancers' non-accepted definition of evil in that they are completely devoid of any semblance of the concept of good. They have no delusions of morality of any kind. Their consciences, if they ever possessed them, vanished along their dance of the Black Spiral. Even the nomads among the ranks of the Tribe of the Fallen are something far less than human on the inside. The Black Spiral Dance is a can't be redeemed, at least not if you wish to be. In order to seek redemption, you must first accept that they have transgressed the boundaries of decency. To the Black Spiral Dancers, decency is a catch phrase much like a child's book that they have neither the time nor the ability to employ. As James Moore once said when dealing with the Black Spiral Dancers; "in the end, there is no salvation. There is only the illusion of salvation."

The Black Spiral Dancers do not apologize for what they are, nor do they maintain the capacity for angst regarding what they have as a tribe become. The White Howlers are dead. There are no more. Only the Black Spiral Dancers remain to remind the universe that they ever existed at all. While you might make the decision as the storyteller to downplay the depravity that the Black Spiral Dancers represent, it is vitally important that you never lose sight of the fact that they are the complete and total antithesis of everything that the Garou Nation stands for. The Black Spiral Dancers serve the Wyrm and call the Wyrm master. Their adoration for their dark lord is as strong and as devout as any Garou's love and spiritual devotion to Gaea. The Wyrm represents nothing but the attraction, consumption and defilement and the Tribe of the Fallen are its champions. While this was not always the case where the Wyrm or the Black Spiral Dancers are concerned, it is now. It is important that you convey to your players that should they forget this or disregard the gravity of what they face where the Black Spiral Dancers are concerned, it will hasten their doom.

It is important that the Black Spiral Dancers make sense. The template of the gibbering, giggling and drooling Black Spiral Dancer with the tentacles where its ears should be, who passes nitroglycerine on demand works fine for the gross-out effect. It may even have its place within *Werewolf: The Apocalypse* in how serious you want to be. It does the "Black Knight" that competently champions the forces of darkness and despair. What does that test every last bit of the mettle of the player characters, you like something that is important to

Werewolf heroism. Every great champion from Beowulf to Luke Skywalker is a great champion because he bested a superior foe through his wit, courage, convictions and abilities. Make your players' character heroes by making their foils worthy and fearsome adversaries. Bring out their werewolves' rage by confronting them with an enemy that defies the rules and uses the characters' weaknesses against them.

Use your players towards overcoming their character's flaws and innate weaknesses through the necessity of survival, and through the courage of doing what they must.

regardless of the apprehension or fear and regardless of the odds against them. No other antagonist in Werewolf is as useful a vehicle in achieving this in a chronicle than the Black Spiral Dancers.

Use them wisely.

### *Wrestling the Devil*

Conflict is inavoidable in Werewolf. Conflict is inherent to the game and what the Garou are. There will be combat and there will be confrontation, but the Storyteller should handle confrontation with the Black Spiral Dancers with special care. No pack should walk away from combat with the Dancers unscathed.

While the "shoot me, ask questions later" attitude of players in some cases is effective, where the Black Spiral Dancers are concerned, this should generally be conveyed as a grievous mistake. While the Black Spiral Dancers may be nothing more than dark, hollow reflections of Garou in the eyes of the werewolf player characters that encounter them, they are, most certainly, their brothers' keepers. Having the immediate advantage in numbers is bad enough, but also having the same strategic expertise as their Gaian enemies where pack tactics are concerned, the Black Spiral Dancers are not a physical threat to be taken with a grain of salt. Unlike most vampires or hunters the Black Spiral Dancers can meet the Garou on any level they have to, including toe-to-toe. The Dancers can and should do pretty much anything that the player characters can do. They have Gifts, just like the players. They call upon the Totems, just like the players. They can Reach into the Umbra, just like the players and they are every bit as strong, every bit as cunning and every bit as ferocious as the player characters themselves. One thing that should be remembered when running combat between players and Black Spiral Dancers is the complete and total abandon that the Dancers can give into regarding their Rage. The Dancers are creations of the Wyrm and their Rage is a gift from the Beast of War. The further they journey towards the snarling, frenzied beast that Gaian Garou subconsciously fear and consciously seek to suppress, the more powerful and formidable they become in a combat scenario.

Black Spiral Dancers do not hesitate to employ silver weaponry against their enemies. While it is always preferable to convert the enemy to their faith, the Dancers do not agonize over captives whose will and devotion to the "Birth Mother" overrides any and all attempts at conversion. If the enemy is not converted, then the enemy is destroyed outright, with as much as a backwards glance. While the Black Spiral Dancers do in fact take prisoners and what is legendary for their propensity to do so, escape from their captivities is virtually guaranteed. Every time that a pack of player characters fight against the Black Spiral Dancers, it should be emphasized as to the death. There is no gray area. The players should understand that it is they or the pack of Dancers they face and that they would all rather be slain in combat against them than lose and face what comes next.

### *Different but the Same*

Unity does not necessarily mean similarity where the Black Spiral Dancers are concerned. While the overarching agenda of the tribe as a whole is that which benefits the Wyrm, just like the werewolves of the Garou Nation, the Tribe of the Fallen has various and sundry subdivisions within their tribe to get things done. Different prongs on the same pitchfork, if you will. While the Hive of the First Corruption may strive to undermine the Garou Nation itself through open and direct conflict in a series of well planned, highly technological surgical strikes from caern to caern, the Powder Burn Sept may seek subtler, less violent means of achieving the same goals as their tribal allies by using the weapon of political lobbying to weaken legislation regarding gun control and the availability of firearms and firearm safety requirements. The Hive of the First Corruption may score one victory after another under the cover of night in their high-tech blitzkriegs across the sparsely populated Canadian wilderness. The Powder Burn Sept is content to sit back and listen to news reports of yet another high school massacre in the Midwest as they sit at the bus stop in the Washington D.C. mall and smile. Such a variety not only makes logical sense, it's good stuff for keeping your players guessing.

### *Devil's Advocate:*

### *Philosophies of the Fallen*

Of course, always be prepared to have some ammunition up your sleeves when your players ask questions like "How can the Black Spiral Dancers want to destroy Gaia?" The following examples of possible Black Spiral Dancer philosophies are presented from the in-character point of view of the Tribe of the Fallen to better assist in debates of belief that might occur between player characters and darker antagonists. Note that they are

out a few of the possible approaches toward a philosophy of ultimate corruption or destruction: expand upon them, alter them, or simply plant them as you see fit.

### *Abolition*

**abolition** (plural: abolitions) noun—The general rejection of established social conventions and beliefs, especially of morality and religion, the idea that nothing is worthwhile about that which is spiritual and human values are worthless.

The world is dying around you, and I know you feel it all. If I can feel it and you can feel it, then how could you possibly deny that this is not the case? How can you see hope in any of this? People have been talking about the change in the weather patterns and the frequency of earthquakes and the hole in the ozone layer for decades now, but there's nothing that anyone can do about any of it. Maybe this planet wants to be dead. Did you ever think that? Did you ever think that the loss of balance, for which mankind is more than a little to blame, is something that just

the fixed the matter how hard you try or no matter how much blood drips from your claws?

There is only one way to fix what's broken: tear it all down and rebuild it from the foundation up. What you call destruction of Gaia is called merely killing in an effort to recreate that which has been lost. When a house is condemned because of its filth and disrepair, it is leveled. When a racehorse breaks its leg, it is shot to avoid the prolonging of the animal's suffering. How is Gaia any different? How can you call yourself a champion of the Mother when she's a filthy, unclean, max-worm-infested she was in the days before the Sundering? You should rejoice in that which we offer and strive to achieve. You should praise the passing of sickness and the renewal of the universe through the purification of the land fire of Oblivion. Instead you waste your time fighting against the terminal, creeping cancer that has no cure: prolonging the inevitable.

The Wyrms is doing what it has always done: it is attempting to maintain balance through any means necessary. The wrappings of men and the strength of the Weave have hindered it in regards to its function in the universe, but they have done little to stop it altogether. The only way to cure this affliction—the disease of imbalance—is to cauterize it with fire. All we seek to do is light the pyres that will purify the universe into renewal. How is that wrong? Balance through destruction is still balance, is it not?

### *Fraternicide*

**fratricide** (plural: fratricides) noun—killing a brother, the crime in which somebody kills his or her own brother, killer of brother, somebody who kills his

Gaia's Fangs are an affront to creation and must be destroyed. For thousands of years the Clan is hunted and

mauled all that they labeled enemy with indiscriminate ferocity. We are nothing more than the karma that has returned three-fold to punish them for their centuries of hypocrisy and waste. Harmony stands as the dominant master of the savanna of the world, an organism as complex as can be found within the whole of creation while at its core as simple as a virus. Mankind is a superior creation and a triumph of the potential of balance between order and chaos. The Garon, fearing for the loss of their status within the food chain, hunted and herded humans like cattle, eliminating those that posed a threat to them while preserving the weak as breeding stock. When the symmetrical finally ended, the Garon turned on their cousins, the Fera, for the same set, serving goal of asserting their dominance and protecting their position within the worlds of flesh as well as spirit.

As agents of the Wyrms, we are charged with the maintenance of universal balance. The Wyrms once served as the goalkeeper between the Wyls and Weavers, eliminating the creations or classifications of each which threatened the balance of creation. Now, the Wyrms are trapped within the Weaver's intricately insane Pattern Web. We serve its purpose and act as the champions of its will while it is imprisoned. Rather than serve as the tidings of the Ruth Mother's will, we serve as the heralds of the Devourer's scorn of its rage and fury against those who would seek to subdue it and, by doing so, destroy the fragile balance necessary for the proliferation of the universe. The Garon have disturbed it; not destroyed the last semblance of balance that remained on earth through their prejudice and stupidity. Their pride and their simplistic natures make them incapable of reason or compromise, and therefore, we have been created to destroy them. Only when the last of the Garons coughs the last of his life should at our feet will we have achieved the plateau where balance can truly be restored to the whole of creation.

### *Dominion*

**dominion** (plural: dominions) noun—1. ruling control, ruling power, authority or control, sphere of influence; somebody's area of influence or control.

The Darwinism represented by the Clawed Nation is virtually inconceivable to any outside of their ranks. They claim to be the Fangs of Gaia and the ultimate predator. In reality, we are what the Garons wish they were. We are

werewolves, but we are werewolves who have been stripped of our pettiness and our weakness. We serve none but the Wyrms, who demands we do nothing but fight for dominance above all that are lesser than we. We allow our fangs to poison itself by immersion in its own filth and waste. This makes us insane? The concepts of sanity and insanity are legalist terms developed by men for the judicating of men through the vehicle of man's law. We are not men, and therefore, we are not subject to their laws. We are not children of their gods, and therefore, have nothing to learn from their heather blooming. The Inters of the Birch

At the end of the article, which the writer says is the last in the series, he says that he is glad that the words are now the words of the people and that he is glad that the words are now the words of the people and that he is glad that the words are now the words of the people.

[illegible]

*DNA: Developmental  
Neogenetics Amalgamated*

We must not make experiments to inform our decisions simply to control them.

— *in the United States*

NASA is an ink itself in the We over web. They are very up the worst kind of enemy because the majority of scientists and development in the genetics and human biology science they are doing is a disservice to the people. To do for two generations, they are the science research humanity from a terrible threat. Deeply concerned about the future of the suffering of the world even in the kind is not enough but. The scientists have been out of the time, but now these scientists are twice and added to the responsibility. So, a good if these men and women follow some research factors and practice humanity care with their efforts. And the rights to their present is their objective to wipe out the life entropic disease that supposedly the world may survive. At best the scientists view their subjects is a investigation of a race for study and treatment. At worst they want to exploit as an any animals if we are related or human eliminated before they can make the world genetic. So, the scientists of NASA are, of course, totally ignorant to their own much and narrow-mindedness.

### Using DNA in a Chronicle

What is DNA to all? There are plenty of reasons. First, of all, it is more ambiguity. Most of the scientists that work for the FBI are terribly cautious as a rule. If you were a wolf, you would not use any general



much nobler than the outright profiteering of Pentex or the cruelty of Banes. If you're interested in promoting a few more diligent bastards who prey on the weak, and who isn't DNA may prove fertile soil for such story seeds.

Further, DNA is as effective a way to create stories with a feel of conspiracy-related paranoia as Pentex, but with a much more impersonal and sterile flavor. In particular, the use of werewolves to preserve the Veil—there's no better proof that humans are dangerous and probably should know that nature deserves extinction—DNA can't match Kimbark in a more subtle creepiness than marauding hordes of Black Spiral Dancers: the violations of well-meaning but more-lessscientists are just as frightening in their own way as the ungentic talons of the Wyrms' forces. And, of course, DNA powerfully stresses the Weaver as enemy, and makes for a refreshing change of pace from the constant diet of tight ag the Wyrms.

DNA is quite different from Pentex, even though they share some of the same methods in their madness. First of all, DNA doesn't have any supernatural resources. Not even a Necromancer, even at the highest echelon, directly "worships" or "swears a allegiance" to the Weaver. None of the highest-ranking DNA executives would even believe in the Weaver if they were told of the concept. Instead, DNA's acts are more subtle and calculating than the other companies: they philosophize and actions power the Weaver without the necessity of devotion to the Weaver as a concept. The company's employees, who are often well-educated, are no more powerful than the neighbors down the street. The danger of DNA comes from the amount of accurate information and data they have collected on werewolves over the past decade or so. They still have much to learn, but what they *do* know is pretty staggering. And within their environment, knowledge is power. Moreover, being scientist types, they have plenty of impressive technology to back up their schemes. It's true that no lab-coated DNA scientist is going to survive a lawbreaker battle with a werewolf having some weird twist of power.

However, even in death, DNA can be deadly. Consider the effects of the recording devices stationed all around the city: even if all the staff gets killed, DNA will still have an extremely accurate record of what happened. Any and all kinds of data will be put to good use.

So the best use for DNA is behind the scenes. They're active all around North America, in schools and the town private labs, watching and listening. Any rumor is well worth checking out, so they're particularly interested in "wild dog attacks" and people who end up with bloody wounds who can't remember what happened. When the Deluge strikes, and mortals are witness, there's a reasonable chance DNA might also make an appearance. And in the interest of eradicating a terrible epidemic, of course.

### Lexicon

These are the terms DNA uses when discussing aspects of the "lycanthropoid disease" they believe is afflicting humans and wolves alike.

**Carrier** The DNA term for Kimbark.

**GLS** Genetic Lycanthropic Syndrome, the "disease" DNA believes is afflicting certain humans and wolves.

**GLS-1H** DNA term for human werewolves.

**GLS-1L** DNA term for lupine werewolves.

**GLS-2** DNA term for metis.

### Why DNA Exists

DNA represents the madness of the Weaver in its desire to enforce stagnation, inertia and rigidity. They want to eliminate deviations from standard patterns in the gene pool, regardless of the consequences. In the process, the DNA scientists have developed their view of how biological life should progress, and the werewolf "disease" is simply not part of that process.

They believe shapechangers are victims of an unfortunate genetic anomaly, and that by whatever means necessary, that disease must be cured or eradicated. Even if they were to hear supernatural explanations, DNA scientists would completely disbelieve them, postulating instead that historical cases of werewolf legends are rather examples of mutant strains of GLS running rampant in small, inbreeding populations. In other words, everything has a rational explanation with a firm grounding in science.

### Historical Background

DNA began around 20 years ago as a joint venture between two scientists, Dr. Mitchell Howak and Dr. Alan Kenchlow (see Prologue Twilight). Desperate to find a cure for Kenchlow's ALS (commonly known as Lou Gehrig's Disease), the two parlayed their considerable fortunes and expense into developing a genetic research institute second to none. Branches opened

### Must-See Media

The following movies and television shows should provide plenty of inspiration for your characters. Some deal directly with the manipulation of the gene pool, and the ensuing chaos, while others are just nice examples of science gone awry.

**Clonewar: Wild Farms: The Matrix Come Jurassic Park** (note that the book comes across as less sensational and has more scientific dialogue for you to pirate.) **Extreme Measures**; **Freejack** (well, sort of).

across the United States and Canada. Though Kenchew eventually departed, in good terms at first, the company continued to the very admirable merit of his work.

But in 1992 everything changed. A werewolf broke into one of the DNA facilities and against the odds, was heavily wounded and captured. Howak became a martyr when he saw the werewolf and began studying it. He made research on the disorder, the advice of his horrified former partner Kenchew and vowed to discover a cure for what to his eyes was a terrible new disease. Howak and his staff kept the werewolf alive for many months, performing countless experiments on the specimen and gathering data on the Deform, the effects of silver and even the effects of stress to step a few ways. The original test subject was eventually euthanized, but other werewolf and Kintok captures followed. Not only geneticists, but also psychologists, anthropologists and wildlife experts joined the staff. DNA gave a name to the disease: genetic lycanthropic syndrome, or GLS, and their volume of information swelled.

Howak disappeared under strange circumstances in 1997, but DNA continued their work under the expert direction of geneticist Dr. Ruben Sender. He has moved the company's research agenda along quickly, making plans to hopefully test curative gene therapy for GLS as early as 2010.

### *DNA Goals and Plans*

First and foremost, DNA staff members are interested in the genetic heritage of GLS victims. Any concerns for ethics come second to this goal because they believe the threat from the disease is too great to wait to get approval from regulatory agencies. They accomplish their research aims in two key ways: by direct field observation and by exhaustive testing in the lab.

Field observation is a trickier and riskier business than lab work, as unexpected encounters with werewolves are always possible, but fieldwork also reveals some unique and valuable information. DNA starts the process by looking at statistically probable geographic locations for GLS outbreaks: Canada, Alaska, tribal reservations and certain cultural enclaves where large cities fit the bill nicely (and strangely enough, past evidence has indeed turned up both victims and carriers of GLS in these locations). Mexico and India are other notable spots waiting to be investigated. Occasionally, local legends, media and the rumor mill also lead DNA to locations of GLS outbreaks.

Once a probable area is targeted, field researchers head out. They establish themselves among the locals and it's especially helpful when a researcher is from the area or has contacts there. Then, the researchers patiently and painstakingly begin interviews, observations and ongoing analysis of data. If they find reasonable

evidence of GLS victims (werewolves, in other words), they may request a capture team skilled in working with dangerous animals. After capture or completion of the observation, the field researchers return to the lab to compile their findings and share it with others at DNA.

Labwork with captured subjects of course has its own set of risks. Usually, the staff uses sedatives and restrains a werewolf so that they can do actual research on the subjects. The scientists analyze these samples, comparing them to those of prey or test subjects and take samples. The natural scientists also study the effects of prolonged imprisonment on the psyche of the victim. Eventually, all captured test subjects are euthanized.

Thus, with the data and knowledge they have collected, Sender and his associates have made the following strategic plans and goals for the future:

#### **Eliminate GLS**

This is job one at DNA, receiving about half of all company funds and resources. Much the more toward hiring the most professional staff, purchasing the best equipment and finding field and lab work. DNA burns through quite a bit of money, most of which is derived from various research grants expertly obtained by the directors' remarkable lobbying skills, but a good portion of which stems from philanthropic backers. It's uncertain where Sender found people with so much money to spend on an obscure project that still hasn't explained to the public, and whoever the answer is would likely betray news to the werewolf threatening him.

#### **Complete GLS Genome Mapping Project**

About a fifth of DNA resources fund the mapping of the genetic patterns of GLS victims. This is a long-term project, but one that is vital to finding a cure.

#### **Experiment with Curative Gene Therapy**

Although just starting to come of age, gene therapy holds great promise. This is how DNA eventually hopes to cure GLS, currently about a tenth of their funds go towards this aim.

#### **Perfect Methyldeletion**

The Deletion causes great difficulty in studying GLS victims. To forestall this difficulty, DNA has developed a synthetic drug called Methyldeletion. It's still risky and unpredictable to use, so DNA devotes a tenth of its funds to perfecting this substance for use by lab personnel and field researchers.

#### **Project Reaper**

Even though DNA hopes to cure and eliminate GLS in the near future, they've also got a contingency plan called Project Reaper. If too many humans and wolves become infected, the company will release a carefully designed virus that will presumably kill anything that carries the genetic code for GLS. The effect

which of course be catastrophic for the Gauru nation. It would destroy werewolves and Kan'ka alike.

### *What DNA Thinks They Know*

Despite their fancy equipment and alphabet soup agrees, most of the scientists have lost a lot of their creativity. They can make observations and record data, but in the process they've sacrificed their leaps of intuition. So, while DNA has uncovered a lot of information about werewolves, they're also missing some important conclusions. What they have learned includes the following:

#### **The breeds:**

DNA has concluded that against all scientific odds, GLS affects humans and werewolves in similar ways. They've also pinpointed that the most afflicted victims of the disease are those that form "inbreeding" between G-S victims. In many areas, wolves who are also sick let others know by knowing the results of such breeding, that infected wolves and humans breed at all.

#### **Werewolf forms:**

After seeing GLS victims in the field and the lab, the scientists have identified five "body contour patterns" the five forms of werewolves at other words. They haven't yet discovered that mutants are born in victims, though, nor have they postulated an explanation for the variation in mass from form to form.

#### **Tar tribes:**

While they've noted that GLS occurs more prominently among certain cultural and ethnic groups (mostly Celtic, Native American and Oceanic peoples), DNA has no clue about the differences among the tribes, or even that tribes exist.

#### **Kintolk:**

One intriguing profile for DNA is why carriers of GLS seem to concentrate around GLS victims even to the point of marriage and breeding. Unfortunately, they have managed to find a few mutant neck of the k, and these carriers have unwittingly given DNA a little bit of information.

#### **The Delirium:**

The Delirium was one of the first serious DNA discovered, its effects were pretty obvious during the capture of a werewolf. The scientists have long sought means to counter the Delirium effects and come up with only two: a natural or a synthetic drug that can "reset" the system in short periods of time. It's now standard equipment at all DNA labs.

#### **Mirrors:**

They may not understand it, but DNA knows getting captured werewolves near any reflective surface affords them a chance to escape. The scientists have a lot of wild theories about how this works. Admittedly, the

scientists don't know that were-wolves don't need reflective surfaces to escape, but the Gauntlet around the average DNA lab is so dangerous that trying to step sideways without one is a perilous, perilous proposition.

#### **Silver:**

Using silver was one leap of intuition DNA managed to capitalize on. It postulated the behavioral scientists, the G-S victims think they're werewolves, then perhaps silver would do them grave injury. Imagine the reaction of the more traditional scientists when this theory proved true. Silver bullets are now standard equipment at all DNA labs.

#### **Where DNA Hasn't a Clue:**

For now, DNA knows nothing about the traditions and cosmology of the Gauru, nor would they particularly care. They also have no clue about the existence of other shapeshifters or hengevoka. They haven't made the connection that mutants are sterile, either.

### *People and Places in DNA*

At present, DNA has research facilities in numerous cities in the US and Canada, including Rochester, Minnesota; the Research Triangle, Toronto, Atlanta, Baltimore, Vancouver, Boulder, Palo Alto, California, St. Louis, London, Montreal, Miami, Boston, and Dallas. They're in the final stages of completing additional labs in Great Britain, in Oxford and Bangor, Wales. Storytellers should of course be free to put new DNA labs wherever most benefit is their characters.

All DNA labs have two key divisions: Management and Finance (MF), Research and Development (RD), Cyberbiotechnology (CBT) and Security and Investigation (SI). An executive director (ED) oversees all labs, though each one has its own site-based management and more or less operates independently. The present ED is a savvy geneticist named Raven Sendar, who's had a successful tenure at the helm of DNA since the disappearance of Howak. For more details on the personnel of DNA, check out Book of the Weaver.

What does a typical DNA lab look like? It's actually going to seem pretty innocuous, a multi-storied building in some ubiquitous office park in reality, though, it's a different picture. First of all, security will be top notch, both inside and out. Invaders will see the obvious mounted cameras, chances are they'll miss the ones embedded in floor mats, walls and fixtures. Most administrative and low content national labs are above ground, with the real work taking place in extremely secure bunkers underground. Armed security guards patrol the grounds and building at all times. Emergency stashes of silver bullets and Methyldeleatium behind glass access panels in several locations on every floor. Would-be attackers will face a tough battle, getting a way in is one facet of it.

Another characteristic of the labs is their state-of-the-art networked computers. Scientists share findings and also socialize occasionally with their colleagues in other labs. Still, encoding is required for everything, and ignorance isn't tolerated as an excuse for a security breach.

### *Standard Equipment*

DNA has a dazzling assortment of mostly legal drugs, weapons and electronic recording equipment available to scientists and field agents alike. As long as the proper personnel make the approvals, these items are free for the taking.

#### **Drugs**

With the proper requisition orders, DNA field agents can obtain several useful drugs. The first is, naturally,

### *Sample DNA Personnel*

These are suggested Traits for two types of field agents: one trained in social science techniques and one prepared to combat and capture dangerous animals. A template for a biochemist is also included. Storytellers should feel free to make changes for more specialized characters.

#### **Social Scientist**

**Attributes:** Strength 2, Dexterity 2, Stamina 3, Charisma 2, Manipulation 3, Appearance 2, Perception 4, Intelligence 3, Wits 2

**Abilities:** Alertness 1, Animal Ken 1, Computer 2, Drive 1, Empathy 2, Enigmas—Etiquette 1, Expression 1, Firearms 1, Investigation 1, Medicine—Medit 1, Occult 1, Science 4 (choose from Psychology, Sociology or Anthropology), Streetwise 2, Subterfuge 2, Survival

**Willpower:** 5

#### **Combat Agent**

**Attributes:** Strength 3, Dexterity 3, Stamina 4, Charisma 2, Manipulation 2, Appearance 2, Perception 4, Intelligence 2, Wits 4

**Abilities:** Alertness 2, Athletics 2, Brawl 3, Computer 2, Drive 1, Dodge 2, Firearms 2, Intimidation 2, Investigation 1, Melee 2, Medicine 1, Street 2, Streetwise 2, Survival 2

**Willpower:** 6

#### **Lab Scientist**

**Attributes:** Strength 2, Dexterity 2, Stamina 2, Charisma 2, Manipulation 2, Appearance 2, Perception 3, Intelligence 4, Wits 3

**Abilities:** Alertness 1, Animal Ken 2, Computer 2, Drive 1, Investigation 1, Medicine—Science 4 (choose from Genetics, Biochemistry, Biology or Chemistry)

**Willpower:** 5

Methylenedian, which can forestall the effects of the Delirium if taken in time, and injectable forms are available. For capturing werewolves, agents can use either Penacothrine, an odorless, invisible gas that can easily affect a large group of people, or Vernal, a liquid mixture ideally delivered by a dart. Neither drug completely knocks out a werewolf, but both make the animal lose muscular control and mental awareness. The victim takes a cumulative 1 to 100 points involving Wits and Dexterity for four turns. To fully resist the effects, a Werewolf point must be expended each turn. The two drugs are intended to make the target sublethal and he won't know where to run or even that he needs to get away.

#### **Combat Gear**

Combat agents regularly carry items like the combat Methylenedian, Vernal and Penacothrine. These kits also include measuring tape, pens and pencils, binoculars, spare doses of drugs, syringes, tweezers, specimen vials, scalpels, lip sucking patches and a basic DNA manual. Additionally, agents carry a handgun and a personal firearm. For all the good they do, Kevlar vests are available, as are a limited number of CBT suits (see information following). Some teams carry a small syringe of the Penacothrine and Vernal for use in case of a shortage or lack of access to the equipment.

#### **Basic Field Kit**

Field agents with a preference for research and interviews rather than capture carry personal firearms (though these sometimes get left in gloveboxes) but prefer an ammunition of Methylenedian. Their basic personal kit and equipment includes audio and visual recorders, a camera, notepad, a cell phone, binoculars with night illumination and computer programs that assist in the qualitative and quantitative analysis of data.

### *Recent Advances*

In recent years, biotechnology has not only become more advanced than ever, but a combination of GUS depends on early detection. To this end, they've greatly increased what they call " Outreach Efforts," pinpoint children and adolescents who show early symptoms of the disease. DNA has been lucky, finding a handful of children who have tested positive as carriers, and just a couple of adolescents who seem to be on the verge of developing GUS—lucky because, whatever reasons the werewolves had for tracking of these very few cubs, and knowing DNA was this able to bring them in for study without making a mess. Still, if they keep looking, they'll eventually find out more knowledgeable families and will let their kids become rats. And let's face it, scientists will be a little pissed-off werewolves are for doing.

### Unusual Aptitudes

In various roles, such as educational anthropologists and school psychologists, DNA has placed skilled social scientists in schools around the country. They've concentrated in particular on areas where GLS seems to be concentrated. The social scientists are in the lookout for classroom misfits—preteens and teens who don't seem to fit in, who exhibit antisocial tendencies. They're also watching out for any kids that seem to have unusual abilities such as possibly superhuman levels of strength and dexterity. The scientists will make observations and interview the students, if warranted. They'll consult with the school principal and teachers. By these methods, DNA hopes to bring in more potential GLS victims for study, helping the disease-like cancer may spread more quickly in a young person's body.

### Going Native

In a few select communities, DNA has planted the regulars of deep cover agents. These individuals are highly trained, usually in anthropology or sociology, and with some hypnosis and total immersion in a particular culture blend in almost perfectly. DNA sees these agents as an extremely long-term project; they know it may take years before the small communities trust and include these individuals. But eventually, they hope, GLS victims will slip and leave some sort of evidence of their condition out in the open. At that point, the agents can ask for retrieval plans, in which capture teams or other appropriate personnel. Senator and his colleagues are patient because they know that acquisition of even one victim in the full-blown stages of the disease will be well worth the painstaking effort.

### They've Got That Glow

Knowing that pregnant women undergo a heavy of prenatal testing—several blood tests, frequent urine tests and sonograms, for example—DNA realized they could have a built-in screening mechanism for GLS. They've capitalized on the fact that a lot of prenatal testing is outsourced from various doctor's offices to private labs, most of which are extremely overworked. DNA has quietly stepped in to help lighten the workload of these labs—and help themselves.

A plethora of samples. In theory, all such samples are immediately destroyed as biohazards after the tests are complete. DNA, however, has kept many of the samples after delivering results back to the physicians that ordered the tests. They're immediately seeking out a source lab for amniocentesis and chorionic villi sampling as well as tests that reveal the genetic makeup of fetuses. Such a move will open up a whole new venue of data for the scientists.

### Cyberelectrochemical Armor (CBT)

CBT doesn't sound very experimental, but holds great promise. It works by inserting microchip needles into the wearer's epidermis. The suit can thus send the body electrochemical signals to increase or decrease adrenaline and

endorphins, suppress serotonin and even cause blood clotting. The suits nonetheless have two major drawbacks. First of all, the lightweight batteries can only sustain power for about 30 minutes. Second, the suits' monitoring devices sometimes mislead information to the wearer's brain, causing complications such as heart attack and strokes. So while it's nice to have enhanced strength and speed, sometimes wearing the suits has a price as too high for most agents.

### Story Seeds

How to best use DNA in your chronicle is ultimately up to you, the Storyteller. Consider what kind of players you have; if they like investigation, confronting the dangers of a mystery and supernatural or the occasional larceny, they'll enjoy facing off against DNA. Here are a few ideas to get you started on bringing this organization into your games.

#### New Neighbors

This story will require some patience and a little long-range planning on your part, and it probably works best for werewolf packs that have regular contact with civilization. A new couple moves into the neighborhood or small town near where the pack resides. They are nice people, too. They're friendly and helpful, and they work hard to become sterling members of the community. Over the course of several games (and don't rush things), they befriend a member of the pack. Everything is innocuous and aboveboard; the newcomers in no way are obsequious or sly. But of course all is not as it seems. Months later they make their move; the couple are agents of DNA. Perhaps one is an anthropologist, interested in studying the culture of GLS victims. The other probably has more combat training. In any case, they will take to capture werewolf or Kinkfolk and bring the unfortunate "patient" in for study. A tentative y, they may just continue biding their time, slowly but effectively gathering more and more information, a lot of which is relayed back to their home abode.

#### Troubled Teen

The werewolf characters have kept an eye on a prospective new recruit, a teen close to her First Change. In fact, they are getting ready to swoop down and take the young girl for training and eventually a Rule of Passage. But some event—either a Black Spiral or an Inbred journey, perhaps—leads to the acquisition of the teen. By the time they get ready to make their move, a DNA representative has already stepped in as a supportive school counselor. He's warned the would-be werewolf about her potential stress and also about strangers who may want to kidnap her. The teen consents to get help at a DNA lab, so not only must the pack rescue the newb, they've also got to spend some considerable time re-educating her as to what's really going on.

#### Two of a Kind

DNA really hit the jackpot they manage to bring in both a Kinkfolk and his Queen sister to perform a double



person study of their genetic makeup. If the Kintoks are going to be a winning partnership, the werewolves not standing in great favor with any rescuers, of course, though the Kintoks are innocent of any intentional betrayal. Even if he is in the know and unwilling to help DNA, he still going to be a lesser priority to the werewolves, and this is the way he may not be happy about. This seed should raise a couple of moral dilemmas for the werewolf characters revolving around the treatment and value of Kintoks.

#### Bait and Catch

Realizing that G&D victims, for some antithematic reason, tend to travel and work in small groups, DNA has made elaborate plans for a large-scale capture. Past experience has shown them that the werewolves tend to take care of their own. DNA purposely captures a werewolf and doesn't make any secret of the fact. They're going to use the werewolf as bait, but they're not going to let the player characters know. If the werewolf dies, they're going to come in and rescue the unfortunate prisoner, but what the player characters know is that DNA is ready for them. They've got a trap set for them, and they're going to use it. It's a trap, but it's not a trap if necessary. They're interested in analyzing the group's combat techniques and how they work together as a unit. Any samples and data collected

will be used to study the werewolves. It's not like much surprise for the pack to find out that they're expected.

#### The Traitor

This scenario is a bit of a twist on the werewolf story seed. Here, the DNA deep cover agent has been in the local area probably longer than the werewolves have. She's an integral part of the community, and she's earned a lot of trust behind werewolf society. The problem is, this agent is having serious second thoughts about what she's doing. Her reports back to her home lab have slowed, and now she may have has tied some of the other members of the pack. In any case, the pack is suspicious and tries to collect her, with or without her permission; the agent is in a bind. She needs help, and she's the only one who can help. The player characters are confused and concerned. What happens next is up to the player characters. Do they get her out and there? Or do they try to help her, either providing a base about or trying to help her out. They're going to be in a bind. This agent has some use to the werewolves, perhaps there are worse consequences if they kill her outright rather than help her. In any case, this seed should provide some interesting roleplaying opportunities for your group.



# Chapter Five Breaking the Mold

*in the midst of the journey of our life I came to myself  
within a dark wood*

Dante Alighieri: *The Divine Comedy*

## Werewolves in Historical Settings

When did the first Carol walk the earth? Was she a creation of Gaia? Was she part of a natural unit of wolves and men? Was she the first werewolf, the first lycan, and the first to form bonds of men and wolves? The legends of werewolves never say exactly how it happened.

Only that they did. Werewolves have existed for a long time, at least as long as humans and wolves. And with that ancient heritage comes what is impossible:

Werewolves eat apples in times of milk and honey. Werewolves cannot have been around forever. In every time, every place where people have lived, so have werewolves. They've suffered through the tragedies and disasters and witnessed all the triumphs.

Werewolves of most tribes also have the ability to experience directly the lives of their ancestors, or at least to call their ancestor-spirits to them to learn of the events of the past. If you're writing a historical novel, you can have characters relate the trials of their ancestors. You could also have them

play different roles in the life of an ancestor, or imprisoning of an ancient spirit.

Most werewolves, they aren't damn peculiar creatures living centuries, retaining their youth for decades. A chronic case in the 70s and one seen today could have the same main characters. Survivors could even follow the histories of a pack from the nearly years through part of the 20<sup>th</sup> century until they become elders.

One of the most important things to remember is that you should convey to the players how you intend to approach the setting. If you're using a role-playing set during the Roman Empire, make sure they know the differences between politicians and physicians, and understand just how large the empire is. They don't need to know everything about the setting, but they should know enough to feel comfortable. The Storyteller can help by explaining rules of etiquette, current technology as they understand it.

Perhaps you like historical settings, but you don't feel like doing hours of research in a library. Maybe

like myths and fiction and you want to base your version of the past on a favorite movie. There's nothing wrong with that—just make sure that the players know ahead of time that you're playing more loosely. That way no one will get distracted by pointing out that Cleopatra couldn't have visited the Counselor since it hadn't been built.

Just as you can let histories can be awesome accounts of fun. What if D-Day never took place or Stalingrad fell during World War II? What if the Confederacy had won the Civil War? Or what if the British had won the American Revolution? Maybe Carthage could be led to its ruin spanning the known world instead of Rome. Or perhaps Asian powers could have colonized America before the Europeans. Maybe the Shadow Lords took over leadership of all werewolves?

The most important thing is that this is your game. As a storyteller, you owe it to your troupe to make sure that they have fun, and you owe it to yourself to have fun. Don't be afraid to explore the past and even rework it in your own image. Have fun, explore the possibilities and enjoy your game.

Finally, the sections that follow describe different settings and possible interpretations of them for your Garou. These are far from complete. They are meant more to inspire than to educate. If you decide to use one of these settings, a little bit of research goes a long way, whether it's in Werewolf game books, checking out Garou legends or actual history texts detailing events.

## Mythic Times

There are not so many periods of time as it would appear known to werewolves. As far as when they happened in relation to human history, none can truly say. Human prehistory is hundreds of times as long as modern history. Most of the time that our species has existed is lost to us in forgotten ages. Perhaps evil did not rise until many times after the history that we know started. However the Garou were there. Their legends live on.

It's the Storyteller's privilege to place the any of the mythic time settings during any historical era that they find appropriate. If ancient Egypt holds a strong attraction for you, run the War of Rage with the pharaohs and their monuments as a backdrop. Some werewolves could have enforced the Impergium in Roman times. Use these settings as you will.

### The First Times

In the beginning the Garou and other Garou were as simple as the world was. Traveling between worlds was easy; you just set out in an appropriate direction. There was no Counselor, spirits ruled freely over the face of the Earth, and different times didn't exist. Men were extremely rare. The Garou only barely existed. All werewolves belonged to the same tribe. They lived in harmony with nature.

Humans also lived in harmony with nature. It was too early for the Impergium to be even be necessary.

During this time, werewolves can live among their human and wolf Kinfolk, helping them in the struggle for survival. Great and terrible spirits roamed the world freely, and werewolves fought against them, protecting their Kin. A vast untouched wilderness existed. It did not take Garou to explain.

If you use the current theories about our prehistory to base this mythic time, there are many things for werewolves to contend with. Saber-toothed cats, dire wolves, giant bears, cave bears, and other large prehistoric mammals filled the world. Monsters existed and humans faced them with spears, while wolves had only their teeth and claws. The weather was much more volatile. Climatic changes occurred that made the American "dust bowl" look minor. Storms greater than the strongest typhoons battered the land. Great sheets of ice flowed down from the Arctic. Life was harsh.

Other species of humans existed, including Neanderthals who competed with the modern humans. They may have had their own shapeshifting protectors. Also, humans that feared the werewolves may have had access to magic or the power of evil spirits.

Powerful spirits roamed the earth in the First Times. Some may have demanded worship as gods. Other shapeshifters may have challenged the Garou as protectors of nature. Omens of the wandering of the Umbra from the material world haunted werewolves during these days. Characters could even experience the fracturing of the Garou nation and the forming of the first tribes. Maybe they could have helped mankind ventrally start humans on the path to civilization.

### The Impergium

The Impergium was a time of strife and conflict for the Garou. The tribes shattered apart. Humans had gotten out of control. Ancient cities now grew up in river valleys throughout the world. Werewolves stood divided on enforcing the Impergium. Some followed the Impergium to the letter, calling humans evil to protect Gaia. Others went too far, exterminating entire cultures, removing humans from history. A few fought against the Impergium, refusing to enforce the rule. Another select few carefully used the Impergium as an excuse to grab power for their Kinfolk.

In many ways, this is the darkest time in Garou history. The imprisoned Wyrm begins birthing increasingly deranged offspring. Corruption works among the Garou. As the centuries pass, some Garou turn to the powers of darkness to fight against the werewolves. They worship vampires as gods. Dark Wyrm spirits receive sacrifices. Garou herself

risers up in anger against humanity, bringing the Fire Flood volcanic eruptions, and many other disasters.

Werewolf characters (especially nomads) will have many moral dilemmas to face in an Impergium chronicle. How do they deal with packs that so effectively enforce the Impergium? What do they do when other werewolves go too far, driving humans to summon dark powers? Can they bring themselves to save their own kinfolk if necessary? Are the signs of Garas' displeasure evident? For troupes that enjoy moral issues and troupes that like continuous conflict, the Impergium has plenty to offer.

An exact historical date has never been set for the Impergium, only that it took place before humans began building cities. In order to add a little more cultural flavor, you might choose to extend the Impergium's life even into the birth of civilization—thus you can set an increasingly ineffective Impergium against the cities of ancient Egypt or Sumeria. Minotaur and the legends of the Greek hero Theseus can easily become stories of the Impergium, as the Minotaur sacrifice to the creature within the Labyrinth. Biblical events and histories can work as well for the setting. What led the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah down to bring about their destruction? Ambitious storytellers could even pit Garou against the legendary First City if the vampires are a crossover. It would be hard to beat a time when vampires are mighty but no werewolf has lived long enough to become invincible and the Garou are young, but in great numbers, or the conflict to start the incestual war.

### *The War of Rage*

The Garou blamed the other Changing Breeds for the Wyrms. The Garou had strayed from Garas because they woke the dead. The Bastet forgot their responsibilities and served only the individual whims. The Mokou took the very shape of the Wyrms. The alien nature of the Rokea and the Anatas was easy for any to sense. The Raskin walked in the darkness of ending life and disease. Even the Corax could not be trusted.

Most accounts have it that werewolves started the War of Rage with little provocation. They attacked every one of the other Changing Breeds. The others retaliated in kind. Soon, events were out of control; reason was lost to a madness, and the War of Rage became a struggle for survival. Characters could be werewolves hunting down the other Changing Breeds during the War of Rage. They could also take the role of defenders, struggling to survive against an onslaught of attacks by other shapeshifters. For troupes that like action, this chronicle has the potential for great fight scenes.

Against the backdrop of the War of Rage, humanity gets more out of control. While a pack concerns

itself with a Bastet, the Wyrms continue to corrupt. As a storyteller, you could set a chronicle where the characters are trying to end the War of Rage and get back to fighting the Wyrms. This could give them allies and enemies on both sides. Many Garou are hardened veterans of the War of Rage, it is said, if they've known in their lifetimes. They won't easily contact pack mates lower before their enemies. The other breeds either have decided if hate, grief and rage are worth it or werewolves. They won't trust the enemies easily. Meanwhile, Garas suffers, the Wyrms corrupt, and the Weaver's web closes in on everyone doing their work.

As a storyteller, the War of Rage also gives you opportunity to create new Gifts, fetters, and talens specifically created for the War. Some werewolves learned Gifts from the spirit allies of their enemies. Weapons designed to kill members of other Changing Breeds could exist.

This setting makes a good flashback to an existing chronicle. Modern Garou must still deal with the legal and the scars left behind from the War of Rage. For many of the others, the War of Rage continues even today. Spirits allied to the others shapeshifters have not forgotten what the werewolves did to them and weapons created by Garou to fight the War of Rage may still exist. What if some of these fetters fell into the hands of hunters or Black Spiral Dancers? It is also an opportunity to show the war from the perspective of both sides. The Garou were the worst offenders, to be sure, but in keeping with the World of Darkness shades of gray, it could be a good idea to show your players that not all Fera were innocent victims. If your players encounter shapeshifters that actually were abusing their powers, then the context of the War of Rage itself shifts slightly. Instead of the Garou as mindless aggressors, their motivation becomes at least understandable, if not forgivable—making the War of Rage a more relevant and realistic story.

The War of Rage makes a good backdrop to any chronicle involving ancient Garou. Like many of the mythic times of werewolf legend, the exact dates aren't specified. The war would have started and ended at different times in different lands. It is hard to deny that Bastet and Mokou hunting werewolves across the world is a good story of a pyramic under construction.

Egypt is a wonderfully cinematic scene. A showdown during a dramatic ceremony at the pyramids would also be dramatic. This conflict should also make the players think about what werewolves are all ways are good guys—or if you have some players who are convinced that werewolves are always the bad guys, you can rattle their perceptions, too.

## Historical Times

Werewolves have been around for ever, and even the most enlightened of us primarily consider them as a part of the periphery of civilization in the shadows of the night. This means that almost all material about the Werewolf is based on the

werewolves of Kentucky. When I read at the time a story about how werewolves may affect the lives of the world makes for a better story than having a pack assassinate Napoleon or Christopher Columbus. All will be a part of the story.

It's not said that Storytellers should not be afraid to have historical figures appear in their stories. Just be careful. The best way to handle

the matter is to use historical characters such as servants or friends. Remember that anyone who has a historical figure appear

in a game has an unacceptable risk, remember that players have a hard time killing anyone who does not

have a history. For example, the character of Napoleon is a certain way aware of Napoleon's laws, and the French he has

nothing to do with the game. A chunk of a player's time is spent in the game. The last result of the game is the last result.

## The Great Passage

The Great Passage is a story about the North American continent. It is a story about the people who lived there, and the people who lived there. It is a story about the people who lived there, and the people who lived there.

The Great Passage is a story about the people who lived there, and the people who lived there. It is a story about the people who lived there, and the people who lived there.

The Great Passage is a story about the people who lived there, and the people who lived there. It is a story about the people who lived there, and the people who lived there.



sters, a few before them. Foul waves hit the Pacific Northwest. Miles of ice covered much of the North. Two vesandaber toothed rivers hunted Columbin against the one humans. An malspirits that had never dealt with Carou saw these new rivers as a threat.

No one knows what happened to the people during the centuries that immediately followed their crossing of the Bering Strait. They apparently have been once hunters, as the megafauna, especially the large predators swiftly disappeared following the arrival of humans. The Carou made peace with the spirits of the Pure Lands. Over the years, the werewolves opened caerns and like their Kinfolk they lived in harmony with nature. They still faced challenges. Warfare between tribes of Kinfolk and werewolves dominated many years. Dark spirits gained influence over some of the great civilizations that formed in South America, forcing packs of werewolves to journey south to drive out the evil. Deadly Baster claimed the great southern rainforests, slaying Carou that would trespass in their domains.

### *Classical World*

The Ancient World spans Phoenicia, Greece, Mycenae, Persia, and Rome. It was a time of myth, legend, and the creation of great civilizations. Advancements in learning and science occurred along with the spread of humans and the destruction of the wild. Both the Weaver and the Wyrm gained power during this time, as beliefs were tested and challenged and cities and empires rose throughout the Mediterranean.

#### *Classical Greece*

Athens, Sparta, Thebes and Corinth are just a few of the Greek city-states. Athenian democracy and culture blossomed, while the Spartans took the military state to a new level. Many stories and myths came out of classical Greek culture. The Illiad and the Odyssey are probably the most famous, retelling a time of Mycenaean culture before the rise of Athens. The Amazon legends surely arose from the influence of the Black Furies. Storytellers have a wealth of mythic beasts from which to draw (or to corrupt, imagine, for instance, the Harpies as torment). Any good book on Greek mythology should provide material to last a full chronicle and then some. The Persian Wars also provide good background. The Battle of Marathon and the Spartans holding off the pass at Thermopylae come quickly to mind.

Classical Greece is an area where storytellers should feel compelled to limit themselves. Much of what we know of the Greek city-states comes from Herodotus, who wrote about great events and mythical beasts in his history. Centuries later, Romans with political agendas wrote many of the other histories. There is far more of what we do not know about Classical Greece than what we do.

### *Alexander the Great*

The son of Philip of Macedonia, Alexander the Great may have been the greatest commander who lived. He forged a powerful army, surrounded himself with excellent generals and just happened to conquer the known world. Alexander took the Greek city-states and the kingdoms Egypt, the entire Persian Empire, and parts of India. Although he was a great conqueror, he did not live long enough to enjoy his rule, dying at the end of his conquests.

Alexander brought many cultures together. Werewolves following Alexander's armies would find themselves on a whirlwind tour of the ancient world. They could fight the Wyrm at every stop, take a day to appreciate the culture and move on. A pack could discover lost caerns in India or explore the tombs of long dead pharaohs in Egypt. Conversely, the characters might take up the role of locals whose Kinfolk were adversely affected by Alexander's conquest. Perhaps learning to be a Theban reason Alexander stopped at India? Chronicle.

#### *Republican and Imperial Rome*

Rome changed the world.

The Mediterranean. The Roman Empire at its height reached from the Middle East to the British Isles, the back down into Northern Africa. As the old adage goes, Rome wasn't built in a day. The Roman world changed extensively over time.

The early days of Rome are the subject of myth. These were the times of the Roman kings. According to legend, Romulus founded Rome in 753 BC, taking the Tiber River after slaying his twin Remus. A wolf, the sacred animal of Mars, had used it to win in the World of Darkness. Romulus is one of the few figures that could easily figure, or at least Kinfolk and possibly a werewolf. Characters could be some of Romulus and Remus warriors, turning the Latins into a single people, instead of a scattering of tribes. During Romulus' reign, the Romans parleyed with the Sabines and then stole their women away. The Sabines came after the new Romans with vengeance, but the women pleaded with their fathers and mothers to make peace with their new husbands. This is one of many legends about the early days of Rome.

After a set of terrible kings, the Romans established the Republic. The Senate made up of members of the noble class, or patricians, passed the laws that governed the city. They elected officials, consuls, to take the duties of ruling the city, particularly commanding the armies. In times of extreme crisis, the Sen appointed a dictator who held absolute power. During this time, Rome expanded throughout Italy. They fought the great Punic Wars with Carthage, which ultimately led to the destruction of that vamping controlled city. After sailing the cart where Carthage

ince since, Roman legions conquered Greece and expanded into the East. Lectures with great political significance led the way into positions of power, but they never held the influence over the Republic that they had in Carthage. Charot races and gladiatorial games were part of daily life, but not at the level of extravagance present during the Empire.

The Roman Republic held a number of errors, values, fixated on hard work and the rights of all citizens. There was, however, a distinct difference between the patricians, who were descendants of the first of this country, and of kings, and the plebeians who came from families of the conquered. This class difference was the cause of many conflicts and riots in the city. As Rome expanded, slaves taken from distant lands entered society. People in the outlying provinces were not given the rights of citizens of Rome unless they did something to earn them. Over time, the Roman concept of the hard working citizen-statesman no longer seemed to exist.

During the Republic, characters may struggle against the dark influence of the Wyrm as corruption slowly spreads. Disease followed along the paths of Roman conquest as well. The advancing Roman armies often destroyed sacred sites belonging to other cultures, or to make them in the image of Roman gods. What protections might they have destroyed? What angry spirits wanted vengeance for the deaths of their people? How might Carthage and the Romans violate? Did Shadow Lords

Black Fury Kneel in their conquests? Were the Gods of Carthage responsible for the plague on the city?

Storytellers could easily make this story based around the Punic War. According to *Vampire: The Masquerade*, Carthage was a city completely run by vampires. Werewolves sent to wipe this Leech-ridden blight from the world could help fight the war, either in the Senate, on the battlefield, or in dozens of secret locations at and in the Mediterranean.

As armies grew larger and conquests greater, the fall of the Republic became inevitable. Julius Caesar, popular and successful general and statesman, formed

Triumvirate with Pompey, who was arguably the greatest of Rome's military leaders and Crassus, a man whose personal fortune exceeded the rest of the Republic. The three seized power and then fought each other for ultimate control. Caesar survived, but he came out a loser for the time. Although a group of senators assassinated Caesar, the stage was set for his nephew Augustus to become the first emperor of Rome.

Emperors held absolute power in Rome. The Senate offered opposition, but ultimately, if the Emperor had the support of the military, he dictated events. The Roman Empire was a place of hedonism, decadence and

suffering among the citizenry. While the government built grand monuments to celebrate military triumphs, people lived in firetrap high rise wooden apartments called insulae. The elite gave out food to angry masses. Emperors threw greater and more extravagant games in order to keep the people distracted.

Madness and corruption plagued the Roman Empire. Many of the Emperors were insane, ordering atrocities to be performed, sending armies to gather seashells, and even believing that they were living incarnations of Greek mythic heroes. Few Emperors died as a result of civil war, but broke out after the Emperor died, as generals across the Empire declared themselves the new Emperor. While the people living in Rome were repulsed, they at least had their games. In the far provinces, rebellions occurred, especially among the Celts, Franks, Goths, and the White Huns, all of whom used their claws against the Romans. It was during a fatal battle near Hadrian's Wall that the Wyrm consumed the White Huns, transforming them into the Black Spiral Dancers.

Christianity took root in the Roman Empire and spread throughout the Western world. During the early days of the Empire, the Romans persecuted Christians and accused them of baby sacrifice and false worship. Finally, during a civil war, the general

took the throne. He made Christianity the state religion. He also renamed the city of Byzantium and divided the empire into the Eastern and Western Roman Empires. Constantinople by Night, a prelude for *Vampire: The Dark Ages*, has copious source material that could be converted for use in a *Werewolf* chronicle. Later Emperors persecuted non-Christians and destroyed pagan sites. The Olympics in Greece ended because they honored false gods.

The Roman Empire's fertile ground for Storytellers. It was a city founded by a man raised by a wolf. The empire rose to greatness before falling to nighting and corruption. Just look at the budget Hollywood films over the years. The tragedy of the White Huns is easily worth a chronicle. The eruption of Mount Vesuvius and destruction of Pompeii has been the subject of various books, movies, and even mini-series. Exploring the Christian destruction of pagan sites, many of which were once winter homes for the Werewolf story. The games of Rome, charot races and gladiatorial matches, of course, make exciting material for any chronicle. The barbarian invasions that ultimately destroyed the western Empire in 476 AD saw werewolves fighting alongside the invaders. Roman politics featured assassinations, bribery, arranged marriages, affairs, exiles, and all manner of examples of

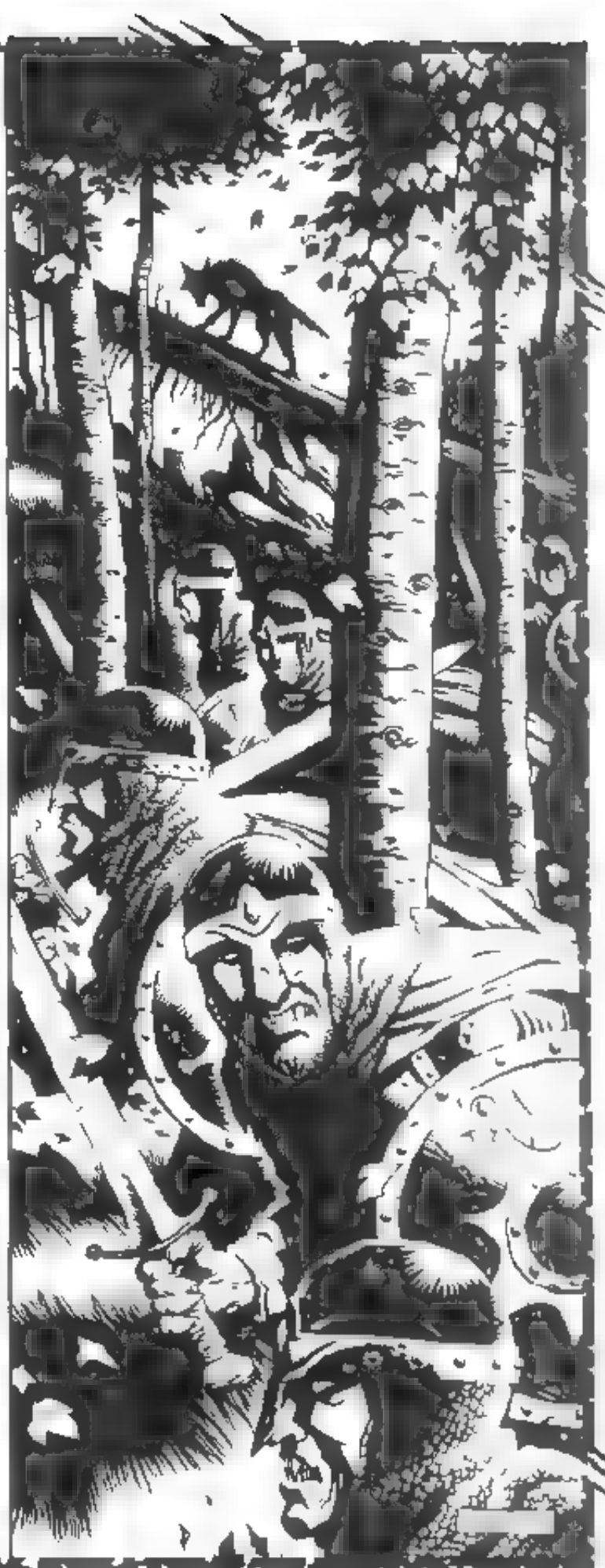
**corruption.** Although political chronicle isn't  
the themes of Werewolf  
For more on werewolves, see page 70

*Artificial World*

After the fall of the Western Roman Empire, Europe slipped into the Dark Ages. Although the Roman Empire fell, the Roman Catholic Church did not. The Church regained virtually supreme in the medieval world. It was the repository of all learning and knowledge. A restricted hierarchy of clergy controlled the intellectual life of the world. The Dark Ages and Werewolf: The Dark Ages both contain fantastic elements, but they are distinct. However, they primarily focus on the end of the 12th century. While those of vampires are useful, they are not essential to the game.

### *The Inquisition*

The rise of the Catholic Inquisition heralded official intolerance for Europe. The Inquisition hunted down heretics and developed worship practices. Inquisitors were cruel and hard for anything that the accused was a threat to anti-Christian. The Inquisition would interrogate suspects, using a variety of torture to force the truth from them. One particularly vile method was the rack. If a subject would swallow a long cloth that would be pulled out and water. As this happened, the subject would be pulled apart. The torturer would pull the cloth out of the subject, usually finding it covered in blood. The Inquisition turned neighbor against neighbor, husband against wife, and children against their parents.

[illegible]

...just a Kintfolk? Is the pack willing to slaughter the town to save their loved ones? And if they do, what sort of things will come to investigate such an overt display of supernatural violence?

### *The Black Plague*

Sweeping through Europe with a vengeance, the horror known as the Black Plague killed a quarter of Europe's population. Death filled the streets. People covered in fear hid in their homes, praying that they wouldn't be the next victims. Superstition gained control of the hearts and minds. A hundred under-the-first-moon during this time might well be that she was dying. These thoughts of doom and death brought about a spirit of despair.

Werewolves may have had enough strength to resist the plague, but not all of their kindfolk did. Many people looked for a cause, some secret sin that brought about the horrible death. Every time another victim fell to the Black Death, a potential hunter was born. These misguided people would seek out anything that they felt could be responsible. As so many died, the undead feasted and the Wyrms' promises of safety in exchange for services drew many townsfolk. Banes flocked to the suffering, making the urban spirit world a very dangerous place for even werewolves.

### *Renaissance*

The Renaissance saw an end to the superstitions of the medieval world. The Church lost influence as the Reformation spread across Europe and England established new Church structures. The reign of kings, learning, and inventions spread through the lands, especially after the creation of the Gutenberg printing press. Knowledge was no longer exclusively in the hands of the Church. The Glass Walkers (then Warden) had the most stake in the advances of human civilization, obviously, in particular they were active around their homeland of Italy during the height of the Italian Renaissance.

For most werewolves the most important event of this period came in 1492 when Christopher Columbus arrived in the New World. According to some stories, a member of his crew was a Bone Gnawer. Many Garou already knew about the Pure Lands. The Set of Fenris learned of it from Norse explorers centuries before Columbus. But, now word spread throughout of this unexplored wilderness.

European werewolves flocked to the New World in the guise of farmers, soldiers, and even missionaries. They did not realize that they also brought the Wyrms with them in the form of contagion and plague for the Croatan, Jktema and Wendigo tribes. The start of the European invasion marked their own apocalypse.

### *The Age of Exploration*

Disease spread into the Pure Lands faster than any European invaders. As when the Black Plague devastated Europe, thousands died. Native cultures were wiped out, senses killed and killed again. More Native Americans died from disease than from a life fighting with Europeans combined.

The Wyrms' onslaught against the Pure Lands was utterly devastating to the werewolves that had protected the lands for millennia. The ages summer was spent to be peace besick while conquistadors looted the Aztec and Incan Empires for their gold. The worst was yet to come.

The Eater of Souls, avatar of the Wyrms, came to the Pure Lands. For the werewolves of the time, the end was nigh. Disease had slain their kindfolk and drained their ranks. They could not tend their caerns nor mount a defense against the coming waves of invaders. They could not stop the Eater of Souls, at least not without a terrible price.

The Croatan tribe paid that price. In a ritual that destroyed the Eater of Souls, the Croatan sacrificed their entire tribe. In a moment, an entire tribe of werewolves died. Spiritual shockwaves tore across the Umbra. Theurgists in Russia clawed their eyes out in madness. For the Jktema and the Wendigo, the loss of their brothers and sisters was like the end of the world. Many members of the surviving tribes slipped quietly into mourning, then Harano, and die.

When the werewolves of Europe arrived along with human colonists, they found the Croatan caerns abandoned. The Set of Fenris zealously guarded some of many of these sacred sites in order to protect them since the weak Jktema and Wendigo obviously didn't know who to fight the Wyrms. Other tribes had similar feelings about the tribes of the Pure Land. For the report, the Wendigo and Jktema found large sites for the Wyrms in the invading Croatan lands. They waited in the forests of the Americas while colonists fought first to survive and then to gain independence from Europe. (The supplement Croatan Song contains more information on the Croatan in North America.)

While this was going on, werewolves renewed some acquaintances from the War of Rage around the world. The European powers wished to claim the world, and they would spend the next century doing so. Wherever they went, the Garou went with them.

### *The Rise of Reason*

As time passed, intellectuals began to question nobility and the rights of the individual. The French Revolution was a major turning point in the history of Europe, as the common people rose up against the

...just a Kintfolk y'ls the pack will not slaughter the town to save their loved ones. And if they do, what sort of things will come to investigate such an overt display of supernatural violence?

### *The Black Plague*

Sweeping through Europe with a vengeance, the horror known as the Black Plague killed a quarter of Europe's population. Death filled the streets. People covered in fear huddled in their homes, praying that they would not be the next victims. Superstition gained control of the hearts and minds. A hundred under-the-first-moon during this time might well be that she was weeping. These thoughts of doom and death brought about a spirit of despair.

Werewolves may have had enough strength to resist the plague, but not all of their kindfolk did. Many people looked for a cause, some secret sin that brought about the horrible death. Every time another victim fell to the Black Death, a potential hunter was born. These misguided people would seek out anything that they felt could be responsible. As so many died, the undead feasted and the Wyrms' promises of safety in exchange for services drew many to their webs. Bones flocked to the suffering, making the urban spirit world a very dangerous place for even werewolves.

### *Renaissance*

The Renaissance saw an end to the superstitions of the medieval world. The Church lost influence as the Reformation spread across Europe and England established new Church structures. The reign of kings, learning, and inventions spread through the lands, especially after the creation of the Gutenberg printing press. Knowledge was no longer exclusively in the hands of the Church. The Glass Walkers (then Wanderers) had the most stake in the advances of human civilization, obviously, in particular they were active around their homeland of Italy during the height of the Italian Renaissance.

For most werewolves the most important event of this period came in 1492 when Christopher Columbus arrived in the New World. According to some stories, a member of his crew was a Bone Gnawer. Many Garou already knew about the Pure Lands. The Set of Fenris learned of it from Norse explorers centuries before Columbus. But, now word spread throughout of this unexplored wilderness.

European werewolves flocked to the New World in the guise of farmers, soldiers, and even explorers. They did not realize that they also brought the Wyrms with them in the form of contagion and plague for the Croatan, Iktene and Wendigo tribes. The start of the European invasion marked their own apocalypse.

### *The Age of Exploration*

Disease spread into the Pure Lands faster than any European navvies. As when the Black Plague devastated Europe, thousands died. Native cultures were wiped out, senses killed and killed again. More Native Americans died from disease than from a life fighting with Europeans combined.

The Wyrms' onslaught against the Pure Lands was utterly devastating to the werewolves that had protected the lands for millennia. The ages summer was spent to be people besick while conquistadors noted the Aztec and Incan Empires for their gold. The worst was yet to come.

The Eater of Souls, avatar of the Wyrms, came to the Pure Lands. For the werewolves of the time, the end was nigh. Disease had slain their kindfolk and drained their ranks. They could not tend their caerns nor mount a defense against the coming waves of invaders. They could not stop the Eater of Souls, at least not without a terrible price.

The Croatan tribe paid that price. In a ritual that destroyed the Eater of Souls, the Croatan sacrificed their entire tribe. In a moment, an entire tribe of werewolves died. Spiritual shockwaves tore across the Umbra. Theurgists in Russia clawed their eyes out in madness. For the Iktene and the Wendigo, the loss of their brothers and sisters was like the end of the world. Many members of the surviving tribes slipped quietly into mourning, then Harano, and die.

When the werewolves of Europe arrived along with human colonists, they found the Croatan caerns abandoned. The Set of Fenris zealously guarded some of many of these sacred sites in order to protect them since the weak Iktene and Wendigo obviously didn't know who to fight the Wyrms. Other tribes had similar feelings about the tribes of the Pure Land. For the report, the Wendigo and Iktene found large sites for the Wyrms in the invading Croatan lands. They waited in the forests of the Americas while colonists fought fires to survive and then to gain independence from Europe. (The supplement Croatan Song contains more information on the Croatan in North America.)

While this was going on, werewolves renewed some acquaintances from the War of Rage around the world. The European powers wished to claim the world, and they would spend the next century doing so. Wherever they went, the Garou went with them.

### *The Rise of Reason*

As time passed, intellectuals began to question nobility and the rights of the individual. The French Revolution was a major turning point in the history of Europe, as the common people rose up against the

[illegible]

August 1891

[illegible]

most obvious story is a pair of sons that go to war against

## The Wild West

European Council has decided to support the  
Storm Fister project. The project is a  
cooperation between the European Commission  
and the National Institute for Research and  
Development in the field of the environment.  
The project is a cooperation between the  
European Commission and the National  
Institute for Research and Development in the  
field of the environment. The project is a  
cooperation between the European Commission  
and the National Institute for Research and  
Development in the field of the environment.



entanglement of European settlers and other creatures. At the whole they needed the protection of Storm Eater, which was powerful enough to remove the entire Perimbera of the American West into a storm of its own creation. The desire to stop the Storm Eater went out in the city.

The struggle to win the West was one of epic proportions. Many of the regular occupants of the West, outlaws, gamblers, gunfighters, and a host of Storm Umbra-witted monstrosities and you've got a lot of material for the chronicle. *Werewolf: Wild West* covers this period in detail and provides a good basis for adapting any time period to *Werewolf: The Apocalypse*.

### *Industrial Revolution*

The Industrial Revolution promised empowerment for the poor. A common person could become rich; industry would lead to lives of luxury and plenty for everyone as production increased. But the empowerment of the people came at the expense of the rest of the world.

The Industrial Revolution saw the destruction of forests. It brought terrible pollution. Workers became slaves to their companies, working long hours in dangerous conditions for little pay. Advances in technology came with the Industrial Revolution, but only after people paid a high spiritual cost.

Werewolves have never experienced anything like the environment. By destroying forests and polluting water, the Industrial Revolution was slaying spirits. Most werewolves did not know what to do, other than kill these new monsters in the hopes of shutting them down. The spirit essence of the workers was slipping away. The Wyrm's minions gained power from the suffering and despair finding their way into the souls of the workers, a power no human has ever before seen.

In many ways, the Industrial Revolution was the major turning point in the history of the Wyrm. The Weaver's power surged to new levels, making roads into the cities all the more dangerous. The Wyrm, too, grew in power. A chronicler set in that time would focus on how the world changes forever, his first true sign of the Apocalypse.

### *The Twentieth Century*

The last century saw a technological boom coupled with a population explosion across the world. Many werewolves feel that the Apocalypse is here and now. Wilderness is disappearing at an alarming rate. Technology has brought consumption and waste destroying the planet. The Industrial Revolution was just a portent of things to come. Humans now have weapons of destruction that put them nearly on par with the Garou. Modern firepower can do more damage in minutes than war could do in the world with the touch of a

button. Turmoil wracks the world so very, because obviously, somewhere, something has gone terribly wrong.

### *World War I*

Advances and innovations of the late 19th century continued in the early years of the 20th century. The world became a smaller place. Colonialism continued as empires clashed, evidenced by such events as the Spanish American War and the Russo-Japanese War. Travel made the world smaller. The telephone, the automobile, and the airplane all found widespread usage during these years. In many ways, it was a time of optimism and nationalism.

No one was truly prepared for what would happen when a Serbian assassin killed the Archduke of Austria-Hungary. The First World War changed the world. Modern technology changed the way nations fought wars. For the first time, weapons of mass destruction saw action on the battlefields. Mustard gas and other toxic poisons killed not only enemy soldiers, but also everything that lived. Strategists invented trench warfare, creating a hospital in man's hands between the trenches. Land mines saw action, leaving a deadly testament to military innovation.

When the fighting ceased, mechanized vehicles, the first tanks, tumbled onto the battlefields. Death flew in the skies as biplanes duelled, each other for aerial supremacy. The war was a perfect illustration of the power of the Industrial Revolution in terms of raw carnage for the first time. The Wyrm grew stronger in Europe, forcing the Garou to desperate measures.

Werewolves fought on all sides during World War I. Some fought for their nation. Others fought to protect their homes. A few Garou even tried to kill as many soldiers on both sides as possible in the hopes of alleviating the suffering. The Communist Revolution in Russia tore the attentions of the Silver Fangs away from the other tribes. As it spread everywhere across Europe, many werewolves found themselves without the leadership of the Fangs. Most septs chose to declare their independence.

World War I also brought back the specter of global disease. An epidemic of influenza killed the young and healthy in the United States and returned some of the fears forgotten since the time of the Black Plague. When American troops reached Europe, they brought the flu with them. No one, so died or even was safe from the plague, which continued to kill even after the warring nations made their peace.

### *Reversing Trends*

The end of World War I brought an economic boom to the United States. Women gained the right to vote, a triumph rightly celebrated by the Black Furies.

for a chronicle set in the war. Hitler isolated England and used his new terror and death down about its citizens. Fascist governments ruled Europe with an iron fist. Slain groups, the bodies of Russian soldiers under the wheels of the German blitzkrieg in the hopes of slowing it down. These madmen took mass slaughter and raised to a new height. genocide. Myriad one ever have to experience anything like the concentration camps. Africa was in flames as the Axis fought the Allies. Japan ran over the rest of Asia. The United States joined caught up in isolationism until a Japanese sneak attack on Pearl Harbor destroyed the entire Pacific fleet. No one could have predicted this, and the Axis could have it in.

The Carol fought against both sides during the war. As a new went on, most of them realized that the Axis powers were Japan's true enemies. The Carol of Fennis became a instrument of insubordination to the Nazis.

Line Werewolves were in the South Pacific along with the troops, with spirits of war woken in the jungles along with Japanese shapeshifters. The Wyrm never stopped fighting its war against Gaea during the struggle. Just when Axis victory seemed inevitable, the Wyrm achieved its greatest triumph as well in an aerial raid near Los Alamos, New Mexico.

The atom bombing gave humans an unimaginable destruction. Even after the United States destroyed Hiroshima, the Japanese government had difficulty believing what had occurred. They thought that whatever had happened couldn't possibly happen again. They thought that peace was the only option. Although the Japanese surrender spared thousands of lives from the horrors that would have followed an invasion of Japan, Pandemonium was open to one anywhere in the world, would ever be completely safe again.

### *The Cold War*

After World War II, old allies quickly became rivals. The two superpowers, the Soviet Union and the United States, began to carve the world up into communist and democratic states. Once both nations had nuclear weapons, the threat of nuclear war loomed over every living being. Gaea's defenders were now the only help to stop the end of the world if the leaders of the two superpowers decided to go to war.

It was a time of distrust and fear, carefully hidden by behind censors who believed that they were protecting society. During the heyday of McCarthyism, liberal informed neighbor for werewolves, they were treated as a threat to the government. Any anti-government sentiment would result in visits from federal agents. Carol started to infiltrate some government agencies but these attempts did not always go well.

The economy boomed, but minorities were left out of the bounty. Civil rights advances began, but in many places, especially the South, African Americans weren't treated as true citizens. Segregation was separate but equal was the policy. It would take a great deal of courage, bloodshed, and resolve over the next two decades to change it.

A large portion of the population swelled due to the post-war Baby Boomers grew up. They discovered a new type of music, rock and roll, which horrified their parents with its suggestive lyrics and hip-swaying music. This rebellious form of music may have helped prime the Baby Boomers for the years of protest to come.

The Cold War reached a crescendo during the Cuban Missile Crisis. The United States Navy moved to intercept Soviet transports carrying nuclear missiles to a base in Cuba. For days, the world cowered in the brink of nuclear war. Threats flew between the two superpowers. People huddled in bomb shelters hoping to wait out the attack. Cartoons taught children to duck and hide under blankets in case of nuclear attack. After a number of tension-filled days, the Soviet ships turned around. The crisis ended. However, the fear generated by the threat led more power to the Wyrm. For decades to come, people around the world would carry the fear of global destruction with them.

The Vietnam War began as one of America's attempts to stop the spread of communism. The longest and most intense jungle fighting ever known took place as American soldiers tried to protect South Vietnam from the North Vietnamese army and the Viet Cong. From all accounts, veterans of the Vietnam War lived tension-filled days and slept with nightmares. They fought an enemy that would never give up, dying in carnage hills in the middle of a trackless jungle. Unlike World War II, many soldiers did not understand the war. They did not know why they fought. A few werewolves found their way to Vietnam. They fought against the war spirits and bands that fed on the suffering, but they could not find a way to end the war.

## *Post-Apocalypse and Other Variations*

Marked by the end of the world, Post-Apocalyptic among them believe that it is coming, and these are the final days. Unless, of course, it has already happened. What does a post-Apocalyptic world look like? What do the Carol do once they've tailed? A post-Apocalyptic setting allows you to explore several themes with a different perspective than you would in a standard game of the End Times. Post-Apocalyptic adventures can be as simple as...

has the world. Your werewolves could be seeking redemption for all of Garou society or constantly trying to make up for their ancestors' failure to prevent the Apocalypse. Perhaps the Stargazers are correct, and the Apocalypse is just another stage in an eternal cycle.

Changing the setting from the standard World of Darkness presents the Storyteller with both opportunities and challenges. You now have the chance to personalize your world—it can be whatever you want it to be. You can change the rules without worrying about a player complaining “but it says on page 68 that it will work if I do 14 successes.” Changing the setting, especially if the group is made up of veteran Werewolf players, can help encourage roleplaying and give a new perspective on Garou society. It keeps the players on their toes and gives them new areas to explore. That does lead, however, to one challenge: Not all players are willing to let you pry the rulebooks from their protesting fingers. Some players may feel confused or uncomfortable. A good idea of any game, but especially one where you plan to tweak the rules, is to warn your players ahead of time that not all will be as they expect.

The World of Darkness is a comfortable setting for many players—similar enough to the real world for them to be able to relate to it without too much trouble. That familiarity is part of what lends Werewolf its horror value. Players suddenly have the themes and morality of Werewolf confronting their perceptions of the real world. As a result, changing the setting can cause the plausibility of your game to suffer. Most alternate settings work best when the players can still relate to something—human emotions, a particular place, or anything else that lets the players connect with their characters. Of course, every rule has its exception, and it is perfectly possible to create an alternate setting that will completely disorient the players. Just make sure you are prepared to deal with the consequences.

If you need some inspiration, watch a few of your favorite apocalyptic movies, or read a few books. Pay special attention to the messages—they often center on survival, redemption, and rebirth, all of which are great themes for Werewolf. Below are some ideas for post-Apocalypse campaigns, and other variant settings. Use them as the beginnings of your own ideas, or as visions of the future for standard settings.

### *It's the End of the World as We Know It*

It's the Big One—someone punched the big red button, and mushroom clouds sprouted throughout the known world. The remaining Garou, instead of being united to save Gaia, disintegrate further into warring factions—the blame the madness of the Wyrm, others the Weaver's out-of-control technology. Skeptics shrug human folly, claiming that humans were trying to kill

humans and good riddance. A few packs turn on their fellow werewolves, blaming everyone else for what has happened. The typical post-nuclear war setting provides opportunities for the characters to see the effects of war gone mad. A variation of the end-of-the-world scenario allows the Wyrd to seek its vengeance instead of nuclear war: an asteroid (not necessarily hitting Earth, perhaps directed at Rong, the Planet's incarnation of the asteroid belt).

A world in which many (if not all) cities and cultures have been destroyed, and their sept members killed, provides an excellent opportunity for the Storyteller to bring together many diverse Garou. Elders and pups of all different tribes may gather together and either work together, or fight amongst themselves. It is a great reason for a mutant tribe pack, as whatever young are available find themselves brought together. The pack can then roam the world, battling the forces of the Wyrm. Eventually, they may be able to discover the truth behind how the nuclear Armageddon started, and learn some ways to resist Gaia from destruction.

You might want to make the setting more sci-fi, or go with the post-science-fiction “twisted wasteland.” Along the way, the pack may find strange mutants roaming the earth, including twisted creatures that were once werewolves. They could have to deal with the effects of nuclear winter and a terrifying climate: imagine forests of wilted trees or coastlines swept clean of human structures by giant tsunamis.

Strange cults of survivors form, banding together for survival. These survivors will generally be scavengers and opportunists. Cannibalism would be heard of in a world with little food. The survivors will gather weapons and turn them on anything outside the group. In such survivors are easy prey for the Wyrm, just think about escapees from a Mad Max movie and give them some Wyrm taint.

Not everyone who survives is a whole-hearted post-apocalyptic psycho. More pacifistic survivors may try to unite everyone in peace. Some may seek out the best of the world. Others may welcome the chance to build a new and better society. They would be determined not to repeat the mistakes of the past.

Naturally, in such an environment, the spirit world will have suffered just as much as the physical world, if not more so. The background of the Gauntlet, cutting the Garou off from the Labyrinth except at the most powerful caerns. More Blights form in the Penumbra, making it far easier for hounds to enter the physical world. H-Holes form on earth where Nexi's Crawlers are wanderers desperate for any sign of help. Damaged spirits of Gaia impinge through the Penumbra seeking self-destruction or other witnesses to the terror.

of nuclear war. Many of the n lash at anything in their final dying agonies. Tragic as the werewolves have to fight and slay spirits that were once their allies but now are too far gone to save.

The Weaver's web has collapsed. Pattern spiders work desperately to fix the structure. Many have become Wyrms, tainted and savagely attack their crys taline counterparts. The Wyrms could even break free, heralding a time of hell on earth.

You could also run a nuclear apocalypse chronicle. In a world where everyone is safe in a shelter, the characters have without fear of exposing the community to dangerous fallout. A chronicle focusing on the development of player and Storyteller characters, Garou and human, who have to survive together in isolated space would challenge roleplayers. How can a Garou keep himself out of Harano, when she knows that in all likelihood every wolf on Earth is dead. A number of isolated shelters could exist with a few cables connecting each other. After a few weeks a group may want to try to venture out. What happens if food supplies run out, if the werewolves lose control, what will the community do about them?

As Storyteller, you may want to modify the skills available depending on how long after the bomb is. If you set your story in the immediate aftermath of the Apocalypse the Garou would obviously have a lot of modern skills, and would have to learn whatever new ones they needed to survive in their new world. A generation or two later the characters would have had the opportunity to learn those new skills from childhood. New flora and fauna arise in the aftermath. Spirits that survived may have new Gifts to teach in order to help the werewolves survive a hostile planet. A lost world awaits discovery and rebuilding.

### *Silent Spring*

The world's population has been devastated by an

contact with it, but the Garou and their Kinfolk seem remarkably resistant. Werewolves have a nearly uncontested ability to dominate the planet. They no longer need to worry about the V. L. as most of those remaining are their Kin. The Garou have lost their natural leaders, as the Silver Fangs alone seemed vulner-

able to the disease. Even more disturbingly, the Bone Gnawers and the metis proved to be the most resistant, suffering very few losses of either Garou or Kinfolk.

As the disease spreads, the Wyrms

Wyrms have grown much stronger. The disease was their ally (perhaps even their doing), and they were prepared for its effects. The Leeches who once stalked the cities find that they now have only one good source of blood—the Garou.

Kin. The Garou must try to defend their Kin from the depredations of the Leeches, who are now fighting amongst themselves for the few human "cattle" that remain. Many of them also want to protect the few humans who remain over the protests of the Red Talons and others that are happy to see humanity destroyed.

Such a scenario presents an excellent opportunity for the Garou to take the city upside down. The Bone Gnawers and the metis can take leadership roles never before available to them. This opportunity would likely bring about sweeping changes in Garou society. How likely are metis Kinfolk to go to enforce the section of the Law that prohibits Garou from mating? The Bone Gnawers could be of split opinions. Some of them will want to do away with status entirely, while others want to earn their new status over the rest of the Garou, as had been done to them for so long.

This is a setting that has a lot of potential to upset players, especially veteran players who think they know how Garou society is supposed to work. Unless you list like unhappy players, make sure that they don't go into this game with plans to make a Silver Fang Avatar who will one day rule the world on the strength of his birthright. On the other hand, if they wish to play the last of the Silver Fangs, trying to retain nobility and honor, it would provide a great roleplaying challenge.

Another possibility is that the disease finished its work. Maybe it's mutating and slowly killing off the Kinfolk and infecting select werewolves. The characters could have to determine the source of the plague and find a cure. Scenes of characters walking through quiet cities littered with corpses would be very eerie.

For a different variant, the disease could kill off all the wolves instead of the humans. Can the characters find a way to preserve the few remaining wolves? What happens if the Garou lose all of their wolf blood?

### *Death of the Spirit*

The Umbra has been fully severed from the material world. People everywhere have lost their spirit and their passion. Humanity no longer produces music, laughter, or joy. Humans have become capable of little more than despair and hopelessness. Though more resistant, the Garou have been affected also, and in some ways even more greatly. The Garou can no longer connect with the Umbra, nor do they have contact with the spirits. The influence of the spirit no longer tampers the werewolves' Rage, and many have rampaged through the throngs of human sheep that now occupy the world. The Theurges and Phylodox have suffered greatly, and many have succumbed to Harano.

In the eyes of the Garou, the world has become a lifeless place. Courts have failed to admit dusty palat-

The air has become thick and stale, an oppressive weight in the air in every breath. Lakes no longer sparkle in the sun but instead lie dead under an overcast sky. The werewolves still remember the way the world used to look and mourn the loss of the spirit.

As long as there are some that remember, Gaia has not completely lost Her defenders. The characters should find among those that remember, and are trying to restore the spirit. A chronicle is

the story of ins... characters serve a for w... and reawaken the spirit, they may inspire others and help them reconnect as well. Although this is an extremely dark and depressing setting, a theme of hope and renewal would help to balance the tone.

What about the werewolves? Can we wonder? One of the first things that packs will want to take is to find out what happened and why. Has the Wyrn freed itself? Is it a spirit back from ancient times. Has the Wyrm separated from the physical world in the past?

Perhaps a lost ritual or feast can provide the key to reconnect the Wyrm with Gaia. But the werewolves must force their way into the spirit world and undertake a dangerous visionquest to restore the connection. Another idea would be to have a few werewolves learn the communications of the Wyrm and use them to negotiate to seize the remaining lines from the Wyrm.

### *The Wyld Triumphant*

The world's environment was a lot more kind in the past. The Apocalypse may have very little to do with the Weaver and the Wyrn at all. Perhaps the Weaver has been able to hold the Wyrn in check and maybe this really isn't a good thing. The spiraling influence of the Weaver's magick with the Wyrn has drastically altered nature's course. Perhaps the Weaver and the Wyrn have driven the Wyld berserk.

As the Wyld unleashes its vengeance, hurricanes the size of the Atlantic form and last for years. The world experiences ten-year droughts, earthquakes huge volcanic eruptions, severe coastal flooding. Any and every natural disaster you can think of. While continents may seize up or go down, what if the waves wash that Australia sinking? Then the world may find themselves in the unfamiliar and terrible position of fighting against the Wyld.

The Garou may disintegrate into the world.



might be finally forced to recognize that no one tribe brings it back into balance. The World is an indiscriminate killer and shows no mercy to animals or humans. This gives you a chance to put members of all the tribes together peacefully united for a common purpose. A variant of this setting would allow you to have your player characters be tribeless, perhaps Gaia's plan to recreate the One Tribe.

This type of natural disaster lets the Storyteller literally rework geography. If you like the idea of the flame from the Statue of Liberty just breaking the surface of the Atlantic Ocean, go for it. Want to turn all of Florida into the Everglades? It's your world. Sea levels could drop, revealing ancient ruins long forgotten, possibly releasing imprisoned evils from the distant past. Maybe the secret to stabilizing the weather and appeasing the World lies hidden somewhere in the world.

Perhaps nothing can be done to stop the war between Werewolves and humans must learn to adapt. Gaia may create a sanctuary—a place like Summer Country on Earth, which the Garou have to find. The werewolves not only have to get themselves to this hidden sanctuary, but the rest of Kintobok as well.

### *No Who Forget the Past.*

Werewolves have been born, you died in the past. Apocalypse world for many generations. On stories remain in the time before, and those now have taken on the character of myths. Surely, a world like that could never have existed in this bleak, dark, devastated place. The characters should be well prepared for a harsh life, with suffering in the past and the prospect of more suffering for the future. Attacks by Wyrm-creatures, Black Spiral Dancers, and renegade Garou occur with depressing frequency.

Amidst all of this pain, one pack of young Garou finds a spirit gate that will let them journey to the past and possibly stop the Apocalypse. Of the many problems this raises, one of the first is that none of them knows what they would have to fix. How did the Apocalypse start in the first place? While they know that the gate will take them to the proper time and place, they do not know what they need to look for, once they get there. According to the myths, the werewolves of the time were great heroes who died trying to defend Gaia. They failed, so how could this young pack hope to succeed? And yet, it would be worse for them to have no chance and not even try.

This scenario starts an epic campaign where, if the young werewolves succeed in changing the past, they may cease to exist. Heroes of the past could be the ones that they have to stop. Maybe they need to aid the nations of the Wyrm in their efforts to wreak havoc, to break a series of events that leads to Armageddon. Other possibilities

include a second pack being sent from the future to stop them. Does the spirit gate work in reverse? What happens if Black Spirals take over the future? Depending on your troupe, a nasty sequel to this type of chronicle might be a return trip when the actions that the Garou take on vital to their destroyed but darker future.

As an important note with this type of scenario, don't get too wrapped up in causality. If you have questions like "well, if we fix it, we won't exist so we wouldn't have gone back so we wouldn't have fixed it," it will be commonplace in your chronicle, you'll only end up with a bunch of frustrated players. It's a time travel chronicle—it's not meant to be a science fiction option. It is to create a spirit guardian of the gate that explains that if the pack changes the past, the changes will be permanent, even if the timeline is changed. End of discussion and everyone goes back to worrying about what to do instead of trying to wrap their heads around the space-time continuum.

### *Victory!*

The Wyrm has been healed—or even destroyed! The werewolves have survived the Final Days. Gaia's defenders and survivors. What happens after the Wyrm is defeated? Without the constant threat of the Wyrm or the tribes turning on each other? Does Gaia need the Garou at all? They always focused their rage against the Wyrm and its minions. Without the destructive power of the Wyrm, the Garou slowly lose their rage. Inter-tribal warfare rears its ugly head as the different tribes try to dominate in this time after the Wyrm.

For deep roleplaying, werewolves could slowly lose their ability to change forms. They have to choose which form to stay in, because like archaic animals, instincts. They could freeze that way. The Corrupter Wyrm may be gone, but not all of its human servants. Evil still exists in the world. For example, vampires are not necessarily Wyrm-creatures. Can werewolves still protect the humans or save their lives if Gaia no longer needs them? Does the Weaver become the big enemy? Glass Walkers may find themselves in a very bad light with the other tribes.

And if the Wyrm was actually destroyed—not healed, but wiped from the universe—what then? Without a force of Balance at all, the universe might quickly become unraveled as the Weaver and Wyld fight for dominance with nothing to keep them in check. Can something else be restored to the position of Balancer? Could the Garou find a way to find a way to replace the Wyrm?

### *Welcome to the Apocalypse*

The Eye of the Wyrm is fully open, the time has come for the Final Battle. Werewolves must try to slay the spirits of their ancestors and give themselves for war.

Nothing must be read back, because the Wurm's agents are coming in force. This chronicle takes place in the last of the Final Days. The final signs come to pass on Earth and in the Umbra signaling the end of the world.

This is an ambitious setting, filled with high drama and desperation. Werewolf characters in this chronicle might be far more powerful than a starting character, but they're following the rules presented in Chapter One, so they might be frustrated in the Final Battle. Don't play any punches: this is the big one, the end. A sense of urgency should surround the characters' every action. The Black Spine Dancers, for example, are taking a huge risk, and a sense of desperation, or overconfidence if you prefer.

The chronicle should build to a final battle taking place in the Umbra and on Earth. Ultimately, it would be nice if the characters won, but not totally necessary. Perhaps the end should be like Ragnarok in Norse legend. The warriors all die great and noble deaths, slaying their enemies, leaving behind only a few survivors, the peacekeepers, the knaves and get-the-jobs who can build a better world for the future. How successful the characters were in the stories building up to the final battle should help determine the final result. Maybe they crawl from wounds suffered in the battle, but only after they have a chance to see victory. Maybe the good guys lose, but they somehow survive to try to rebuild the world and keep fighting until the better end.

Running the Apocalypse allows you to do a tour de force of all the major heroes and villains from your chronicle. Take every character you've ever liked from every Werewolf sourcebook and throw them. Let each character's journey to the surface of Antheilis, or gather the greatest heroes from each of the Near Realms to attack them. Enjoy yourself and make it an event for your group to remember. If you want to go really overboard, get cheap buttons made saying "I survived the Apocalypse" or "I died in the Apocalypse." Your players will wear them with pride for years to come.

### *Impergium?*

The Stargazers were right. The Apocalypse was only another stage in an eternal cycle. That cycle has turned. Humanity sent itself back to the Stone Age eons ago. Now the Garou find themselves confronting an exploding human population—one that has developed agriculture, is beginning to form cities, and is rapidly expanding across the globe. So now what?

The werewolves remember the stories of the Impergium. Will they let it happen again? Can they stop the cycle from repeating itself even if they want to? This is much like a historical chronicle of the Impergium, but this time humans may be a bit more prepared. Spirits may oppose the idea of a Garou Impergium. Hateful werewolves may see this as a time of necessary action.

After all, if the Impergium had remained in effect, the Apocalypse would never have happened.

You can use this variant in conjunction with the other post-Apocalypse settings. Perhaps a clean war was the Apocalypse, and human civilization has finally begun rebuilding a few thousand years later. The characters may all have memories of the Apocalypse from their past lives.

## *Other Variants*

Post-Apocalypse settings are not the only variants to the Werewolf world. Changing parts of the Werewolf mythology provides plenty of ways to change the tone of your chronicle, while still having fun about werewolves. Above all, your chronicle is a way for you and your players to have fun, while bringing a story together. Never let the rules or the "official" story get in the way.

Werewolf's rules and themes can translate into alternate settings that may not be real. Werewolf game mechanics do. This can be a great way to wake up players and get them to think creatively. It provides a special challenge to the Storyteller. By creating your own world as a Storyteller, you have greater control. Also, if you've run a number of Werewolf chronicles, it gives you a chance to do something different. But still, enjoy your favorite (we do hope it's your favorite) game system.

Look at settings from fiction and find elements you like. You could throw away pretense of a serious game, open the window and send a pack to the stars to fight monsters in some kind of *Starship Troopers* with fangs. If you want to do high fantasy or sword and sorcery, having characters with the ability to turn into werewolves should make that home of wies or barbarians that much more fun. They could be the holy warriors of the Great Wolf. Maybe being a werewolf is a true curse, not a gift, and the characters are fighting to free themselves.

The secret is that if you are using a few facets or possible variant Werewolf games. Then you can use a fire your imagination than anything else. If you like an idea but don't want to change or radically transform your current chronicle, use the setting as part of a dream or a realm in the Umbra. Many of these settings have a particular theme or tone and can be used as analogy or symbols for events in an existing chronicle.

The bottom line is this: Don't be afraid to do whatever you want with your game. As the Storyteller, it's your world, your creation, and you're in control. As though we've said it before, it bears repeating.

### *The Last Defenders of Gaea*

In the distant future, scientists have created the perfect soldiers. Mixing unstable DNA from wolves and

humans, werewolf warriors now wage war upon their country's enemies. Cynetic militias and combat drugs help them reach a state where they become nearly just as durable as the machines. Science celebrates werewolves as the ultimate triumph of technology and nature. They inspire fear in their enemies, regenerate from nearly any wound, and depend on scientific treatment.

Gifts are special and rare. They are used to keep their loyalty and keep them bringing

In a dark cyber future, werewolves serve as a special police force and elite soldiers. They receive orders from "The Man" with ruthless efficiency. Their only aim is much more important to engender fear as to serve practical purposes. Alternatives to werewolves come in the forms of slayer androids and other genetically enhanced cyborgs, but none of them inspires the visceral terror of the werewolf.

In this variant, the Garou don't exist. These aren't the spirit-loving naturalistic wolves we know and love. Maybe the last Garou died defending the final veil a few decades ago. The Veil still exists, but it's much weaker. People know about the werewolf project. Werewolves may still be held out of them, but no one denies their existence. Gifts are special and rare, and they are used to the characters to help them complete their missions. Werewolves can expect to be outfitted with a full complement of modern weaponry and receive official orders from their creators. Everything is

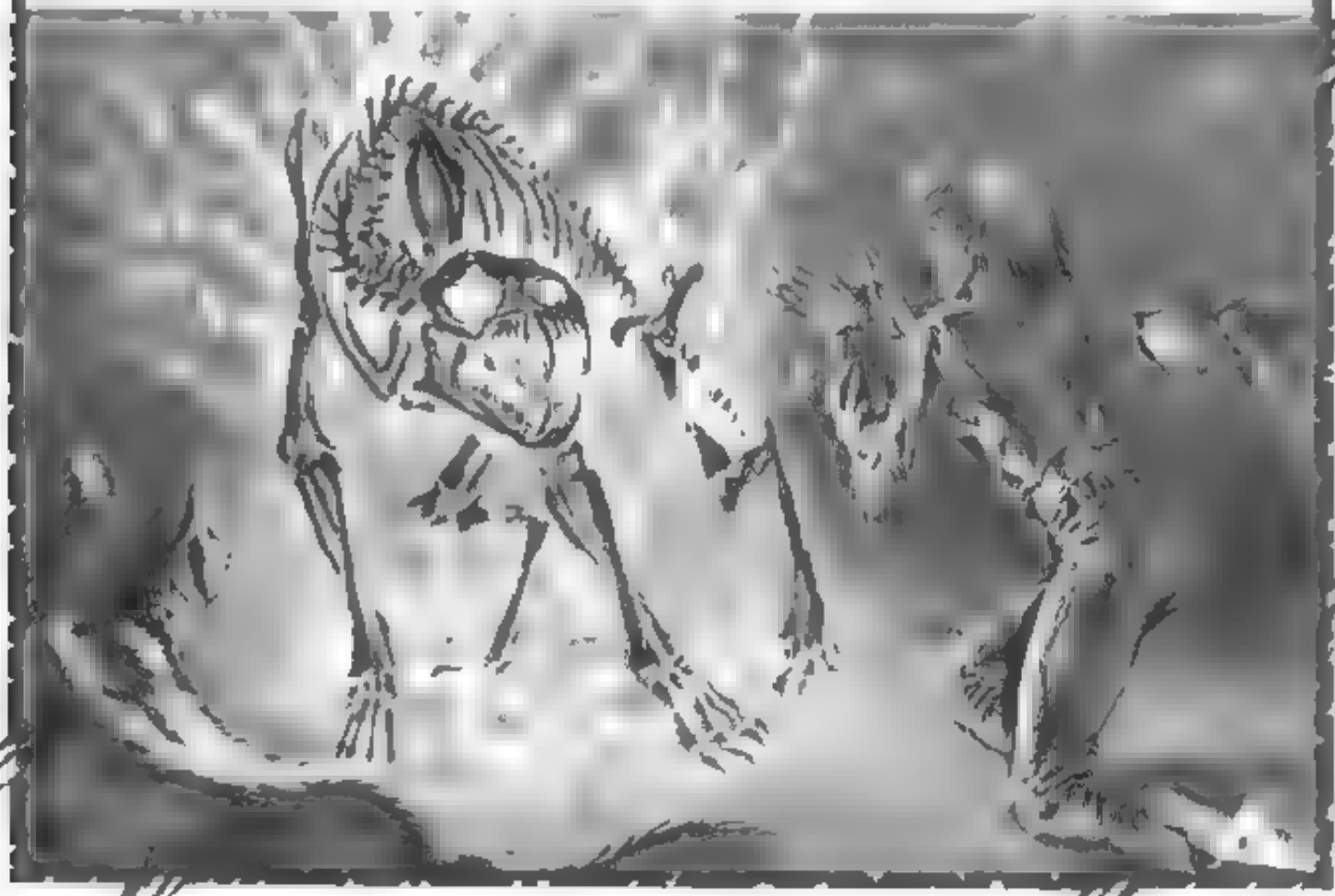
all set for a conflict of corporate warfare and anarchy. Woe to anyone who gets in the way. Oh, survival is not any more of a problem than any other meta-

Some Gifts from the future in this world? Who needs to talk to spirits that don't exist? Gnosis shouldn't matter much. The Umbra doesn't exist, so no one needs to worry about Gaia... or do they?

Dark future settings usually wind up with the main characters finding out some kind of nasty secret that could hurt "The Man." Corporations always need a reason to turn on their creations and vice versa. What should we be any different, especially when we've got the whole set of boxes to deal with?

### The Resurrected

In this variant of the Garou-as-engineered-soldiers, Gaia and the Umbra do exist. Perhaps the Garou are long gone, victims of the Apocalypse or simply hunted into extinction ages past. Gaia has not forgotten her protectors. Now, modern science has found a way to bring them back. Gaia's spirits want them back, and they don't intend to leave them alone. What happens when the artificial werewolves of the future tap into the Umbra? Do their creators decide that the creations are going insane? What happens when they realize what the Weaver and the Worm have done to the world? Do their loyalties lie with the government and scientists who created them, or with a spirit world desperately trying to





sible. The Umbra also doesn't exist. No one gets a step sideways. The new werewolves will have to struggle to balance living the new world and adjusting with finding a way to cure themselves. Of course, time has to pass as well. It would be tragic if someone found a cure only to discover that the bad guys were still out to get him. A tired character might have to seek out an intellect to help her infect her so she can protect her loved one or put a final end to this plague.

### *The Eternal Pack*

Some battles never end. If you as a Storyteller want to use the historical things that may be the chronicle for you. No matter what happens, the eternal pack always arrives to fight the darkness. The chronicle could start with a pack of werewolves in the distant past fighting a terrible enemy. The pack fights the enemy, but they can't stop the creature. With their dying breaths, the pack members swear an oath to Garou, vowing that if they can have the strength, they will use it to fight against their enemies throughout all of their lives. Garou grants their request, but now they reincarnate time and time again to fight her enemies, always appearing in times of great need. Also, in a way, the pack could have been sent or to be unleashing a terrible avatar of the Wyrm upon the world, perhaps even an Urge Wyrm. They may not find true rest as long as the spirit remains free. Though they may imprison it again, each time throughout the years that it gets free, the spirits of the pack return, taking physical form to return the spirit to its prison. Only when they ultimately destroy it will they find peace. Also, like any good ghost story, the Garou could be tied to a person, like the old king of the Silver Fangs, or a place, like the Caern of the Sacred Spring. Whenever those things are threatened, the Eternal Pack returns to defend them.

Each story in this type of game could take place in a separate time period. The chronicle ends with a victory for the character, arrange to permanently stay there, or accomplish their goal. With this type of chronicle, you don't have to worry about not killing any of the player characters. They will be back next story, although you may want to throw in a way that the pack can't be permanently destroyed or made to suffer eternally. You want to avoid players growing too world-weary and attempting to sabotage the pack, although it might be amusing to watch one individual try it for a story or two. As characters that carelessly throw away their lives get old after a while, though a few heroic sacrifices will be left of us.

The characters become the stuff of legends among the Garou. Future generations may even become disappointed if the Eternal Pack doesn't arrive and save them. They may have other problems when they arrive. Some

tics may accuse them of being imposters attempting to earn favor by impersonating great heroes of the past. They'll have to learn new skills as customs and cultures change. Imagine the surprise the first time a pack pulls a gun on one of the pack. They will also find themselves worshipped and holding positions of honor among the ancestor-spirits. Their ages and Phoenix may cause anger when the pack finds out. They may gain insight into the workings of the spirit world. The Garou may expect them to bring back the dead or perform other miraculous tasks. Some packs may take offense at having old saviors come to protect them.

A well-developed recurring villain or group of villains will strengthen this chronicle. As the pack learns how their foe operates, he will learn about them as well. Nothing adds to a fight scene quite like the good guys and bad guys calling each other by name or pointing out the mistakes that their opponent made last time. Storyteller characters can reappear in different stories as well, perhaps being a young cub in one story and a revered elder in the next. Some werewolves could be members of the eternal pack through their Ancestor's Background.

For a fun variant on this concept, maybe the characters switch auspices each time they return or even switch bodies. Be careful though, this will work well with some troupes and go over very badly with others. Don't surprise the players when you say, "You can handle it, can't you?" or hear things like, "What do you mean I'm so anti-social character? I hate Bork Onawers!"

### *What's So Special?*

Everyone is a werewolf. *Everyone.*

In this type of setting, the characters are part of a Silver Pack or have some other advantage over most people, but everyone is a Garou. People keep their intentions under tight control lest the Rage grow too great. Doctors give their patients special medications to help them retain control. Sports take place with the participants in Urinos form. Fur-coloring shampoos are all the rage (pun intended). Instead of a space program, werewolves are colonizing the Umbra with special moon bridges. Everyone reveres Gaea. Universities focus about conversing with spirits. Instead of crime, urban sprawl, you have to live with the mad and the deaf and designed them to harmonize with nature. Politics settle disputes with claws. Society may handle divorce the same way. Possession of silver requires a permit.

Let's don't really exist. Everyone's technic may a mutus, but breeding works fine and there's no trace of deformities. Anyone may take Gifts. It's either the homicidal or lupus list. Of course, children could occasionally be born as mutants. People would consider them handicapped and give them special care and sympathy. The mutants may grow up angry about it, as

usual. As a story idea, maybe true metis start to be born in greater and greater numbers. Something may be going wrong in the hospital.

Evil don't exist. Instead, anyone who falls to the Wyrm becomes a Black Spiral Dancer. Under world logic, as of Black Spirals wage a perpetual war against the rest of the world. Anti-Black Spiral packs form specifically to combat the threat.

This setting probably makes for a better short chronicle than a long one. But again, it should make players think, especially if they have a tendency to push normal humans around. Another option would be to make the player characters into humans or wolves in this world. For one reason, the Carou are ones who aren't Carou. This may make them evil or make them more trustworthy since they don't struggle with Rage. They may need to go on a quest to attain their Carou heritage and join society.

### *Servants of the Dragon*

Want to really turn Werewolf into a madhouse? Try this one.

The Wyrm, or Dragon, desperately struggles to save and insane Gaea from the warring powers of the Wyld and the Weaver. The Dragon is not imprisoned anywhere or insane. His agents of violence, the Carou, try to purify the corrupt spirits. Failing that, they call the "healers" Gaea. All of the tribes pay some reverence to the Dragon.

Famiri are noble humans who've sworn themselves to the service of the Dragon. Unfortunately, each one of these individuals knows that the human body can't contain the power of the Dragon for long. Over time, they slowly suffer physical and even mental agony, but they're willing to do it to help save Gaea from Herself. Famiri are the ultimate martyrs, true heroes, in every sense.

The Wyrm isn't a force of corruption, more like a purifying flame. He does his best to try to save Gaea but such a powerful force could just as well destroy Her. Therefore, he needs the werewolves to help him try to heal and save Gaea. The Dragon's power can corrupt the weak-willed, so Gaea must gain Renown to prove that they have the strength of will and character to handle the Dragon's Gifts. The Spirit Dancers are one of the greatest tribes of werewolves while the Silver Fangs succumbed to the madness of Gaea ages ago.

Alternatively, just move the Wyrm from its position as the main antagonist in Werewolf. The Weaver or the Wyld could easily replace it. The Glass Walkers or the Kold Tawns could assume the role of the alien tribe. Gaea Herself could lash out against Her children as She suffers from environmental and spiritual damage. The Tiatou could stand united in their attempts to save Gaea.

Sacred sites are locations where Gaea's spirits pass between worlds before they re-emerge on earth, killing all in their wake. Werewolves must seek out alternative places to gain spiritual energy, possibly through gnosis from the Weavers' labs in this alternate world.

### *Alien Invasion*

In the midst of looking into mutants seeking out corrupt or anti-the Wyld, werewolves sometimes forget to look up. Well, in this alternate setting, prepare to put the Tiatou in the back burner. A much more physical threat has found its way to earth. The Carou may be the only chance we have.

Scarcely material for alien invasions is everywhere. You can find movies like *Independence Day*, *Twilight*, and the Alien trilogy at a nearby video store. Alien is everywhere as well, but H.G. Wells' *War of the Worlds* was probably the first.

Aliens could be giant insects, spindly creatures with great mental powers, or actual demons, or best of all, shape-shifters. They should have technology beyond that of earthlings; after all, they did manage to get here. However, it shouldn't be so powerful that the human race and, more importantly, the Carou, can't put up a fight.

During classic alien invasion tales, the invaders always have some type of weakness that the heroes can exploit. The basic plot is usually discovering this weakness. Maybe their ships are impenetrable by modern weapons, but they have no wards against attacks from the Umbra. Packs of werewolves could slip through the Umbra and make their way inside the ships.

The aliens may have studied humans, but they don't even have an understanding of the existence of werewolves.

Alien invasions also have the wonderful effect of turning mortal enemies into best friends. After all, if they destroy our planet, what are we fighting? Hunters, vampires, and Black Spiral Dancers could all unite with werewolves to fight off the invasion. Once the aliens leave, things may return to normal, or perhaps the former enemies will have found a common ground.

Of course, the invasion could be a misunderstanding. Alien starships forced to land for repairs may inadvertently release high levels of radiation into the atmosphere, which the military may interpret as an attack. The pack may need to dispel the alien threat.

They need to repair the ship and flee. Perhaps an inconvenient way for aliens to get home would be to take a long trek through the Deeper Umbra.

An invasion can come from any direction. They don't have to originate on earth. Aliens could come from the Dimension, deep within the earth's core, or from the future. Invaders could be from an alternate world, or any one of the other settings listed here. For extra fun, the



George Orwell's 1984 and Aldous Huxley's Brave New World are required reading for this type of world. This setting allows players to explore philosophical and political questions. 'Where do the rights of individuals fall against the needs of the state? Is a life without freedoms worth living? If the state has trained its agents from childhood to serve its needs, is it right to blame them for their actions?' Of course, some players won't care. They'll be enjoying the "selves too much to trying to tear down the wicked government."

### *Steam Punk*

Imagine werewolves at war with steam-powered manstrosities in the Victorian era. Although not a true historical setting, a number of sources exist about the Steam Age. Basically, they all function under the premise that the steam engine has reached its ultimate potential, or is fully coupled with a touch of magic. The writings of Jules Verne and Edgar Rice Burroughs provide solid source material for this type of setting. Steam Punk settings usually go for the effects of a Victorian era, but with a few extra elements. It's an easy alternative way to play Werewolf: The Black Blood. Add a few Steam Punk conventions to the setting and you're ready to go.

Criminal masterminds, dirigibles, lost worlds filled with dinosaurs hidden in trenches deep beneath the world, or the waves are all part and parcel of a Steam Punk world. Werewolves have to follow the plots of tubemen intent on taking over the world. Giant steam-powered robots threaten national anarchy. Black Spirit Dancers attack castles and make the getaway in steam-driven airships. Oil wells drilled deep into the Earth's crust reveal a lost civilization and its powerful spirit guardian. Just about any part of the 19<sup>th</sup> century can be super-charged with the addition of steam.

Keep in mind that technology in this era shouldn't be reliable, even for the villains. Large clanking metal devices with a lot of steam waisting from gears are the rule of the day. Science usually creates more trouble, not less. Action should try to run at a Saturday morning serial-type pace, with heroes escaping one death-defying situation to leap into another. Give players a chance to catch their breath, then launch them on the path to adventure again.

It's also a setting for revolution and new ideas. Challenge the status quo, but in a manner that doesn't get you completely thrown out of society. Young members of the European nobility cause revolution. Inventors experiment with new ideas that challenge the balance of power between nations. With the help of technology, the downtrodden can make themselves more dangerous.

### *Leaving Out What You Don't Like*

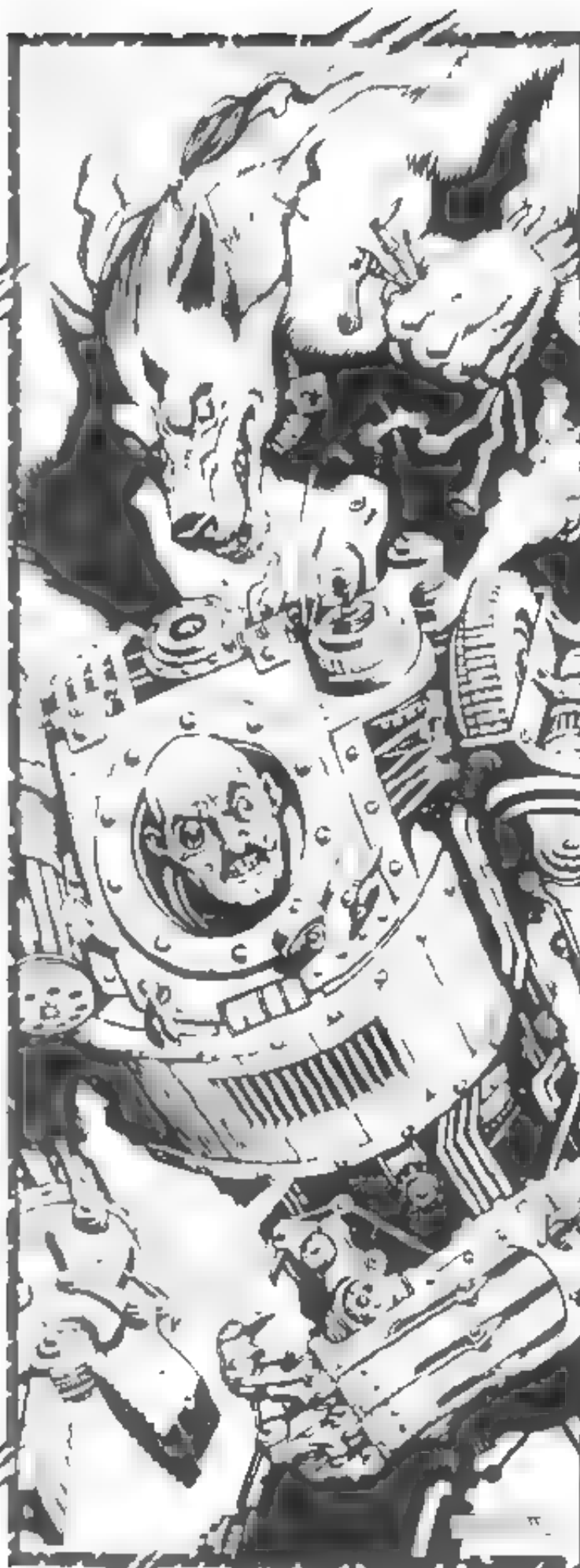
Another way that you can create alternate settings is just to remove anything that you don't like. For example, perhaps you hate crossbreeds with other World of Darkness races. Remove ifera, Vampires, magus, and immortals. None of them ever existed in your world. They are all just myths.

You could target a particular tribe in your world. The Silent Striders could have vanished centuries ago in Egypt. Maybe the Bone Crawlers didn't survive the Black Death. The lost of the Silver Fangs committed suicide during the Russian Revolution. Think about the implications of losing any of the tribes. If the Silent Striders didn't exist, who or what opposed the dark powers in Egypt? Have the Glass Walkers lived in the time that the Bone Crawlers reigned or are they unimportant and useless shepherded by wererats instead of Garou. Did the Shadow Lords take over their best friend, rely upon the fall of the Silver Fangs or did they wait a short while out of respect? More seriously, how would the other tribes react to the fall of the Silver Fangs?

Storytellers can also change a tribe. The Black Furies could traditional enemies of the Garou instead of the Silver Fangs and suddenly the Garou Nation takes a matriarchal turn. The Fianna join the White Hunters and fall to the Wurm. The Glass Walkers have completely fallen to the Weaver in the same way that Black Spirit Dancers fell to the Wurm. The Glass Walkers have reached their limit on technological advances and must work to try to stop by moving any farther forward. The Black Furies allow male werewolves in their ranks. The Red Tars decide that humans are part of nature as well and welcome human breeds into their ranks. The Silver Fangs prey on other tribes of werewolves, conducting their own small scale War of Rage.

What if the Ventrue never existed? Hunters would exist in far greater numbers. Garous would survive in far fewer numbers. Werewolves would have to have a masquerade much like vampires, if they wanted to survive for long. Players would have to be careful about their characters' actions. How would the tribes find a way to control their rage?

You can change the breed. What if the metis didn't have deformities? Make the metis stronger than normal werewolves. Give them a few attributes points for free. These super-werewolves could try to replace the Kinfolk as being a society of pure Garou. How would the other werewolves handle this? What would the Kinfolk do? What kind of check would the metis have to prevent the extremists among them from taking over?



Under the light of the problem during the development, waves and

The following table shows the results of the regression analysis for the dependent variable "Number of children in the household" (N = 1,000). The table is organized into three columns: "Variable", "Coefficient", and "Standard Error". The variables are listed in the first column, and the corresponding coefficient and standard error are listed in the second and third columns, respectively. The table is titled "Table 1: Regression results for the number of children in the household".

Variable	Coefficient	Standard Error
Intercept	1.50	0.10
Age	0.05	0.02
Gender	0.10	0.05
Marital status	0.20	0.10
Income	0.02	0.01
Education	0.01	0.01
Health	0.01	0.01
Religion	0.01	0.01
Region	0.01	0.01
Year	0.01	0.01
Constant	1.50	0.10

World provides most of the space for the World of Trucks. Take what you like and make it your own.

### Add What You Do Like

Conversely you can always get more into your  
 ... ..  
 ... .. Apatnarcha tribe  
 ... under the Black Furies. A little  
 ... ..  
 "I'm sorry," said I.  
 "It's all right." And he went back to his work.  
 "You're born under a lunar eclipse."  
 "A page more exact than a . . . At night, but have ever

THE END OF THE WORLD.

... could be minors. They may never reach majority, my finding dealt with would also continue the a

Gift that all werewolves possess. Silver may not do any more damage to a Garou than any other kind of metal. Werewolves regenerate at twice the normal rate. Silver is the world's most potent threat to them.

### *Historical Variants*

As mentioned in the section on historical periods, there's nothing to stop you from playing in a world with an alternate history. Imagine if the Garou lost the War of Rage and werewolves were Garou's primary defenders. Werewolves fighting as an underground resistance against the Nazi world government would make a fun game as well. Even simple changes to history can have far-reaching effects. What if computers were never invented? It's a subtle change to the game, but it makes quite a difference in the modern world.

### *Nazi Earth*

World War II is over and the Axis won. Everyone lives under fascism. Werewolves could be resistance fighters struggling against the Axis tyranny. They could also be more concerned about the Wyrms, if the totalitarian government may simply be getting in their way. The Nazis could also be servants of the Wyrms. The only opposition to Hitler could come from his former Axis partner, the Japanese. This setting would work well with the Hengeyukai sourcebook and characters.

### *The Second American Civil War*

The Confederacy won the Civil War some time ago. Now, the Union has decided that it can no longer tolerate the division, and its factories have produced enough weapons to have a second try. Disputes over western states have pushed diplomats on both sides corner. If your group likes dealing with a lot of tense moral issues, the threat of a modern civil war will make even the most isolated werewolves pay attention.

### *Welcome to Mars*

The United States was the last great world being the first country to reach the moon. The space program remained in high gear until the establishment of the first Mars colony. Now, young werewolves travel to Mars in an attempt to open the first caerns and make contact with strange Martian spirits.

### *The Colonization of Europe*

What if the people of North and South America discovered and colonized Europe instead of the other way around? Would we have Incan temples in Spain? How would the Wendigo and Uktena treat their oppressed European brethren?

### *Getting Stranger*

There is no end to the types of strange reasons for the existence of the game world, none.

which necessarily have anything to do with Garou. Perhaps werewolves are the result of alien genes mixing with humans, as a precursor to an alien invasion. Maybe you have to be asleep in order to be a werewolf and stalk your prey in their dreams. Maybe wolves evolved into intelligent beings and are running the earth with humans a subjugated race. In the end, as we've stated, it's all yours. Before you really enjoy making sure you and your friends have a great time exploring all the potential Werewolf has to offer, it doesn't really matter if your campaign conforms to the "official" Werewolf world, as long as it works for your people.

## *Crossover*

The options to explore in a Werewolf chronicle are near endless. Politics on the pack, sept, tribal, and even global level. Struggles against the Wyrms. Travel to Weird, Umbra, Realms from the immensity of the pocket-s and. A near infinite supporting cast of mortals, kin, spirit-werewolves, totem and more.

As I yet write the intent is a lot more — the rest of the World of Darkness, to be precise. The temptation to bring in other Changing Breeds is fairly powerful, and the temptation to look at other World of Darkness game lines is sometimes even stronger.

The main problem is such, that these alternate character types and societies don't always blend well with a Werewolf game. Not all supernatural types are interested in or even believe in the war against the Wyrms. If the players consent with a few exceptions of traveling the Umbra, they might find themselves barred from spirit quests at the interests of fairness.

So you have a few challenges ahead. But if you're reading these words, you're interested in finding a way right? More power to you. This section is meant to give you some assistance in wrangling a crossover chronicle into something all your players will enjoy as much as you do. Use these rules as guidelines, adapt them as inspiration, or ignore them completely if you decide something else would work better. You're the boss.

## *The Fera*

Each of the Fera has a story, a purpose, and a purpose unclear. Some of them seem redundant, some mysterious. I have to confess that the Garou's purpose seems simple, and yet it is the Garou who have developed a complex and overreaching culture. Of course, the other Fera's get within this regard may have been started.

from the Journal of Martin the Nameless Glass Walker Ph.D. (deceased)

As the name of this section is Werewolf, I shall talk about werewolves. However, other shapes follow.

exist in the World of Darkness, and it would be somewhat typical to publish books about them and then expect people to want to play them. This section is meant to show the Storytellers how to weave the Changing Breeds into Werewolf games, either as plot hooks or as player characters.

### *Fera as Storyteller Characters*

Fera can work nicely as supporting roles to the pack, either as allies or contacts (even if the pack is unaware of the true nature of the Fera) or as adversaries. They may show up as one-time plot devices, especially as adversaries, or as recurring characters in a chronicle.

### *Portraying the Fera*

Something to consider about using Fera is that, with only a few exceptions, the other Breeds distrust the Garou at best and bitterly hate them at worst. These bad feelings are usually reciprocated. While the Corax and the Nuwisha, as the two Breeds that deal with the Garou, are somewhat affected by the War of Rage, they lack the ability to announce themselves to the Garou.

It is not to expect to be met withfang and claw, though growl is a fairly universal. Many Garou have heard stories of the other Breeds, but those stories are mostly propaganda (from the imagined Fera's perspective, at least, and rarely cast the Breed in a positive light).

When introducing the Fera to a pack of werewolves, show their strangeness. A Gurah should not come across as a gentle defender of the wilderness. She should embody the she-bear's rage, a monstrous, snarling beast. The non-mainstream Fera — especially the bizarre Ananasi — resemble Wyrn-monsters in their much forms, and the Storyteller shouldn't draw too much of a distinction between those creatures and familiar, other beasts that the pack may have encountered. If the pack does not attack right away, but instead tentatively retreats (especially by using a Gift such as Scent of the True Form), then the Fera's true nature might be revealed as one of the Changing Breeds. This doesn't mean that everything is suddenly smoothed over, however.

A lone Fera should never stand and fight against a pack of Garou, all of which know this to be suicide. This is especially true if the werespider they surprise during its nightly feeding runs and then dissolves into a mass of tiny spiders, or the Puma who they meet by chance on the plains of the Great North (one the Garou have never seen) and vanishes. The first meeting with a Changing Breed shouldn't involve the Fera and the werewolves sitting down and chatting about what mistake the War of Rage was. The first meeting should be a lesson in war — remember, as far as most of the other Fera know, the Garou are still on their slow march, which is not always wrong!

### *Refractor Courts*

The Fera are introduced in the Werewolf Player's Guide and detailed in their respective breed books. However, here is a list of the surviving Changing Breeds and a brief introduction to them.

• **Ajaba:** The werhyenas, once numerous in Africa, were almost entirely wiped out by the Bastet. Now fewer than a score exist worldwide. (Note: information in the Ajaba can be found in Bastet.)

• **Ananasi:** The chaotic Fera almost universally despises the werespiders. Loyal in extreme to their Queen Ananasi, they spin new webs and catch her bidding.

• **Bastet:** Nine tribes of wercats currently roam the Earth, from the riddling Quana werelynxes in North America to the mighty Khan weretigers of Asia. Considering themselves to be the Eyes of Gaia, the Bastet are warriors and hoarders of secrets.

• **Corax:** Children of the sun, the wereravens know the Umbra like no other breed (with the possible exception). Of the surviving Fera, they enjoy the best relationship with the

• **Gurah:** Healers, nurturers and guardians bar none, the werbears live quietly, for fear the War of Rage will begin anew.

• **Kitsune:** The weretoxes are rarely found outside of the Middle Kingdom, except as emissaries for the Beaver Courts (see Chapter One and Hengesoku: Shapeshifters of the East for more information).

• **Mokole:** Taking the forms of alligators, crocodiles, and other large lizards, the Dragon Folk refer the Garou as "crazy" and "mad" and die at best.

• **Nagah:** Presumed extinct by most Fera, the wereserpents act as Gaia's judges and executioners. Secrecy is their greatest law and their greatest sorrow.

• **Nuwisha:** Though the wereloyotes didn't suffer too badly during the War of Rage, only 100 live on Earth — the rest roam the Umbra. They are Gaia's tricksters and her harshest teachers.

• **Ratkin:** The frenzied wererats were once charged with keeping human populations in check. Now they are more interested in survival first and foremost, but look forward to the day when chaos reigns.

• **Rokea:** The wersharks do not recognize the Weaver, the World and Wyrn but rather have their own culture and their own ideas about the Truth. They believe that Sea — not Gaia — created them to survive the Great Unmaking.

If the pack asks the elders of their sept for advice about the Fera, they are likely to hear horror stories. See this book's *Legends of the Garou* for the sort of thing older Garou are likely to say about even the gentle Guraht. Stories of the Mokole should focus on huge slaying dragons like monsters, not the fact that the weralligators are not meant to be Guraht's warriors, but her memory. A tale about the Ratkin might feature a brave Garou who faces the hordes of wererats to save his Kinte kin from disease. Remember too that many of these legends are oral history, meaning that while they've changed with time, they also are not entirely false.

### *Fera as Allies*

How each of the Fera might fit into a Werewolf game is covered below. In general, however, if you plan on letting the pack have an ally of another Changing Breed, consider what the ally is getting out of the deal. Remember, the Garou effectively committed genocide on the other Fera, and while the younger generations of werewolves might be very sorry about the whole thing, that rarely makes the Fera too comfortable around them. Each of the Breeds, therefore, has found ways to bite from the Garou and further their own ends. If a Corax is going scouting for a pack, he might be doing it simply because it's his job under Gaea, or he might be planning to lead the Garou into a conflict with an overlord. A Mokole might consent to use her Mneiss to try and find the answer to a problem the Garou seek, but she may well require an entire quest to prove the pack's good faith.

In general, the hardest part of getting the help of one of the Fera should be getting them to sit down and talk (as discussed above). Even if the Fera trusts the Garou not to suddenly tear her in half, she will never lead the Garou to her home (especially true in the case of a Guraht's Umbral glade or a Mokole's clutch). Also, unless a Fera's home or kin are threatened, they will usually not fight alongside the Garou. There are two good reasons for this. First, the

Garou's penchant for bloody Rage is widely known among the other Breeds, and no one wants to do on the same battlefield with a frenzied werewolf. Second, Gaea assigned the Garou to be her warriors, not the other Breeds. Since the Garou went out of their way to demonstrate how efficient they were at their job, the other Fera have no compunctions to try and outdo them.

### *Fera as Antagonists*

The motivations a Fera might have for working against the Garou are varied. Perhaps the Guraht chase a Black Spiral Dancer right towards the Fera. Perhaps the Fera holds a grudge for the War of Rage (this grudge will be identical for all, except the Mokole, some of whom might actually remember it). Perhaps the Fera hate the Garou in general, but hates the pack for one pack member for a past slight. On the other hand, the Fera might simply be a sadistic bloodthirsty monster and want to hurt the pack simply to see them in pain.

The Storyteller should clearly define the reason for the Fera's hatred if she plans to use such a creature as the pack's enemy. Coming back up for trouble with the werewolves is no wise proposition for anyone, and while certain Fera may not care, any action taken against the Garou by the other Breeds damages their already shaky relations.

If the Fera has a personal grudge against the Garou and/or the pack and wishes to see them come to harm, she can read all sorts of trouble to the Garou's door. She can set up ambushes and lure the werewolves into danger as situations perhaps appear. If the pack is just fighting another foe and the Fera is lying again before they realize her presence. A truly vicious adversary may stalk the Garou's Kinfolk, perhaps using Anima Attraction to seduce them (imagine the horror of the werewolf who discovers that his kin is carrying the child of a werespirit).

If the Fera's interests merely run counter to the Garou, however, he is unlikely to take violent action directly or otherwise against the pack. The Fera know how difficult werewolves are to kill, and doing so isn't a venture to enter into lightly. If the Garou are simply disrupting the Fera's territory or venturing too close to his home, he may stir up trouble elsewhere, to drag the werewolves away from his turf. If their battles attract too much attention from his enemies, the Fera may actually help the pack covertly for a time, but attempt to get the enemies and the Garou to finish each other off, simply to make the area safe.

### *Caution*

When using the Fera as Storyteller characters, whether friend or foe, some dangers present themselves. Beware of:

### *Never Say Never*

The reader may notice that reference is made to things that Fera "always" or "never" do. Of course there are exceptions. Of course there are exceptions. Of course there are exceptions. The idea, after all, is that the characters' pack is special in some way, that's why they're the stars of the show. So what if no pack in five centuries has seen — much less befriended — a Guraht? The pack in question could just might be the first.

Just make sure to stress exactly how rare and

by the way

• **"Monster of the Week" Syndrome:** During the first story, the characters run afoul of an angry werewolf recently awakened from hibernation. During this story, the pack finds a newly-Changed Beast who knows what to do with her. Perhaps next story, they will realize that a raven watches them wherever they go.

Each of the Fera is special and creates its own Using one shapeshifter after another, this, and creates the illusion that the world is verpopulated with weird creatures. Of course if the theme of the chronicle revolves around the various Fera, as shown in the examples in Chapter Three, more frequent meetings with the Fera become part of the routine. Unless this is a major theme of the chronicle, however, beware of minging in more than one Fera.

• **Teaching:** The Garou do not teach classes in the other Fera, and even if a Garou's mentor happens to be fairly knowledgeable about them, she certainly isn't going to use the Mokole book as a text for one.

The Garou do not know creation legends and general philosophies about each of the Fera, and frankly the Breeds aren't going to be too keen on enlightening them. Information spower, after all, the Garou have enough already.

Even if the pack befriends another Fera, that shapeshifter should be constantly on guard. She might teach the Garou about the use of the Garou's own sept. She will not teach them Gifts or tell them of her society, beyond some fairly useless (if interesting) tidbits. This isn't a matter of stubbornness (usually), the Fera see it quite accurately as a matter of life and death.

• **Fera et machina:** The Fera have power and Gifts that the Garou do not, and many of them are quite impressive (even "low"). It does not mean that the storyteller is free to set the pack's buddy, who just happens to be a Ratkin, Big Bad, or a Blood-

city of the pack's soul, be the only threat other than with regards to avoiding deus ex machina. If not even more carefully, it passes players off as having "the storyteller's pet characters" hog the spotlight, and since Fera are, by their very nature, they should be used with caution.

## Fera as Characters

If the Storyteller chooses to allow a player to have a non-Garou character in a Werewolf game, she should be aware that the inclusion of that character is likely going to be a major theme in the chronicle. A single pack can't have too many characters.

Of course, won't draw as much attention as a non-Bone (Snarler) pack with a wererat companion. But even in the case of the more "Garou-friendly" breeds, a lot of

explanation needs to go into why the pack has a Fera buddy and why the Fera wants to hang out with the wolves in the first place.

## Agendas

Each of the Fera, as noted above, has its own concerns and agendas. The Garou, for example, are charged with healing and giving succor. This makes a pack that boasts three Ahroun and Griffins a rather poor choice for a Garou character. If a player wishes to play a Fera, the character's concept must give the Fera some reason to associate with werewolves. If she's a typical member of her breed, then the pack's quest (and totem) should mesh with the Fera's purpose. If the character is some sort of rogue or loner, at least her own people, perhaps, and seeking refuge with the Garou, then how does she view her Gaea-given task? Does the Navisha who has grown disaffected and travels with the Garou pack continue to play on the Garou's mind to try to keep the Garou in good spirits?

And then there is the not inconsiderable problem of how the pack's elders view their odd friend. This will largely depend on the dominant tribe(s) of the sept, of course, the God of Fenris would quite likely welcome a Canis into their midst, but if the kids bring home an Anansi, the elders will justifiably be horrified. On the other hand, a sept of Glass Walkers might appreciate the knowledge of Weaver-spirits that a werespieler could bring to the table, but the awkward and unaccompanied Ratkin would likely be a cause for much consternation.

Does it matter what the Garou have been taught? No one tribe that relates well to any particular breed as a matter of course. Yes, the Bone Snarlers and the Ratkin share a totem, but if the pack is suddenly attacked by a swarm of rats, simply yelling "I'm a Bone Snarler!" is likely to get much of a response (other than "Really? We gnaw bones, too. Watch!") This in mind, the reason for including a Fera in the pack needs to be more than "We'd only as it is a Claws or Claws and die go along with it." Only so we could have a Mokole who feels secure around our pack. Maybe the Fera's prelude could coincide with one of the characters', or perhaps the Fera lends a hand on a whim during the pack's first mission. Whatever the reason, the relationship between the characters needs to be well thought-out, Garou do not mingle with the other Fera "just because."

## Outside the Pack

Some Fera — Garou, Rokea, and Ratkin, for example — travel in groups, often protected with totems. The rest are solitary beasts. Besides the obvious difficulty this presents for the lone Fera who must have the instinct to adventure with a pack of Garou, there are other issues as well.

One of the main problems this causes is that it tends to make gaining Renown difficult. The pack may praise the Fera at Garou moots, but Renown granted by the Garou is recognized minimally or not at all by the Fera's own kind. Worse yet, some breeds may actually lose Renown by associating too closely with the werewolves (notably the Mokoué and the Bastet). While Breeds such as the Ananasi and the Apaté are the rarer kind fairly often, the more common breeds of the Garou may not garner them the Renown they need to use to rank up, especially where one relies on the Garou.

Another problem is that of totem. As mentioned above, the pack's totem must at least approve of the Fera's presence, but unless something truly extraordinary happens, the Fera isn't going to receive the totem's benefits (if a Ratkin journeys with a pack that follows Rat, or some similar situation, this may change, of course). This poses several difficulties for the Fera besides not getting the same bonuses that the werewolves get from the totem. For one thing, the Fera cannot act in concert with the pack during combat. The Fera is exempt from pack initiative and any pack maneuvers involving her receive a +2 difficulty. However, this is not the worst of it.

Without the blessing and acceptance of a totem, the Fera is a social outcast. Fera are bonded mystically and therefore share a connection that transcends words and feelings. Even if the Garou aren't exactly best friends, they understand each other and are willing to help to each other's aid at a moment's notice. Longtime packmates may finish each other's sentences or make inside jokes (just like any group of longtime associates). But no matter how long the Fera has been traveling with a pack, it is always due to the outsider. For the solitary breeds, this may prove little more than an annoyance, although a human or mageshifter might feel excluded. For the social breeds, however, it can be torture. A betweener Rukia who befriends a pack of werewolves may enjoy the companionship, but he will never truly fit in, regardless of how much he learns of werewolf culture. Over time, this can lead the Fera into depression, restlessness, and resentment.

## Bending the Barriers

It's going to be inevitable. Sooner or later a player will ask you if he can play a Garou/Bastet or a hybrid with the powers and Gifts of both, or another player may try to learn the upper-level powers of the Noh. In any case, kicking up a question of some sort in a situation will arise. The following advice is the official way that such things are addressed in the World of Darkness. You may decide if it's okay that's fine. Just

remember that these rules are meant to keep each Changing Breed special, not to shut out anyone who enjoys blends of all the coolest powers in the city. If you don't mind changing that principle, go right ahead. Either way.

## Gifts and Lore

The Lore of the Changing Breeds is full of rules about sharing and stealing Gifts and tricks, the Garou claim to have taught the Garou, the Bastet claim to have stolen Gifts from the Garou, and so on. Clearly, this kind of "cultural exchange" seems likely to have happened before. And it's still possible — with a few restrictions.

First, the Gift or trick in question cannot rely on the unique capabilities of its parent Changing Breed. A Garou cannot learn the Ananasi Gift of Spinners (which requires literal spinners) — nor can an Ananasi learn Song of the Dote (which requires a Hippo form capable of howling). Never let pure rules-lawyering override common sense.

Second, if the Gift is something that both species (or tribes) can use at varying ranks, the student can learn it only at the level he could virtually acquire it. A werewolf must learn Career at Level Three, whether he has a Bastet teacher or not. The varying levels, some commonly shared, Gifts represent a Changing Breed's unique knack for some tricks — and this knack can't be taught. Howling will always be easier than Basting or Making an Umbral trail, and that's that.

Third, the Gift or trick must be no higher than Level Three. Level Four and Five Gifts are the exclusive property of their Changing Breed. (Some Storytellers may choose to extend this rule, forbidding Gifts across tribal barriers — does seem silly for a Gift of Four's to be able to learn Call the Cannibals Spirit, for matter.) (See also the Storytelling rule that strike the Storyteller as completely exclusive to one type of shapeshifter — such as the Rule of the Bitching Plague — are off limits.)

Finally, you can forbid players to learn any Gift or trick outside their Changing Breed. It's up to you to determine which tricks can be shared and which can't, and your word goes. Period.

## Cross-Breeding

Obviously, each Changing Breed can take form from, and thus representatives from any two breeds are capable of mating. So the question is, Can they produce shapeshifter offspring? Specifically, hybrids.

The answer is generally no — two different shapeshifters can produce offspring, but the chances of breeding true to either Breed are very reduced. The official reasoning runs as follows.

Shapeshifter status is not solely genetic in nature, but genetics take a back seat to the spirit part of the equation. Each werewolf is half mortal, half spirit, whether the spirit half comes from heritage, a Fetish Egg or the Bitching Plague is irrelevant. The spirit nature of a shapeshifter is unquestionable—and not easily diluted.

Generally speaking, if two shapeshifters of different Breeds combine, the child has a 5 percent chance to be a shapeshifter of the father's kind, a 5 percent chance to be a shapeshifter of the mother's kind, and an 90 percent chance to be a normal Kian. Whether the mother is animal born (a *lupus*, *clinch*, etc.) however, any children will be normal Kian to the Changing Breeds or shapeshifters like herself—a *lupus* cannot give birth to a Khan or to tiger cubs, or even to wolves that are Khan Kinfolk. She may only give birth to wolf cubs, and there's a 50% chance at best that one of them will be Garou. The reduced chance for favored children is one of the reasons that the various shapeshifter races consider cross-Breed matings distasteful at best, insulting at worst. The werewolf who takes a Fera for a mate instead of a Garou Kin may not be betraying his race, but he's certainly ignoring his important duty. Bloodfeuds have broken out over less.

In no case can a shapeshifter be of two separate Changing Breeds; a Garou with Baster blood is simply Kian to the Bastet and nothing more. There isn't room for two shapeshifter souls in one body. It also follows that the Ratkin Bitching Plague can't work on other shapeshifters; nor can the Rage of the Fetish Egg. Cana's curse is one duty from each of Her children.

And in case I need be said, Pure Breed is utterly defeated by such radical crossbreeding. If a Silver Fang with Pure Breed 5 takes a Bagheera who also has Pure Breed 5 for a mate, any children who breed true have no chance at so much as a drop of Pure Breed whatsoever. The purity is lost.

### *Thematic Integration*

Each of the Changing Breeds—Cynov included—have certain thematic elements about them. The basic element is to disrespect the breeds. Therefore, when including a Fera in a Werewolf game the Storyteller would benefit by knowing each species' purpose as granted by Cana, as well as its basic flavor.

#### *Bastet*

The werhyenas served a noble purpose. They made sure that sick and weak animals (and humans) did not die slow, lingering deaths under the starlit sun. Instead, they tore these unfortunate to shreds. Naturally, humans don't often see the good that the Ajaba do. Neither, unfortunately, do the Bastet

### *Playing a "Unique" Character*

*"I wanna be just like all the different people King Mink is like. Sure, Jordan."*

As discussed in Chapter Three, all characters are unique. A player who wants to play one of the Fera simply so he can stand apart from the rest of the pack is probably a) trying to sponge extra attention from the Storyteller and b) not considering how difficult coming so well-represented.

The Fera are part of the world of Werewolf. *Shiba* does not mean, however, that the Storyteller must allow them as characters, especially without a strong concept. Furthermore, the desire to play a weirdo can be contagious. One player says, "I want to play a Corax." And a moment later, you've got five players who want to play various Corax—but not one who wants to play one of the game's title characters.

The best thing to do if you don't want to host such one-upmanship is make it clear from the beginning that the game is Werewolf and the characters will be a pack of werewolves. Odds to a player who has trouble thinking of a unique concept. If the player is just looking for a character he feels is unique and special, that's fine. Offer to tie his character's back-story into the plot of the chronicle somehow, so that the player feels that his character is indispensable to the chronicle (all of the characters should be, of course). A player who just wants to be different will usually go along with that wisdom.

A player who is solely in love with a given Changing Breed, however, will attempt to please with the Storyteller. She will arrange her concept, probably with the help and suggestions of other players, so that it makes some sense for her Fera character to be hanging out with Garou. If you find such a player—one who understands the ramifications of playing a Fera and is willing to help you make the character fit into the narrative—you can probably allow her to play her chosen character type. If nothing else, it makes for an interesting challenge for the Storyteller.

The werecats (the *Shiba* especially) never got on well with the Ajaba, and in 1984, the Sumba lion Black Tooth led an assault on the Hyena King's home near Mount Kilimanjaro and slaughtered all present. Or so a handful of survivors lived to preserve the line. Now, years later as Black Tooth's corpse becomes fodder for worms, the Ajaba feel a sense of hope.

**Themes:** The werewolves may not have much left, but the Ajaba have nothing. They hate the Bastet with a passion that is truly frightening, and how Rage is, for the most part, righteous. However, since the slaughter at the Hyena king's court, some have searched for — and found — allies in strange places. Some Ajaba packs include Black Spiral Dancers, and a large number of werewolves have given themselves over to the Wyrm in exchange for some protection. Their themes, therefore, include Rage, revenge, redemption, and corruption.

### *Ananasi*

The Ananasi do not claim Gaia as their mother. According to the werespiders, Queen Ananasi herself — a creation of the Weaver — gave birth to them and charged them with the purpose. Their purpose is to prey on humans, obey their Queen.

All Ananasi must obey when given orders from Ananasi, but, like the Direclorders, they do as they wish. The werespiders each follow one aspect of the Triad, and so some Ananasi emulate the Wyld, some the Weaver, and some the Wym (it bears noting, however, that the spider-folk try to emulate what each of the Triad should really be, rather than what they are). Most Ananasi are loners, watching and using others to their pleasure. Some are vicious predators, a few blood-drinkers. Ananasi are detached if not simply cold. Emotion — including loyalty — is rather foreign to them.

**Themes:** The Ananasi were never exactly friends with the other Fera and Carou (or "Others") — they distrust them, so they were already determined to hiding when the Carou began killing the others. As such, they don't typically strive for revenge. However, the wide variety of philosophies that they possess — each Ananasita is not only under one of the Triad's auspice but adopts a Faction within that auspice — makes for an equally wide variety of thematic possibilities. Some more general Ananasita themes include manipulation, harsh lessons, and horror (Ananasi are hard to beat for sheer scariness).

### *Bastet*

The nine tribes of werewolves have been the Carou's rivals for time immemorial. Meant to be the "Eyes of Gaia," the Bastet scour the globe ferreting out secrets of one type or another. It would be hard to find a group of Fera that resemble the Carou more.

Each of the nine tribes has had its own trials and tribulations in recent years, and space precludes discussing all of them here. However, the death of the Simba king, Black Tooth, and the peace agreement between Africa and America on the Ajaba has made the Bastet notable. Take notice. While the Carou and the Bastet might never be friends, perhaps they could agree to disagree.

**Themes:** Any cooperation between werewolf and werecat is going to be uneasy. It isn't just the old "cats and dogs" joke either. The two species have never been comfortable with each other — each sees the other as a competing predator and a threat to territory. Possible themes using the Bastet include secrets, compromise, competition, ancient stories, seduction (possibly sexual), and power instead of war, curiosity, and war.

### *Corax*

The werewolves also claim to be fingers for Gaia, after a fashion, and they frankly seem to be more generous with their secrets than to the Bastet. They share a story with several tribes of Carou, and if at the Changing Breeds, they are one most likely to be welcome among werewolves.

**Themes:** The Corax have a tendency to be a weresaver, who travels with a pack of Carou and best be prepared for danger. Why battle first and may be discover very intriguing secrets, they do no good if the messenger doesn't wear a red hat.

**Themes:** Stories involving Corax might use themes of secrets (but of a more temporary, immediately useful nature than Bastet secrets), urgency, Pandora's box, or hope.

### *Gumbel*

By most accounts, the War of Rage began because the Carou would not share the most potent healing Gifts with the Carou. They saw the werewolves as immature and didn't feel they could use the Gifts, including the ability to raise the dead, in the proper manner. Regardless of exactly how it started, the werewolves were decimated in the War, and most of the survivors went into hibernation.

Now many of them are waking up, and some new ones have begun to emerge. It is still a desperate time, but with the Carou's such dire straits, even the anti-Gumbel legends of years past don't always convince young Carou that the werewolves deserved what was inflicted upon them.

**Themes:** If any breed is built to forgive, it's the Gumbel. Themes such as forgiveness, penance, survival, and success are appropriate to stories involving werewolves.

### *Kibana*

The cryptomorph werewolves are rarely seen outside of the Far East, and when they are, it is to act as emissaries from the Beast Courts. See Chapter One for thematic information on the werewolves.

### *Mokole*

Designed to be Gaia's memory, the Mokole are the oldest of the Changing Breeds. Many of them remember

[illegible]

It was a single night he  
 and trace

*V. T. G. G. G. G.*

[illegible]

enters with the Negro, as forthright and peaceable.

Wang, X. & J. H. Wang

The image shows a page of a musical score, likely for a string quartet, with four staves. The notation includes various musical symbols such as notes, rests, and dynamic markings. The first staff begins with a treble clef and a key signature of one flat. The second staff has a bass clef. The third and fourth staves also have bass clefs. The notation is dense, with many notes and rests, and includes dynamic markings like 'p' (piano) and 'f' (forte). The page is numbered '1' in the top left corner.

Times News Service  
1111 North Main Street  
P.O. Box 1000  
Tulsa, Oklahoma 74101  
Phone (918) 438-2200

27 Dec 10

work ahead the [redacted]  
rings May 1 [redacted]  
tre's [redacted] [redacted]



love and no trust for the Garou — the werewolves hunted them down and slaughtered them for failing the Garou a given task. Now rats flourish everywhere, while growing numbers of humans face a slow extinction. The irony is not lost on the Ratkin. The Ratkin are also wholly devoted the Wyld, and while humans built their cities up to protect them from the chaos of the world, the Ratkin and the werewolves are always there, ready to show the humans that chaos isn't so far from home at all.

**Themes:** Ratkin themes include madness, rebellion, chaos, violence, terrorism, and disease.

### *Rokoa*

The Garou are unlikely to encounter weresharks, unless they travel by sea or frequent the coasts. Even if they do, the Rokoa keep to themselves. The Rokoa is a simple creature, and all they have heard about the Garou indicates that associating with the werewolves is not conducive to survival.

Even so, the Rokoa war with each other. Those that choose to live on land are hunted by their sea-dwelling brothers, and sometimes the Garou find themselves witness to (or caught in the middle of) such a hunt. The Rokoa are not mindless brutes — more than the Garou, but they can certainly appear so.

**Themes:** Appropriate themes for stories involving the weresharks include fear, culture clash, and frenzy. A less natural, but very appropriate theme, is the "other." Rokoa have a mindset completely different from humans or sea-dwelling Garou. The almost insurmountable differences between Rokoa and Garou can make for exciting stories when the two meet.

## *The Whole World of Darkness*

Although integrating a variety of crossover chronicles can be tricky, blending the game lines into

Werewolf game can be downright headache-inducing. Each of the World of Darkness game lines has assigned mechanics intended to encourage and reflect a different theme, from "personal horror" to "modern fantasy," resulting in mechanics that vary from system to system. The Humanity so important to *Vampire*'s theme of psychological degradation is a little less so in Werewolf, where personal degeneration is the least of the Garou's worries.

The main trick, then, is to design a crossover chronicle to your specifications from the very beginning. If you decide that you want an electric, balls-to-the-wall, dynamic Werewolf/Mage chronicle, you'll

want to downplay the more introspective elements of Mage. If you want a crossover with *Changing Breeds*, a light-hearted departure from the usual Werewolf fare,

then you'll want to downplay the more serious, frenzied and ripping his friends apart from him. Ask yourself what you want to accomplish, and then customize the chronicle's focus to succeed.

If the most important thing is to be flexible, some truly insane notions may arise, and you shouldn't want to be reliant on the rules text when they do. In particular, it's good to be able to make thematic decisions quickly, when your players inevitably confront you with strange conflicts between game line tropes. Let them go.

To be consistent, once you've chosen the general pattern by which you want things to work, you'll just confuse and annoy your players by making things that depart from this pattern.

Just remember that crossover chronicles are, by nature, strange beasts, and none of the games involved can be expected to work exactly as you'd normally expect them to. Don't let your players browbeat you with cries of "But it doesn't normally work like that!"

Vampires created with *Vampire: The Masquerade* rules don't normally slug it out with a work side-by-side with full-fledged Garou from Werewolf. The Apocalypse, either. A bet's are off — the chronicle is in your hands, not the books. As it should be.

### *General Guidelines*

The crossover guidelines here are general, meant to suggest where werewolves, vampires, and the supernatural here simply as a room to address all the other Changing Breeds. Use these guidelines as a framework for similar judgments.

Generally speaking, when a power *can* or *may* Rage or Gnosis to resist a target without Rage or Gnosis is out of luck. If the Storyteller decides that a subject should have some resistance by a power of the creature, he may call for a roll on an appropriate Virtue or similar trait (such as substituting Courage for Rage). Context that the target's Rage or Gnosis is a difficulty should generally have the default difficulty of 4.

Non-shapeshifters cannot activate fetishes, with a very few exceptions. A knife in a vampire's hands is simply an awkwardly large silver dagger for most, and a tang dagger which only looks dangerous in the hands of a non-shapeshifter. Mages may use the spirit sphere to activate fetishes, but generally no other entity can do.

Other supernatural creatures are of course immune to the Delirium, their nature prevents them from feeling the fear ordinary humans do when looking at a Cronos werewolf.

## Relative Power Levels

Sometimes creatures will use powers that counter each other. A werewolf will use a Gift to detect a vampire's presence in a dream, while a vampire will use a Gift to detect a werewolf's presence in a dream. Although it may be tempting to compare the relative power levels of the two powers in question and rule "higher level wins," this can be often misleading. For example, a 1st-level young Leech who's sunk all his freebie points into gaining five dots in a Discipline will be able to detect a vampire who's highly skilled in the same Discipline. The vampire will be winning—for over a decade. Generally, it's hard to rule that the higher level power has a chance at winning. The GM should use the game's rules as a guide, but feel free to adjust the difficulty for the two powers if the relative power levels of the two powers are not equal. It's your chronicle.

## Vampires

It's rare that a Vampire/Werewolf crossover turns anything but vicious. Both sides have long memories, and are weighed in tales of treachery and murder from the other side. But it's this ancestral war that makes a crossover between the two games so interesting in the first place, after all, the conflicts and wars created even drive the story. A vampire's Humanity score is a measure of the power that animates them is spiritually akin to that of a Werewolf. If the Leech in question has a Humanity score of 7 or more, the taint is not detectable to Sense Wyrm;

Paths of Enlightenment, however, cannot mask Wyrm taint no matter the rating. A Creature on a Path is embracing his vampiric nature, not resisting it. The Wyrm taint cannot be removed in the usual way; it is literally part of the vampire; a Rite of Cleansing or similar remedy will cause a vampire great pain but cannot remove its taint. Any vampire with detectable Wyrm taint is considered a Wyrm creature for the purposes of Gifts and other powers that specifically target such creatures.

Shapeshifters, too, can sense blood. Most shapeshifters have a blood pool of 20 or more. The more dots of Willpower to resist the Kiss. Most shapeshifters are considered to have a blood pool of 20, 25 in Creatures of the Night. Large groups, such as the Blood of the Blood, act as an excess quantity. Storytellers may wish to adjust the blood pool for shapeshifters of other species. For example, a Kindred may have a significantly smaller blood pool, for instance.



Werewolves are allergic to vampire vitae, and are more difficult to ghoul or blood bond. Only a few can ingest the stuff without violently vomiting it back up. If you're you may call it a reaction, but the first time a werewolf tastes vampire blood, if the roll succeeds, the Garou in question is among those allergic to the stuff; it kills or botches the werewolf has a tolerance for vitae.

### *Disciplines and Gifts*

The following are guidelines to resolve the most common conflicts that might arise: use these as the basis for resolving disputes based on more esoteric powers. As a rule, Disciplines that target an opponent's Vitae use the werewolf's Willpower instead.

- **Animalism** powers treat Garou as Lupus form as if they were werewolves, not ordinary animals: no Animalism power that specifically affects only animals will have any effect on a shapeshifter of any breed. The only difference is communication: Feral Whispers would allow a vampire to communicate with werewolves using word speech. Powers that affect a werewolf's Beast will not affect a Garou.

- **Auspex** powers can be used to pierce Gifts of stealth and the like. The Psychic Projection power is somewhat problematic, as it doesn't presume a multi-layered Umbra. For convenience's sake, presume that the "astral plane" the vampire accesses is the Shadowlands, the "Penumbra" of the Dark Umbra.

- **Chimerstry** illusions must be carefully crafted to affect a Garou's heightened senses, assuming that the vampire is attempting to "prove" the illusion's falsehood. (Vampire, pg. 154) unless the vampire possesses Heightened Senses himself, and can accurately construct the extra layers of scent and other sensory details.

- The **Dominare** power of Possession is not as effective on werewolves, who are not truly mortal. If a werewolf target achieves three successes more than the vampire on the resisted roll, the attempt is broken. If the werewolf achieves five successes before breaking the attempt, he becomes immune to Dominare attempts from that vampire as if the vampire had botched.

- **Obfuscate** does not reach into the Penumbra; a werewolf who peeks from the Penumbra will see a vampire in its true form, not as it wishes to be seen. (This rule, in other words, is tucked away in this book for a reason. Don't let your players abuse this privilege sneakily just that they are.)

- A Garou is at 1 difficulty on frenzy rolls when Obfuscation powers are active nearby, as Disciplines contacts the stuff of the Abyss, which sets Garou on edge.

- Shapeshifters may soak the damage inflicted by the Protean power Feral Claws. Their natural

ability to soak aggravated damage is considered "a power such as Fortitude."

- The **Thaumaturgy** power Theft of Vitae reflects a health level of rather damage on the Garou for every two blood points stolen. Cauldron of Blood will cause one level of aggravated damage on a werewolf for every two blood points stolen.

- Garou heal Vitae like all creatures as if they were aggravated damage.

- **No Gift** can restore a vampire's lost health levels, healing Gifts such as Mother's Touch. It just won't work on the undead, and vampires are not mundane objects and hence not subject to Reshape Object or the like.

- **Resist Toxin** cannot prevent ghoul-ing, although it gives a Garou four extra dice to soak the effects of Disciplines such as Quid that inflict damage through supernaturally "poisonous" blood or other substances.

- The **Silver Fang Gift** Mindblock works against Presence and Dominate as direct mental attacks, and Obfuscate as a "more drastic" psychic assault.

### *Abominations*

Occasionally some foolish Leech tries to make a pet of a Garou, usually by means of the Embrace. Because almost all werewolves are violently allergic to vitae, they are accordingly hard to ghoule. By the rules of Garou, they are just as difficult to Embrace: Most werewolves die upon the attempt. Sadly, the Embrace works in a few rare, rare instances — and the miserable results are the rightly named Abominations.

Vampiric werewolves are a really things that should not be. Shapeshifters are the purest form of primal life on the face of the planet —

living death. The Embrace disconnects Garou from the world's soul, their very reason for existing. As a result, the leading cause of Fatale Death among the Garou is so Abominations that exist at any given time is suicide. An Embraced Garou has lost far, far more than the average once-mortal child.

Abominations are created in most of the same ways as vampires, save that even the most depraved Black Spiral Dancer isn't interested in sacrifice willingly; his higher spirit, being for the powers of the grave, virtually all Abominations were taken prisoner as living beings, then Embraced to enslave them.

Garou receive one final chance to escape the living death, upon the Embrace: the Garou makes a reflexive (and instinctive) Gnosis roll, difficulty 6 to die quietly. If the roll succeeds, he dies without pain and his spirit travels to its destined place. If the roll fails, he dies in torturous agony, but his spirit is free of the mortal coils; the Garou becomes an Abomination.

and cannot hope ever to see his Tribal Homeland. No Disciplines, Gifts, magic, or any other sort of power short of direct intervention by a Celestine can affect this rule, save one — the werewolf can spend a Willpower point to gain an automatic success as usual (and is almost certain to do so).

A newly Embraced Abomination takes on the clan's Discipline, but loses its clan Discipline. It gains the clan weakness as does any other neonate. He may spend blood points to increase his Attributes or heal himself like a vampire.

The loss of ages of the Embrace and the loss of a clan Discipline results in the immediate loss of two permanent points of Glory, three permanent Humanity, and three permanent Wisdom. The Embrace usually causes even mighty Garou elders to fall at least two places in rank, indeed, a newly turned Abomination can even fall below Rank One. Unless the werewolf was previously a Black Spiral Dancer, she cannot gain Renown or rise in rank again. Only the Depraved Dancers acknowledge their undead relatives, and even then the Dancer gains only one-quarter of the standard Renown award for her deeds. Abominations also cannot spend experience to raise their Gnosis Trait.

Unlike the Garous, connection with the spiritual world of Gnosis is irreparably severed. This loss means that Abominations cannot regenerate their wounds as do Garou. Abominations may heal themselves only by spending Blood Points.

Thus severing from the wellspring of life also has the repercussions on the Abomination's relationship with the spirit world. Although Abominations retain knowledge of the Gifts and rites they possessed before the Embrace, they cannot make any rites other than Wyrm rites work, only the most corrupt spirits ever could make live a dead thing. Abominations also cannot learn new Gifts from any spirits other than Hounds, and these spirits are spiced. Devious teachers. At the time of the Embrace (or more precisely, of death), any dedicated forms or strong fetishes lose their connection to the spirit world. Garou spirits, even those bound in fetters, chafe at the presence of the undead. To affirm himself to a Garou fetish after the Embrace, the Abomination may still roll Gnosis as usual — but at a penalty. If the roll fails, the Abomination loses a permanent Gnosis point.

Abominations may not spend blood points for any purpose in the same manner that they spend Gnosis, make Gnosis rolls to spend Rage or make Rage rolls. Rage Gnosis and Gnosis will interfere with one another's use.

An undead Garou can draw on only one of the three at any given time. Abominations have blood

points according to their Generation, as usual — their doubly potent Garou blood was drained during the Embrace, and they must make do with normal values.

In every scene, an Abomination must spend a Willpower point to spend the scene with his dice pools at full. If it will not or cannot do so, its dice pools are halved for the scene. Willpower is not a resource that can be used. An Abomination may not spend Willpower points to gain automatic successes on any dice rolls.

Having been something other than human, Abominations don't use Humanity as a system of morality. They have a far greater stake at risk — their Gnosis. It is the only thing keeping them from acting on the vile impulses that grow within them: undeath, not natural urges, but seeds planted by the Wyrm during their Embrace. An Abomination's Gnosis Trait determines how soundly it sleeps during the day, and in most cases acts as Humanity would. (Of course, the Abomination's Fate checks for frenzy by rolling Rage.)

Whenever an Abomination transgresses against the ways of the Gnosis (whether deliberately or unconsciously, such as in a frenzy), it risks degeneration. The higher the Abomination's Gnosis, the more likely that even a minor transgression can tear more of his spirit from him. This is true even for Black Spiral Dancers — each step, each hour and each day is a road to degeneration. The chart below is a rough guide to what actions force an Abomination to check for Gnosis loss. If the vampire Garou takes an action that requires a check, it rolls Gnosis automatically, with modifiers at the Storyteller's discretion (particularly callous deeds might make degeneration much easier). Failure means that it loses a point of Gnosis irrevocably. A torch grants the hapless creature a warning. When all the Abomination's Gnosis is lost, it no longer steps sideways or use any Gifts or fetishes.

There is only one way to prevent this — the Abomination can rid itself of what's left of its soul to the Wyrm, more accurately, a powerful intermediary spirit, such as a Moeljin Incarnate. After making this black pact, the Abomination becomes a Storyteller-controlled character. Its Gnosis is no longer at risk; the Wyrm sees to fueling its spiritual energy. However, the Abomination no longer has any free will whatsoever.

Other Changing Breeds are, if anything, even less suited to vampire life. A Bastet, for example, begins losing permanent Gnosis one per month upon the Embrace and can never recover her loss. Eventually, the undead cat is cut off from the spirit world entirely, unable to do so much as activate Gifts. Nuwisha, by comparison, cannot undergo the Embrace — and

### *Hierarchy of Wyrn Taint*

#### Gnosis Minimum Wrongdoing for Gnosis Check

- 10 Accidentally breaking the Litany (refusing a rightful challenge, cannibalism, violating the blood of humans or wolves)
- 9 Deliberately breaking the Litany (refusing a rightful challenge, cannibalism, violating the blood of humans or wolves)
- 8 Refusing to acknowledge loss of a challenge (lack of instinct), teaching Garou lore to Wyrn in ruins (no killing vampires)
- 7 Unjustly killing a Garou using vampiric mind-control powers (Dominant Presence) against a Garou; betraying a Garou to Wyrn in ruins
- 6 Trafficking with or aiding spirits for evil purposes
- 5 Destroying a natural place (harming Cairn) causing a Blight to grow or fester
- 4 Aiding with Wyrn in ruins (including vampires)
- 3 Cannibalism (drinking Garou blood), sadism, and perversion (Black Spiral, virtues) Working against any of the tribes  
Destroying or helping destroy a Cairn

vampires who try to force vampirism on the Coyotes find that the Nawasha die quietly, one and all. Mok'ik and Carax have it even worse with the rites to the sun, both die the Final Death within one day of the Embrace, their loss of spirit is as with Helok'ik and them, irrevocably by the next sunset. Unfortunate for everyone around him, including the vampire patient, a Mok'ik Abur'a accompanies the rest of his sex to die in a brutal, mindless frenzy, which almost always results in the would-be sire ending up as so much redash goo spread across the ground. Thankfully, all shapeshifters at least receive the standard Gnosis roll to avoid the Embrace and die quickly.

### *Mages*

In strictest Werewolf cosmology, reality is not consensual or sanimatic. The spirit world reflects the physical, and can influence it as well, but reality itself is not subject to being moved by a sufficient force of belief. In particular, humanity is not the center of the universe—they are a very influential species, but not the reason reality is what it is. This causes some serious thematic damage to the Mage elements of a crossover, and is one of the reasons that Mage and Werewolf don't play together as well as some might assume. Even on a technical level, very little is changed. What a Paradox is caused by the Weaver's rigid attempts to keep reality constant or by a cosmic level of disbelief

doesn't really matter when it comes to determining whether the dice system works the same or not.

Although shapeshifters are not as hostile toward mages as they are toward humans (as a general rule, at least), there's still millennia of bad blood between the two groups. Aiding a mage, even a Kindred one, who's one Garou's sister and another's wife, into a Paradox is a bad idea. Literally. Werewolves are quite aware that something reacts specifically to mages using their powers, and the common interpretation is that a mage isn't intended to have that power in the first place. This makes negotiations difficult—but not impossible.

### *The Umbra*

Werewolves do not take any notice of the Astral Stream, whatever trait mages possess that puts them at risk, the werewolves don't have it. They step a deways as normal.

Outer space has a physical presence in Werewolf; the Cairn is likely no higher than it, but outer space and the Cairn are not one and the same.

The Mage concept of the "Bygone" does not apply in Werewolf; the existence of trickster monsters such as Thunderwyrms and what-in-ka-the-moon-vampires are directed to the Book of the Wyrn, seems to indicate that monsters can exist quite nicely in the face of human disbelief. Most fantastic "beasts of legend" translate well into spirits, perhaps with the Materaize "harm."

### *Damage*

Most of the usual ways of creating aggravated damage (i.e., physical effects, and so on) work just as well against werewolves as they normally would. Most effects that would involve consuming silver are vulgar, and the silver must be genuine y pure to have any effect on the Garou. Alloys and trace amounts in the metal are useless.

Werewolves' natural spirit nature gives them a measure of protection against some magic, in particular late effects will not affect werewolves unless paired with an equal amount of Spirit.

For that part, werewolves have no difficulty causing aggravated damage to mages.

### *Countermagic*

Mages may use countermagic to defend against its trite powers that are directly targeted at them. This is usually a matter of Spirit, although you may choose to allow other spheres to cancel certain other effects, such as using Mind to counter the Gift. R.J. Over The Arc rolls uses the opposing Garou's Rank + 3 as a difficulty number, each success counts as one of the werewolf's successes.

You may choose to allow a mage to use countermagic against Gifts that aren't targeted directly at her, so long as she has sufficient knowledge of Spirit or other Spheres to do so. The difficulty to use countermagic against a rite is always 8; the rite is empowered not by the werewolf ritemaster, but by the spirits it invokes.

A few other Gifts can be used for countermagic against a mage's effects; for instance, Exorcism may be used to counter spirit magic. Such efforts are entirely at the Storyteller's discretion and are not as effective as a mage's countermagic would be. He who removes one of the mage's successes for every two successes he scores on his "countermagic" roll.

### *Shapeshifters and True Magic*

The Changing Breeds are, one and all, incapable of using True Magic as mages know it. Since shapeshifters are all born with shapeshifting spirits, their half-spirit nature, even before the First Change, makes them incapable of using magic from birth. They can't possess independent magics, and they don't know them. Instead, they tag onto the wellspring of blessings to work their own magics, and this is how mages define it. Spirit magic is the province of humans alone; the Changing Breeds are given gifts of a different nature.

Some rare shapeshifters are able to learn certain parts of hedge magic, Sphere magic's poor cousin. However, it is rarely common practice, when it's said and done, the shapeshifters Gifts and rites are at least as potent, if not more so. Only the most ardent or completist of the Changing Breeds feel the need to learn such human wizardry.

### *Creating New Shapeshifters*

Mages of course try to think that they can do anything given time, and some players like to try proving it by "fixing" the Garou's "problem" with breed magic. As the argument runs, one mage could make sure that a Cael Garou breed true almost all the time.

It isn't as easy as that.

The task in which shapeshifters propagate their own kind has nothing to do with genetics or, apparently, evolution. Trying to beat the odds and ensure that a child born Garou is a truly dangerous form of playing God. "Theoretically, and it would take some time doing all that's involved to piece it's together), ensuring that a child is born Garou would require the ability to find wherever it is that the spirit half of a newborn shapeshifter comes from (and Garou believe it's via a merser), slice off an appropriate amount, and bind it perfectly to the child at the exact moment of conception. Even the so-called Demigou status of an Archmage is probably insufficient for such

an intricate operation, and it's damn unlikely the Garou would be willing to let them try.

A more reasonable approach would involve using Entropy to mess with the "odds" of conceiving a true Garou, rather than kin. A generous Storyteller might allow each success on the roll increase the odds of creating true by 1%, (an extended roll is not possible). However, the mage would have to be a source for conception, and most shapeshifters are sufficiently protective of their Kin and young to remove a mage's arm just for looking funny at the honeymoon suite. Assisting on the battlefield is one thing; using their powers to spirit out of a draw down the Weaver's wrath on a job is flatly intolerable.

### *Wraths*

The werewolves most likely to interact with wraths are the Silent Striders, who have often served as intermediaries with the human dead. However, the war-torn world causes a lot of casualties, and a crossover Wrath story is an excellent way to confront trigger-happy Garou with the consequences of their actions, or to showcase the evil of their opponents by emphasizing the ghosts their foes leave in their wake.

Wraths do not typically detect as Wyrms tainted unless their Shadows are particularly strong. (A wrath's power is not Anger exceeds her permanent Willpower, she gives off the "scent" of the Wym Spectres claim as full Wym-creatures, each and every one.)

Wraths do not generally count as spirits for the purposes of rites or Gifts; they cannot be bound into fetiches, summoned with the Rite of Summoning, ordered around by Command Spirit, and so on. You may welcome to make exceptions if they work for the story, however, it might be thematically appropriate for the Gift Exorcism to affect wraths, or for a set of sanctum charms to prevent wraths from materializing. Just be conservative; werewolves have a lot of ways to mess with spirits, and allowing too many of those measures to affect ghosts would be a bit much. Similarly, remember that wraths are not living beings, so Gifts that may render certain Gifts such as Bloody Feast or Heart of Ice useless.

On the flip side, werewolves are not wraths and are not treated as such, even when traveling through the Chthonic Mirror. (It does not work on Garou, who are not made of plasma, the power of Cuberte will not hurt them into the Tempest, and so on.)

### *Arcana*

Some Arcana that work on mortals have no effect on werewolves; others function normally. The main differences are listed below.

- If the Storyteller is using the optional rule that werewolves gain Shadows in the Dark Umbra, Castigate powers may be used on these shadows, though at +1 Difficulty.

- Werewolves doomed to die do not manifest deathmarks, and **Fatalism** powers that focus on deathmarks (Kismet and Fatal Vision) are useless on them.

- Wraiths may not use **Inhabits**, possess fetishes,

- **Keening** is often more effective against werewolves, passionate beasts that they are. Five successes when using Dirge will drive a werewolf mad for a week, while Crescendo and Requiem will drive them to make frenzy checks.

- Practitioners of **Lifeweb** cannot establish a Soul Pact with a werewolf.

- A wraith cannot use **Mousetrap** shape on werewolves. But the weapons formed with **Martialry** inflict aggravated damage.

- The **Outrage** power **Stonehand Punch** inflicts lethal damage on werewolves; **Obliviate** inflicts aggravated damage.

- The **Phantasm** powers **Elysis** and **Agon** do not work on werewolves, who do not possess the same sort of "soul" that wraiths are used to.

### *In the Dark Umbra*

The Dark Umbra isn't reached by stepping sideways in the air; a fashion it takes a special rite to do so, or to following dark paths from the Middle Umbra can lead a werewolf there. But once there, werewolves function fairly normally. They regenerate, spend Rage, and so on; the main differences lie in the atmosphere.

A werewolf is a creature of vibrant life, and the energies of the Dark Umbra conflict with his own being. The difficulty to use any Gift is increased by 1 while in the Dark Umbra. Gifts that do not require rolls function normally. Garou appear as robust Luminous beings to a wraith's eyesight, which makes traveling incognito rather difficult. A werewolf may spend a Cnosis point to "drop out" of the Shadowlands into the physical world at any point, if farther from the Shadowlands; the Cnosis expenditure only gives the werewolf a sense of the closest route back to the Middle Umbra proper.

At the Storyteller's discretion, shapeshifters may acquire temporary Shadows (usually if the Avatar Break or Monster sort) for the duration of their story. A shapechanger's Shadow has Angst equal to the shapeshifter's Rage (minimum of 1), and whatever Thorns the Storyteller deems appropriate.

## *Shapeshifter Wraiths*

Upon death, a shapechanger's spirit habitually moves to her Umbral homelands, where she reunites with **Cain**. Even individuals that are not normally friends and descendants, usually at high ridings some one with Past Life, do so as Ancestor spirits, not as wraiths.

However, there are a few exceptions. Rarely, when a shapeshifter lies with just a touch of Wyrm latent on his soul—just enough of a touch to break him away from the natural way of things—and a powerful desire to complete some business or wish, the spirit awakens in the Shadowlands as a wraith.

The wraith of a former shapeshifter gains no special abilities from her former life. She is considered a wraith like any other, even so simple a thing as shapeshifting is impossible without the aid of M1 and Her Carnia takes the form of her self-image, whether that be humanlike, a wolf, or even **Cain** in form. However, her Attributes are not altered by whatever shape she finds herself in—her form is a matter of self-perception, nothing more. The character becomes a wraith in all aspects, with her base Human Attributes, her usual collection of Abilities (although some, like **Primal Rage**, are now useless to her) and nothing more. She no longer possesses Rage or Cnosis. Her Gifts no longer work, but do her rites of a very ordinary sort, the rites of wraiths. In essence, she is nothing more than a wraith. However, the new possibilities of wraithly existence allow her to explore areas rarely seen by any other shapeshifter. The fight against the Wyrm, as personified by **Speeries** (the wraithly Garou's perception, anyway), continues even in the Shadowlands.

The worst fight of all, of course, comes from the tiny seed of Wyrm taint that lay within the Garou's soul, the taint of her death from which she blossoms into Shadow. A shapeshifter's darker half is more bestial by far than that of most humans.

## *Changelings*

The stereotype promises that the humans have the most trick with changelings, and that other tribes could learn less. However, a Changeling crossover can easily defy this stereotype. A Silent Strider could strike up a friendship with an equal nomadic creature. Delegation might demand to strike bargains with the Garou's own morality, meaning the Silver Fangs. Bone Onawars might make the acquaintances of the goblins of the inner city, and so on. Although Garou have little interest in the changelings' conflicts and the fae world,

likely avoid being drawn into the werewolves' war this usually works out for the best. A crossover character who has a wide range of diplomatic skills is more likely to be able to enlist the other side and without committing too much in return. After all, deals with the fae are usually for their task, and only a fool approaches them without a plan.

## Arts

Obviously, the Act of Reals is necessary to affect shapeshifters or spirits, though the Fae Realm may also be stored for its secretion affect certain Chimerlings.

- Chicanery powers such as Veiled Eyes cannot catch the Faerie's eye, and do not affect observers. Applications of Haunted Heart may be used when used on werewolves.
- The Legendman to control a fetish, the changeling must be a fetishist and a seduced will — the changeling's Willpower versus the fetish's Glamour.
- The Primal art of Heavy Strike inflicts aggravated damage, which can be soaked by shapeshifters.
- Any changelings within a mile of a Flanna using the Gift Faerie Kin may make a Willpower roll. If they fail to resist the suzerains. Those who answer the Flanna's call do not have to obey the werewolves.

without question. Disobeying without good reason may make the changeling some enemies and a foe who wants to see the changeling's head.

## One or the Other

Changelings are fae souls born into a human body. The Changeling Pools are shapechanger souls born into a human body. A newborn is one or the other, or simply human. Although it's possible to have changelings who are technically Kinfolk (though with no access to Gifts or other Chimer powers), or werewolves with a touch of the fae blood in them, no creature can be fully both.

## Hunters

Most crossover stories involving Hunter: The Reckoning are likely to be hostile, although the short-lived Kinfolk of the werewolves and the Kinfolk of the Hunters can hardly hope to march a werewolf in outright combat, but their powers can make them credible opponents — if they're clever enough.

Conversion will protect a hunter from the net of a survivor and affecting gifts, or the blurring of the Maky Eye to the night vision of the Kinfolk. In a formid form can be used to affect the Kinfolk's effects (such as the maky eye).



Curse of Aeolus) can affect a hunter's senses, but purely supernatural effects don't work. At your discretion, you might rule that particularly powerful entities (such as manifestes) incarnate at Rank 5 shapeshifters might have a chance of overcoming this immunity; in such a case, you can call for a primary V rule roll against an appropriate Difficulty (6 for a Rank 5 shapeshifter or 8 for an Incarnae).

However, a hunter's second sight does not reach into the Umbra, a werewolf in the Penumbra is as good as invisible. A hunter's Conviction does protect tagalong supernatural attacks targeted toward the Umbra, such as the Possession Charm. The only exception is that imbued are able to target ghosts in the Shadowlands.

Second sight marks kintok as "off" while Discern Witness and Illuminate all reveal kintok as the good relations of shapeshangers.

### *Edges*

Most Edges are written with the various powers of supernatural beings in mind. Only a few require clarification. Unless otherwise stated, an Edge cannot cross the Umbra and affect spirits or werewolves in the Penumbra.

- **Illuminate** works even on shapeshifters who have used C'tts such as Thousand Forms to take on a different form.

- **Ward** extends into the Penumbra, but Penumbra denizens cannot approach the hunter's immediate area. The mark left by Brand remains in all forms.

- A shapeshifter may step sideways to negate the effects of **Burden**, **Balance** can be used to prevent use of Rage or Gnosis. Shapeshifters revealed to onlookers by the use of **Expose** typically manifest as if they'd shifted to the appropriate form.

- **Heightened** he uses a howl a werewolf would use as a **Lead**.

### *The Imbuing*

For various reasons, werewolves cannot be Imbued. Ever. However, neither can kintok. Whatever curse is empowering the new breed of hunters with their strange gifts, it apparently is able to recognize kintok and never chooses them for the imbuing. Even those kintok ignorant of the nature are never chosen; they are simply too close to the supernatural and therefore not sufficient guards of humanity.



# Book Six: Odds and Ends

## Kami: Cana's Black Manifest

In the times of Gaia's first stirrings, the Mother looked upon Her new creation and felt a great longing within Her. "I want to see and hear and touch and taste and feel everything that I have made." She whispered to Herself. And with this thought, Gaia gave birth to Her very first children, spirits wrapped in the stuff of the physical world. By Herself, came forth from Her womb and took material forms. Gaia's spirit children ran with the deer and heegee swam with the fish, flew with the eagles and raced across the land with the hurricane winds. Every day Gaia found a new way to give birth to Herself and existed in the wilderness of Her creation. The animals and plants, in turn, accepted their spirit brothers and sisters as natural for they knew no difference between one world and another.

The Wyrm changed all that. His madness broke the worlds apart and his corruption taught the creatures of the physical world to fear the spirits they once trusted. Gaia's spirit children grew troubled and in hiding from the wrath of their former comrades. Some of them fled forever into the Labyrinth, returning to their spirit forms and turning their backs on the physical world. Others chose to remain in their manifested forms but hid themselves in the wildest

places of the world, or cloaked themselves in disguises, trying to pass themselves off as true humans or animals or plants.

The appearance of the Gauntlet made it difficult for Gaia to infuse Her spirit directly into the world, so She saw an even greater need to touch Her creation. Now that the Wyrm and the Weaver threatened to upset the delicate balance of the Triad, Gaia realized that She would have to find a new way to create a link between the physical world

11

Arana Maker of Stories Black Fairy C. 1998  
"I'm the Kami, name T. B."

The creatures known as Kami occupy a unique place in the universe. Some Caran describe them as "Gaia's form," an imperfect way of describing the unique blend of spirit and material existence. Like form, most Kami exist as spirits embodied in physical bodies, fusing together the material and immaterial worlds. Unlike the form, however, in which the melding of Bank and flesh (or matter) results in the corruption and eventual degeneration of the physical

best. Kami form a seamless union between the physical and the spiritual, one that works for the express purpose of manifesting Gara's love for Her creation.

Kami are exceedingly elementals to boot, springing to a chthonic life—they are the rare and wondrous manifestations of Garan spirits living reminders that the Mother and Her children are not defeated yet. The presence of a Kami is proof to Gara's influence on Her creation, that the Carou are not wholly without allies in the physical realm. Although an encounter with a Kami should be appropriately singular (these allies are not ones to overuse), it is this very rarity that can leave your players with the feeling that they've just participated in an encounter that few people are worthy of experiencing.

### *Gara's First Children*

Ancient legends speak of a time when Gara filled the whole world with expressions of Her spirit before the Carou, before the other Changing Breeds, the Kami walked the earth in the many forms. Because the Garinlet had not yet risen, so the stories go, the rift between spirit and flesh did not yet exist. Spirits could manifest whenever they wanted, and Gara gave them permission to take on the forms best suited to the world they chose.

Kami delighted in the profusion of forms that Mother had created, expressing themselves as the spirits of mountains, rivers, trees, plants, animals and other growing things. Kami even assumed the shapes of human beings, the rarest of all expressions and expression available to those creatures.

The insanity of the Wyrm and its growing power have made the creation of Kami increasingly more difficult for Gara. Today new Kami appear only rarely. When such a momentous event occurs, all the spirits in the vicinity gather to witness the miraculous birth. Most Kami are created when a Garan spirit possesses a human, animal or even plant host in a symbiotic joining such as that of a totem, although a few actually come about as

the awakening of a portion of Gara.

### *Family Relations*

In modern times, Kami has little contact with the Changing Breeds. Usually solitary and shy creatures, Kami preserve their secrecy carefully, fearing the wrath of those that discover their true identity. Only the wisest Therages know the truth, and only the most accomplished Clotmasks in the legends that tell of the Kami. These elders, hailing from a proud race as they do, seldom tell the stories of children who predate them in their Mother's favor.

The same holds true for the Fera, who frequently share the Garin's reluctance to acknowledge or believe that others came before them.

Occasionally, when the need arises, Kami intercede with the Carou or with other Changing Breeds. These encounters always depend on the individuals involved. Kami can usually sense whenever one of their distant cousins will react with favor or hostility to their appearance.

Because of their nature as lesser manifestations of Gara, Kami rarely work directly against the Jarou or any of the Mother's other children unless given direct command by Gara to do so. Occasionally Kami find themselves in need of assistance from the Carou or from other Kami. In these instances, they emerge from isolation and make their desires known. Because Kami do not live as recluses, however, they seldom know the ins and outs of Carou culture or philosophy. They know nothing of the Litany, of Garou tribes or aspires and even less of the internecine squabbles that make up much of Carou society. The same holds true for the Kami's knowledge of other Fera.

### *Manifestations of Gara's Bounty*

All Kami share certain benefits granted to them by Gara. Every Kami possesses an intelligence that at least cannot be rivaled by any other thought-then thought processes may differ considerably from those of human kind. The thoughts of a bird-Kami, for example, while more cohesive and sentient than those of normal birds, do not at all resemble the thoughts of a Kami with a human host. Instead, the thoughts reflect matters of concern to birds—wind patterns, the changing of the seasons, the abundance or lack of food, the presence of predators and possible threats to themselves.

Shapeshifters, spirits and other supernatural creatures with spiritually aware senses (which might include some mages, but would certainly exclude vampires) can sense an aura of holiness or spirituality emanating from Kami. This radiance has no tangible effect on other creatures that sense it other than to announce the presence of one of the special children. Anyone feeling this sensation knows that something wondrous is nearby.

Most Kami have a vulnerability to some substance, usually a metal. Any Kami injured by a weapon or object made from this particular beneficial substance takes aggravated, non-soakable damage.

Like Gara's other children, Kami possess traits. Some, but not all, Kami possess Rage as well. Both Gnosis and Rage replenish themselves at the Storyteller's discretion. Kami that possess Rage have

the potential for frenzy, just as Cami do, though the ease as for the frenzy may differ according to the nature of the individual Kami. Health levels depend on the Kami. Kami with animal (small) hosts or human hosts have as many Health Levels as normal. Examples of those types would have "Large Kami" such as those who bring the thunder, or even have more health levels and are more difficult to destroy. Animate Kami may prove almost impossible to destroy, except through extraordinary measures such as chemical exposure, toxic waste, radiation or wildfires.

Some Kami may also possess a geas in the form of a prohibition, such as a ban on speaking above a whisper or the inability to wear clothing of a particular color or material (for Kami with human hosts). Violation of this geas may result in consequences that are in degree transgressive to fatal, depending on the nature of the transgression.

### *Kami Powers*

The powers listed below provide examples of the kinds of abilities Kami possess. Each Kami manifests its own unique powers, appropriate to its host. Storytellers may customize the powers enumerated here or may create their own to reflect the uniqueness of each Kami. (Guts provide more ideas and are thematically sound.) Even two Kami with oak trees as hosts may differ in their powers.

Since Kami are intended primarily as Storyteller characters rather than as player characters, no fixed list of character creation appears. If a Storyteller wishes to allow one or more of her players to play a Kami character, she can adapt the character generation rules from *Werewolf: the Apocalypse* or else come up with her own guidelines. The number and type of powers available to a Kami should remain consistent with the Kami's host creature and should pertain to the Kami's purpose in the world.

• **Animal Affinity** — Kami with this power may influence animals. The affected animal views the Kami as a trusted companion or leader and will aid the Kami in whatever way possible according to its natural instincts. No roll is necessary for normal animals. This power resembles the Phoenix Gift, King of the Bees.

• **Animal Communication** — The Kami enjoys the ability to communicate with animals of any kind, as well as the "beast tongues" of shapeshifters in the animal forms. The Kami possesses the knowledge of all forms of animal speech and may "speak" to them through the sounds and movements of each particular animal. Although the Kami may make sounds and movements, the actual communication takes place telepathically. This power is akin to the Gauran Gift, Beast Speech.

• **Animal Powers** — A Kami with this power may change its form to enable itself to take on some animal aspect, as its host form already possesses one or more of these powers. If a Kami must transform itself, it must spend a point of Gnosis for each transformation, regardless of the number of powers such a shift in form provides. For example, a Kami may gain a wolf's heightened senses by changing its natural form to that of a wolf. Even though this change affects three or more senses, the Kami need expend only a single point of Gnosis. If, however, the Kami wishes to achieve the natural form of a werewolf, it must spend two points of Gnosis.

• **Animal Senses** — A Kami with this heightened senses and one for the claws. A Kami whose host form is that of a wolf, however, gains the natural powers of its animal form without expending Gnosis. Additional examples of Animal Powers include faerie fire, prehensile tails, water breathing, wings and fins.

• **Animal Summoning** (Cost: 1 Gnosis) — A Kami uses this power to summon animals to its aid. The Storyteller determines the number and type of animals that respond to the Kami's summons. Regardless of the number of animals that answer the call, the Kami's cost to expend time remains the same. This power resembles the Lycus Gift, Beast Call.

• **Animate Self** (Cost: 1 Willpower) — A Kami uses this power to animate its host creature. Though most non-animate Kami use this power only for short bursts of activity, a few may use it most continually, allowing the host creature the ability to walk, run or perform some other sort of physical action at any time they so desire. If movement requires a Kami to detach itself from the host creature, it must spend two points of Willpower. For example, a Kami tree must uproot itself from the earth in order to walk; thus, using this power costs 2 points of Willpower. The effects of this power last until the Kami returns to its inanimate form or for one scene.

• **Aura of Tranquility** — Kami with this power radiate an aura of peacefulness that calms everyone within its area, whether allies or enemies. Shapeshifters may not use Rage, vampires find themselves unable to frenzy and any others find it almost impossible to commit violent actions. Note that, unlike this power, the Kami must roll Charisma + Empathy (difficulty of the target's Willpower). Targets who find the roll may not act in a violent fashion. The Kami may affect more than one target with this power but must make a separate roll for each individual affected. Most Kami reject this power because it pacifies all allies.

• **Autumn's Blessings** — The Kami can bring about the appearance and effects of autumn in an area. Leaves change color, animals prepare for winter by

storm, flood, and the weather takes on the aspects of the elements. Powers such as causing the leaves to fall or once from all the trees in the forest cost the Kami one Gnosis point to effect, but gradual changes carry no cost. Kami with this power become aware of individuals who have passed the prime of life and are nearing death.

• **Child of the Elements (Cost: 1 Gnosis)**

Kami with this power may summon elementals of his type most suited to them. For example, a Child of Earth may summon an earth elemental, while a Child of Fire can call a fire elemental to its service. In order to do this, the Kami must roll Manipulation + Expression (Difficulty 7). Each success allows the Kami to summon one elemental, although the Kami may only control as many elementals as his rating in Wits. Most Kami possessing this power can summon only one type of elemental, but Kami whose hosts combine elements may summon elemental of either sort. Thus a Child of Steam may summon either fire or water elementals, while a Child of Air may summon elementals of water or fire. Often, Kami, children of the elements possess the powers appropriate to their elements.

• **Command the Earth (Cost: varies)** The Kami uses his power to subject the earth to his will. At the Kami's command, the earth can form itself into desert or a plain or anything in between. The Kami can cause earthquakes, landslides, rockfalls, or any other natural phenomena. This power costs one point of Gnosis for minor effects such as a small patch of desert or a minor landslide. Major effects, such as the transference of a large area into a quicksand mire or occurrence of an earthquake, cost two or more points of Gnosis.

• **Curse of Gaia (Cost: 3 Gnosis)** Kami may use this power to place a curse on anyone that disrupts the will of the Mother or upsets the balance of the natural world. The Kami determines the nature of the curse, which may vary from relatively minor (such as a run of bad luck) to major impediments or fatal afflictions. The Kami may induce Harano na (Gloom) turn a mortal opponent into a wasteland, or a wasting disease on an individual or cause the earth to engulf the victim. The nature of the curse is up to the Kami (or the Storyteller). Most Kami can inflict only one major and one minor type of curse.

• **Enchanting Voice (Cost: 1 Gnosis)** With this power the Kami can enhrall anyone that hears its song. The listener must make a Willpower roll (Difficulty of the Kami's Charisma + Performance) to resist the power. The power of the Kami's voice does not grant the Kami any additional power over the victim. If the Kami wishes to enlist the victim's assistance or punish the targeted individual, it must do so through the use of other powers or abilities.

• **Gaia's Summons (Cost: 1 Gnosis, 1 Willpower)** — A Kami with this power may call to itself one of the Mother's forces or creatures. Kami may summon Wyldings, Great Beasts, forest spirits or, in some instances, a particular group of Gracia or Fera (like a Ragabash in an area). Summoned creatures feel inclined to act in the best interests of the Kami, but control them. Those who wish to resist the summons must make a resisted Willpower roll against their Storyteller.

• **Great Destiny** The Kami exists for a purpose, and nothing short of the completion of that goal can stop it. Miracles occur in the vicinity of the Kami, whenever something threatens the successful accomplishment of its purpose. Not even death can stop it, until it has fulfilled the destiny chosen for it by the Mother. This is, for obvious reasons, one of the rarest powers, suitable only for Kami that are destined to play a significant part in the chronicle.

• **Heart Sense (Cost: 1 Gnosis)** A Kami with this power can see into the heart or essence of an individual and ascertain whether that creature belongs primarily to the Wild, the Wither, or the Weaver. Additionally, Kami with Heart Sense can identify an individual's connections to the past (such as that granted by the Ancestors' Background), determine a

person's desires or discover the true form of someone in another shape. The Kami must succeed on a Perception + Empathy roll (Difficulty 7). Each success provides the Kami with additional information.

• **Invulnerability** — This power provides the Kami with one to five points of Stamina (Storyteller discretion) for use in soaking damage. Kami with this power generally manifest it visibly in some way, such as skin with a faintly metallic appearance, a hard carapace or an exoskeleton. Kami with stone host bodies frequently possess this power.

• **Longevity** Although Kami are not immortal, many possess this power, which greatly extends the "normal" lifespan, slowing down their life processes and causing them to age very gradually. Kami with human hosts may live for two or three centuries, while Kami insects may live for several months (a phenomenally long lifetime). Mountain Kami or other land-lodgers with this power have a life expectancy that might as well be infinite compared to those of mortals. Without this power, a Kami "lives" only as long as its host's normal life span.

• **Lord of the Land** A Kami with this power is constantly aware of everything that takes place within its territory. The most common Kami to possess this power include plant or tree Kami, mound-

tain or river Kami or animate lands Kami may use this power at a cost.

- **Mask Presence (Cost: 1 Gnosis)** For the duration of one scene, a Kami with this power can prevent others from seeing, hearing or otherwise detecting its presence. This power can manifest itself by making the Kami invisible or by camouflaging or making it look like a tree. Occasionally, this power simply causes those in the vicinity of the Kami to ignore it as if it were not there.

- **Mega-Strength** The Kami possesses an additional one to five points of Strength. Most land Kami shake tree Kami, or Kami with large animal hosts, to have this power.

- **Mother's Healing** This power functions as the Therurge Gift Mother's Touch.

- **Peaceful Fighting** Kami with this power may defend themselves without causing lasting physical damage to the opponent. The Kami fights normally at each health level of damage it causes, lasts only as long as the remainder of the scene. The opponent recovers completely when the scene is over. If the Kami deals a maximum of four levels of damage at once but the opponent has Stamina, the opponent falls unconscious, awakening at the end of the scene. In the meantime, the Kami has the opportunity to leave the vicinity or otherwise take the fight of harm's way.

- **Piercing Gaze (Cost: 1 Gnosis)** The Kami can make whoever it looks at feel as if her soul is exposed itself to the Kami. Victims of this power become agitated and tense. Occasionally they succumb to anger, sorrow or other turbulent emotion. Even Kami who do not possess physical eyes (such as plant Kami or animate lands) can use this power to make individuals in the vicinity feel as if someone or something is watching them. Kami use this power to repel intruders, drive unwanted creatures from their lands or to force an individual to confess some hidden crime or great secret.

- **Plant Animation (Cost: varies)** This power enables the Kami to animate plants, causing flowers, trees, shrubs or other forms of vegetation to move in ways not normally available to them. The Storyteller determines what each affected plant can do. Roses may lash out at an intruder, scratching the individual with their thorns. Vines may entangle the Kami's victims, while a tree's massive limbs may reach out and wrap itself around an enemy, causing severe, crushing damage. Plants possess one to three points of Dexterity and one to 10 points of Strength. A patch of animated grass may have only one point of strength, while an animated redwood tree would most certainly possess maximum Strength (10 points). The cost in Gnosis to the Kami using this power varies in

relation to the number of plants affected and the potential for causing damage. Kami may use this power to affect a small number of trees or a larger number of smaller plants.

- **Plant Kinship** Similar to Animal Kinship, this power grants Kami the friendship of all plants. Animate plants come to the Kami's assistance whenever possible. This power also grants Kami the ability to speak with plants. This ability resembles the Galliard Gift Beast Speech, except that it pertains to plants rather than animals. Even though plants do not possess true sentience, the Kami can use this power to learn what transpires in any given area from the plants that grow there.

- **Regeneration** Kami with this power have the ability to regain health levels at the rate of one per turn. This only applies to non-aggravated damage.

- **Silent Speech** This power gives the Kami the ability to communicate without speech. Similar to telepathy in many respects, it bypasses language altogether. Thus, a Kami may use this power to speak to individuals from many different cultures at once, regardless of their native language. Each person perceives the Kami as if it were speaking the language most familiar to the recipient.

- **Shapeshifter Kinship** Kami with this power enjoy the friendship and confidence of one of the Changing Breeds to which they are attuned. The most common version of this power is Dragon Kinship, owing to the decline of the other Breeds, but a Kami may possess Kinship to any shapeshifter race, even the Rokea or Ratkin. The power is the equivalent of a Pure Breed rating of three.

- **Spirit Awakening (Cost: 1 Gnosis)** Kami with this power can awaken spirits in a manner similar to the Rite of Spirit Awakening, though the Kami only needs to spend one turn to rouse the targeted spirit.

- **Spirit Charms** — Some Kami possess certain spirit Charms, such as Return, Break Reality or Air Sense. Kami that use these powers may, at will, assume certain aspects of the spirits that most commonly possess these Charms. Only those Kami possessing Unmortal Passage may have all spirit Kami use Gnosis to power these Charms, but occasionally they may use Rage for appropriate Charms.

- **Spirit Sense** The Kami can look into the spirit world and speak to any spirits. It happens to see even though the Kami itself remains in the physical world.

- **Spring's Blessings** — This power functions in a manner similar to Aitimus's Blessings, except that it enables the Kami to cause an area to take on the aspects of spring. Plants in the targeted area sprout and bud, animals emerge from hibernation or feed the young to mate and the temperature takes on the feel of spring. Though this power, Kami may also identify and



#### • *Shaman's Blessings* (Cost: 1 Willpower)

The Shaman can bless a victim with a power that will help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive.

• *Subtle Presence* (Cost: 1 Willpower) The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive.

• *Shaman's Blessings* (Cost: 1 Willpower) The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive.

(difficulty 7) The victim may make a Stamina roll to resist the effects of this power. If the victim fails, the victim takes no damage. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive.

• *Transformation* (Cost: 1 Willpower) The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive.

• *Unbral Passage* (Cost: 1 Willpower) The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive. The victim can use this power to help them to survive.

• **Universal Tongue** — Kami with this power can speak the language of any combatant race with absolute ease.

• **Winter's Blessings** — Kami can cause a designated area to manifest signs of winter. Plants wither and become dormant, ice water freezes in ponds and lakes, animals that hibernate seek places to undergo their seasonal slumber and the air becomes cold with the feel and smell of winter. Kami can create gusts of freezing air as weapons, similar to the *Wenmagi* or the Cutting Wind and Chill of the Ear, Frost (though they must spend one point of Rage to do so). Kami with this power can sense individuals who approach the end of their lives and some Kami can even use this power to see into the Dark Canyons.

• **Wyldkin** — Kami with this power tend to possess powers similar to creatures of the Wyld. These Kami can create elements and often manifest the charms common to Wyldling spirits. Spirits of the Wyld consider the Kami as one of their own and feel an inclination to assist the Kami so long as it does not order them to do something that goes against their instincts. A Kami that attempts to force a Wyld spirit to act counter to its nature must succeed in an opposed Willpower roll and risks alienating the Wyldling. The Kami can also use this power to summon Wyldling spirits as the *Chirama + B* creation difficulty 7. Each successful summons one spirit. The Kami may control a number of spirits equal to its *Wits* rating. It's entirely possible that a Kami might manifest a similar "Weaver" or "Weaver's" power, although the closeness of Wyrm and Weaver has seriously eroded each Celestine's relationship with Gaia.

### *Kami Weaknesses*

Just as Kami enjoy access to powers granted to them from Gaia, they also pay a price for these powers.

The form of *geas*, or trial by fire, is. These bans or prohibitions serve as purposes within the context of the game. With regard to game mechanics, they provide a counter to the powers of the Kami, making these spirit creatures a little more than just a collection of neat abilities. Storytellers might want to assign one *geas* for every three or four powers or else content themselves with giving each Kami a single ban regardless of how many abilities it possesses.

Within the story itself, Kami take on an additional depth and a hint of tragedy when they exhibit certain weaknesses. Many legends ascribe bans or taboos to heroes, who often face their undoing through a trap based on these prohibitions.

The following list offers some examples of bans appropriate for Kami. Not all of these bans will suit all

Kami. Storytellers should pick and choose the most relevant ones for their Kami characters or else feel free to make up their own. Storytellers also have the option, of course, to ignore the idea of Kami weaknesses.

Penalties for violation of a *geas* can vary from loss of some or all of its powers, diminution of Attributes (loss of *Ones*, *Rage*, or *Willpower* or other absorption, depending on the severity of the prohibition and the circumstances under which it was broken. GMs enact the penalty at the time, and the storyteller determines the nature of the punishment.)

• **Barefoot** — The Kami must never wear shoes or any sort of foot covering. This *geas* is necessary applies for Kami with human or clothes-wearing hosts.

• **Color Ban** — The Kami may not wear anything or ornamentation of a particular color. While this seems initially to apply to Kami humans only, this ban also includes animal colors, saddle blankets, ribbons tied around tree limbs and even spray-painted graffiti on ticks.

• **Gender Ban** — The Kami may not speak directly to a man (or a woman). Any communication with the banned gender must take place through an intermediary.

• **Indirect Movement** — The Kami may not move in a straight line, but must always take an indirect path to its goal.

• **Question Ban** — The Kami may never answer a direct question.

• **Rover** — The Kami may not call any single place home. A Kami with this ban may not sleep in the same "bed" or spend the night in the exact same spot two nights in a row. Kami must have the capacity to move freely to possess this *geas*.

• **Silence** — The Kami may not speak while performing its appointed task. It must make its wishes known by other means.

• **Substance Ban** — The Kami may not come into contact with a particular substance, such as silver, gold, plastic, water, etc.

• **Thankless** — The Kami may neither give thanks to a friend who assists it nor accept thanks for its assistance. In addition, it may not express its apparent gratitude without stating the ban.

• **Whisper-Bound** — The Kami may never raise its voice above a whisper, even when calling for help.

### *Kami Characters*

There are many different types of Kami, with examples of several different types of Kami according to their host forms. Storytellers may use these characters as presented here or may alter them to suit their

chronicles. These examples can also serve as guidelines for creating Kami characters in general. As a rule of thumb, Storytellers should begin by designing a "normal" creature to serve as the Kami's host, then maximize this creature by customizing Attributes and Abilities and adding appropriate powers and one or more gifts.

## Plant and Animal Hosts

Plants and animals infused with Gaea's essence and her awareness make up the bulk of Kami existing in the world today. Most of these Kami possess temperaments that are very different from those of most human languages. While many animal or plant Kami are indistinguishable from their normal counterparts, a few have some unusual quality about them such as odd coloration (a blue squirrel) or a unique ability (a fox with a cat's strange shape-shifting moon ring). All plant and animal hosts have several powers given to them by Gaea. They all possess at least one pronunciation.

### Mowruth the Hunter

**Kami Type:** Animal Host (Feline)  
**Physical:** Strength 3, Dexterity 4, Stamina 4  
**Social:** Charisma 5, Manipulation 3, Appearance 3  
**Mental:** Perception 4, Intelligence 5, Wits 5  
**Talents:** Athletics 3, Agility 3, Brawl 4, Dodge 4, Empathy 2, Intimidation 2, Primal Instincts  
**Skills:** Animal Ken 4, Etiquette 1, Leadership 3, Survival 5  
**Knowledge:** Legend 4, Investigation 3, Languages 4  
**Backgrounds:** Allies 4, Ancestors 5 (ancient contact prehistoric era), Contacts 3  
**Powers:** Anima Kinyou, Anima Powers (Cat Feet, Claws, Heightened Senses), Anima Summons (animals of before and after), Healing, Mother's Presence, Mist Presence, Mother's Healing, Presence, Glamour, Silent Speech, Universal Translation  
**Rage:** 7, Gnosis: 8, Willpower: 10  
**Health Levels:** OK, OK, OK, 1, 1, 2, 2, 5, 10 (10+)  
**Attacks:** Bite (Str + 3 aggravated damage), Claws (Str + 2 aggravated damage)  
**Barriers:** Rover, Whisper, Bound  
 Mowruth gets two attacks per turn, one from his front and one from his claws.

**Image:** Mowruth appears as an oversized (25+ pounds) gingered brown and black tabby cat. Many humans whose homes he visits are afraid of him. He has enormous pointed cat ears, a tuft that sits close to his neck and a full brush-like tail. His voice is a low purr, sometimes a kitten's soft mew.

inaudibly. He understands any language and can telepathically communicate his wants to others.

**Roleplaying Hints:** Mowruth lives in the wild in the old forest near Hampshire. Gaea has charged him with overseeing the balance of "his" realm and making certain that the encroaching human population does not extend too far. He accomplishes his task in various ways: by appearing to lead lost humans to safety, by acting as a hidden menace and frightening off intruders, and by conducting guerrilla warfare on unwary campers or bikers. He can and sometimes does betray humans, but refuses any attempts at domestication.

**History:** Mowruth remembers the coming of the Europeans and their Gaea kin to North America. He doesn't have contact with the Native Americans, who acknowledged him as a spirit creature and gave him offerings from their hunts. He finds his rage at the loss of the Mother's wild places growing by leaps and bounds and struggles to maintain his equanimity and focus.

### Arbina, the Sheltering Maple

**Kami Type:** Plant Host (Maple Tree)  
**Physical:** Strength 12, Dexterity 0 (when any nature Stamina 10)  
**Social:** Charisma 4, Manipulation 3, Appearance 2  
**Mental:** Perception 3, Intelligence 3, Wits 3  
**Talents:** Athletics 2, Brawl 2, Dodge 3, Intimidation 1, Primal Urge 2  
**Skills:** Animal Ken 5, Survival 5  
**Knowledge:** Area Knowledge (Southern and Piedmont) 5, Enigmas 3, Medicine 1  
**Backgrounds:** Allies 5, Contacts 2  
**Powers:** Anima Summons (nearby animals), Anima Self-Lord of the Land, Mother's Healing Presence, Fighting, Plant Animalation, Spirit Charms, Break Reality, Possession, Storm Sense  
**Rage:** 4, Gnosis: 8, Willpower: 10  
**Health Levels:** OK, OK, OK, 1, 1, 2, 2, 5, 10 (10+)  
**Attacks:** Branch Swat (Str + 1 slashing damage)  
**Barriers:** Substance Barrier, Stone, Thorns

**Image:** Arbina is a large maple tree with broad limbs and a wide-spreading crown of leaves. She makes her home in the Piedmont region of South Carolina, where she provides shelter for many animals and numerous species of birds.

**Roleplaying Hints:** Arbina watches with growing alarm as the expanding urban landscape encroaches on her home and threatens the small creatures that depend more and more on her for their survival. She has a personal mission: herself to work on restoring the natural world. She is a fierce protector of her

the wilderness and she may prove helpful to Garou who ask her, politely for assistance. Her sap possesses healing properties (Mother's Healing).

**History:** Arctura is more than a century old and shows no signs of rot or bloat as yet. Though she has not walked the earth in the last 20 years she has seen the growing turmoil in the Umora caused by the appearance of Antheilus and is considering taking on human form once again to do what she can to respond to the threat. She believes that the Garou may have the key to fighting the real star, but she is reluctant to place herself in the middle.

### *Mortal Hosts*

Mortals who become hosts to kami retain their human souls but acquire an added dimension. Some humans do not realize precisely what they are but call themselves "messengers," "aliens," or even "angels." They blend reasonably well into human society and sometimes give rise to local legends or "fairy tales" (similar to those of) Jimmy Applesseed and Paul Burvan.

### *Old Man Fisher*

**Kami Type:** Mortal Host

**Age:** 70

**Physical:** Strength 2, Dexterity 3, Stamina 3

**Social:** Charisma 4, Manipulation 3, Appearance 2

**Mental:** Perception 5, Intelligence 3, Wits 5

**Talents:** Alertness 4, Dodge 1, Empathy 3, Subterfuge 3

**Skills:** Animal Ken (fish) 5, Craft (fishing) 5, Survival 4

**Knowledges:** Enigmas 4, Investigation 3, Science (Marine Biology) 5

**Backgrounds:** Allies (fisherfolk) 4, Resources (tools/jobs)

**Powers:** Anima, Kinship (sea creatures), Aura of Tranquility, Gaea's Curse (causes trouble for those who over-fish the nearby lake), Heart Sense, Piercing Gaze, Mask Presence, Transformation (fish)

**Rage:** 1, **Gnosis:** 10, **Willpower:**

**Health Levels:** As a human

**Bans:** 3, **Reflex:**

**Image:** Old Man Fisher stoops rather than stands. He appears in his 30's, though his hunched implies a harder constitution than his years might suggest. He dresses in worn, patched clothing. His thinning hair is mostly white and he wears it in a straggly ponytail. He never wears shoes and his feet are covered with thick calluses.

**Roleplaying Hints:** Old Man Fisher lives near a large fishing lake surrounded by a small village and a few vacant homes. He believed that alone protected him when he was young and charged him with protecting aquatic life of all kinds. He instructs local children in respect for water creatures and makes

certain that no one over-fishes the lake. He considers himself lucky. He can be a formidable opponent as well as a stand-offish.

**History:** When he was a teenager, Tern, Fisherman, has encounter with "aliens." A near drowning experience opened his spirit to Gaea's influence. His awareness gave him a young man a few decades old.

He would simply goes by the name "Fisher." He is a "odd" character" in his community and though many would make fun of him, none can deny his powerful aura of peacefulness when they come into his presence.

### *Animate Lands*

On an occasional ventures an entire region with her essence, awakening the very earth to consciousness. The land becomes one sentient entity and all the plants and animals that dwell in it act as part of the land's "body." Occasionally humans may live on and work the land as long as they do nothing disrespectful to it. Animate Lands regain consciousness more quickly than other kami, replenishing their supply three or four times a day if necessary.

### *Primval Forest*

**Kami Type:** Animate Land (forest)

**Physical:** Not applicable

**Social:** Charisma 4, Manipulation 2, Appearance 0

**Mental:** Perception 5, Intelligence 4, Wits 6

**Talents:** None

**Skills:** Animal Ken B, Plant Lore B

**Knowledges:** Area Lore 10, Ecology 10, Folklore

**Powers:** Animal Speech, Animal Summon, Animals Blessings, Child of the Elements, All Command and Earth, Curse of Gaea (cause technology to fail), Intensity, Heart Sense, Lord of the Land, Piercing Gaze, Plant Animation, Plant Kinship, Spirit Sense, Spirit Blessings, Summer's Blessings, Winter's Blessings

**Rage:** 5, **Gnosis:** 10, **Willpower:** 10

**Bans:** none known

**Image:** The Primval Forest appears as a large tract of old-growth forest located in the Appalachian Mountains of West Virginia. It has the ability to become rancorously loud or extremely silent and foreboding. Those who wander in it swear that the forest has eyes and, indeed, it does.

**Roleplaying Hints:** The forest seldom takes action unless a region threatened by hunters, loggers, road builders and other usurpers. Then it springs into action, usually causing the violent and permanent disappearance of those who endanger it.

## Inspiration

## Survey Checklist

## Media at Large

View

at Large

Wetwall



**An American Werewolf in London** — One of the toughest entries in the genre of werewolf movies, this is worth watching for the transformation scenes.

**The Blair Witch Project** — Forget the hype: this movie is remarkably useful as an example of how ordinary humans should fear the woods in the World of Darkness. This is what the Impergium was all about.

**Brotherhood of the Wolf (Le Pacte des Loups)** — A French film retelling one of the pre-eminent real-world werewolf myths: the Beast of Cevaudan. Practically surreal in the number of elements it blends. Check it out.

**Fuu Elups** — Cheesy, but in a good way. "A Little Carol" and his anthrop-etask force merit at least a rental.

**Ginger Snaps** — An unconventional werewolf movie, not unlike *Heathers* on lycanthropy. In a lighter way, yes, and yes, savage horror.

**Princess Mononoke** — We can't make it to the event, now if we tried.

**The Howling** — Perhaps the first "Crucis" in film, and certainly the most influential. There are a number of sequels, but all are legendary for their schlock status. Be warned.

**Wolf** — Although received with mixed reactions, this is still one of the better werewolf movies out there, whether you're a J. Edgar Hook Nicholson fan or not.

**X-Files** — An interesting mood-setter for portraying wolves with human intelligence. I wish they would appear to humans.

## Books

**Black Elk Speaks** — A must read for anyone wanting to understand the Wendigo, as well as possessing a wonderful voice for those interested in the Call of the Wild things.

**Edwards, Richard and A. Frome. Crisac.** *American Indian Myths and Legends*. Yes, it's relevant to more than just Dark Lands chronicles. This volume discusses much of the animal people themes that run through Werewolf, as well as providing a glimpse at what the world must have been like before the Sundering.

**Jol and David — Murcheson.** *The Wolf's Tale*. A fun Victorian werewolf story with particularly evocative descriptions of the sensory experience of becoming a wolf.

**Lang, Andrew —** *The Green Fairy Book, The Blue Fairy Book, The Red Fairy Book*, et al. Although animated in a proper fairy story format for children,

these books are nonetheless surprising collections of folklore and weird stories, and can provide great inspiration for tales of a pack's ancestors. And yes, they go beyond Fairies.

**Leopold, Aldo —** *A Sand County Almanac*. Very much more than a book for those interested in the environmental and conservation aspects of Werewolf.

**Meredith, Claudi —** *King Rat*. A pretty little, low-budget, legendary animal-human figures with the futuristic energy of urban culture. Of particular interest to storytellers who enjoy using Rankin.

**Mowat, Farley —** *Never Cry Wolf*. An excellent resource for a tale about being a goodly yet wolf-like. Rankin and up is a lot.

**Strager, Brad —** *The Werewolf Book: The Encyclopedia of Shape-shifting Beings*. A thorough, heavily padded with entries only peripherally related to werewolf lore (such as serial killers and occult/mystical shape-changers), this is still a sound resource for a Werewolf Storyteller.

## Music

Almost any sort of music can contribute to a Werewolf game if timed properly. Fast-paced dance music, such as the various sub-styles of techno, works well for urban stories, as does the more hard-edged hip-hop and rap, conventionally, world music.

In places where there's a lot of travel, there's plenty of Celtic music to be found for the Fianna, in your group, but authentic country music would work just as well for the very dark, truly, as less. Metallica, Dead Kennedys and S.O.A. are just as valid as Dead and Dance and Afro Celt Sound System, it's all a matter of how you handle it. Of course, you may want to avoid using a theme or songs that your players have heard a thousand times before: nothing kills a song like overplay.

The advantage to wordless music, such as that from a movie's score, is that players are less prone to singing along — a real mood-breaking experience, even if there was one last hee-haw about some modern movie soundtracks that have the obligatory pop song at the end. The soundtrack to *The Mummy Returns*, for instance, can really get your players in the mood for a *Rage Across Egypt* story, only to demolish it at its sphere as it swings into the "I'm not at the end." This does more damage than good, and is to be avoided. Some of the better movies and musicies soundtracks to be found include *500 Years*, *Batman*, *Braveheart*, *Clash of the Titans*, *Gladiator*, *Lost of the Mummies*, *Princess Mononoke*, *Rapa Nui*, *Rob Roy* and *The 13th Warrior*.

## Moral Dilemmas

By Kyrie Greenham

One issue that is underplayed in many Werewolf games is that of morality. Black or white is a werewolf sociopath by nature. Many players play them as such happily plowing through witnesses and people who just happen to be in the wrong place at the wrong time, as if it doesn't matter and never will. After a few sessions are over, it is more than possible that an act of suffering at the behest of ones — and they need be sacrificed — it's all for the greater good. At least that's how the werewolves think, and here's my real need to challenge those assumptions. Right?

Wrong. Particularly for those who wish to set the werewolves with a dilemma, but an article about the morality of the Garou — is an issue that cries out to be examined in depth. The average Garou should be a killing machine that is incapable of feeling anything past the anticipation of their next battle. Not only is a werewolf capable of feeling pity and a few notions of human decency, but he also has some fears as well as hate — but the reason we like to insure that a werewolf can often feel those emotions more keenly than their human counterparts.

You can rely on this fact to bring forth some incredibly intense scenes from your players. Take the following example, by a group of players I ran the one of Storyteller for a while ago.

The chronicle was set in a fictional city, and the players took the roles of a pack of Glass Walkers. One of the first stories involved family — a key element. Werewolf: Michael Lucas — the Rhybuck — had the just intent to discover his father worked for a Pentex subsidiary. Naturally, the pack did not take kindly to this. Michael Whitman — the Phiboux and a phat — took the ruthless approach. The father was, after all, Glass Walker. Kibouk. Such reason was not to be allowed. The pack staged a kidnapping and interrogation.

The father wasn't necessarily evil, a lot of innocent people can be found to work for Pentex. But in this case, Lucas' father knew the significance of the airfield corporation he worked for. During the interrogation, it was found that his largest motivation for staying with the company was fear of his superiors. He attempted to bargain for his life with the pack, offering information if they would only allow him to leave the city. He played on his son's sympathy and made the company had threatened the rest of his family. Whitman finally took him he was going to a Phiboux.

Whitman offered the man a quick and honorable death. The man refused. Lucas, however, was not so much. He finally agreed. Despite Lucas' pleas to the contrary, Whitman then shot the man through the back, killing him instantly in a knee jerk reaction of rage. Lucas immediately challenged Whitman for the

alpha position of the pack, claiming Whitman had no right to act like such an animalistic bastard.

Whitman's acceptance was predictable, the challenge he was not winning. He requested that the Sept's Master of the Challenge come up with a set of questions on moral morality and ask them of the two disputants. The Master would then judge for herself who would make the better alpha of the young pack based on the answers they gave.

I have to admit, I was originally flustered by this challenge. Working as the Storyteller, I had the Master accept this request, informing both parties that the challenge would take place in the board room, with witnesses, in two days hence. This gave me time between game sessions to work on a set of questions that I believed would not only force both characters to think, but ensure Lucas would be forced to rethink exactly why he had challenged. I also invited two other people to sit in on the game with previous characters they had played, as witnesses to the challenge.

The next session it stands out in my memory as one of the most intense roleplaying sessions that I have ever run. Dead silence hung over the pack as the Master went back and forth between the Master of the Challenge and the two disputants. They both stammered through the first two questions, not really answering them to anyone's satisfaction, but they settled down to work with the third.

MASTER: How many humans is too many to kill to protect the Veil?

LUCAS: One.

MASTER: One? Are you saying that you will walk away from a Veil breach and leave witnesses to tell the tale?

LUCAS: No. I would murder and kill those witnesses. But one is still too many.

Lucas won that round.

MASTER: Would you sacrifice yourself to save a pack of wolves?

LUCAS: Yes.

MASTER: How about a family of humans?

LUCAS: Yes.

MASTER: I turn the question to Mr. Whitman.

WHITMAN: No, and no.

MASTER: Why not?

WHITMAN: Because I am more useful to the fight for Gaea alive. What is a family of humans or a pack of wolves going to do for Gaea except mate.

[There were nods from around the table. Whitman won that round.]

Finally, it grew very interesting as we settled down to the questions that made Lucas ask a question even with his father.

MASTER: Is the Wyrm evil?

LUCAS: Yes.

MASTER: Then would you say all who try to help and support the Wyrm are evil as well?

LUCAS: No.

MASTER: So the enemy is merely the Wyrm?

LUCAS: Yes.

MASTER: Does that give us the right to kill them? Are you saying the Black Spiral Dancers are just the enemy?

LUCAS: Um. Yes.

[By this point, it took him a while to get his bearings on his father.]

MASTER: Does killing them make us any better than they are?

LUCAS: No.

[There was a lot of muttering on that reply.]

MASTER: Your question, Mr. Whitman. Is the Wyrm evil?

WHITMAN: Yes.

MASTER: Are all who try to help and support the Wyrm evil as well?

WHITMAN: They may not necessarily be "evil," but they are at least pawns of evil, and thus we kill them because we are at war.

[Returning to Whitman, Lucas was starting to get that doubtful look on his face. Was he wrong in his challenge? But he pressed on.]

MASTER: You follow a heavy trace of the Wyrm's trail, and find it leads to the cradle of a six-month-old child. While the child itself seems innocent, all signs point to the infant being Bane-possessed. What do you do?

LUCAS: I don't know. I just... don't know.

WHITMAN: Make certain, then kill it.

A very cold answer from Whitman in his usual flat tones, but deemed the correct one. Lucas looked ready to cry, clearly shaken by the sheer thought of it.]

MASTER: You discover a Black Spiral Dancer, and pursue it until it eventually seeks refuge in a heavily crowded nightclub. How do you deal with this situation?

This question inspired a lot of debate. Were they, with the pack, to withdraw? The obvious solution was to give an answer to both situations. Neither of them came up with a satisfactory answer, although Lucas came close. He said he would wait out the Dancer. The Master replied, "What if, in the meantime, the Dancer has called his pack for support? And so he stumbled there. Both of them replied that if the Dancer shuffled into Ciprus first, the Velvet was a ready

damaged and so they'd plow into combat, and worry about witnesses afterward.

MASTER: So you would kill everyone in the nightclub?

WHITMAN: Only those not affected by the Delirium.

MASTER: A handy plan. Unfortunately, how would you do it?

WHITMAN: I found out.

[Lucas was the same, although he was more humble, and he admitted he didn't know how he would tell Nobody won that round.]

MASTER: Would you save them if an intervention was to save possibly hundreds?

WHITMAN: Yes. I believe in the greater good.

MASTER: Your question, Mr. Lucas.

[Lucas knew exactly what this question was aimed at. He answered very quietly and flatly.]

LUCAS: It would depend on the situation. It's hard to know the answer when you're asked to save them.

[Both answers were considered appropriate.]

MASTER: Would you kill someone you love if it would preserve everything you — and they — lived for and stand for?

WHITMAN: I would kill my own brother if needed.

Another flat answer. The cold swiftness of this reply made even the Master of the Challenge blink. Whitman was fast cementing a reputation among the Glass Walkers as a cold and emotionless Gargoyle.

MASTER: Your question, Mr. Lucas.

LUCAS: To be honest, I'm not sure I could. If there was reason, I would understand that they had to die, but kill them myself. There's... something. I feel it in my veins.

Round to both, really. With the favor of Lucas.

At this point, Lucas knew that he had challenged for the wrong reasons, yet when both of spirants were asked if either would like to step down before the final decision was made, he shook his head quietly. He had noted the coldness of his alpha's answers, and while they made him efficient, he did not believe such an apparently cold-hearted person should be alpha.

So who do you think won? Well. As the Master announced that the floor was open for anyone to leave, before her choice is made, the two walkers from the sept to his challenge spoke their piece, listing their own thoughts on the answers not had given. During this, Whitman annoyed at having his cold answers analyzed and dug at, made the mistake of retorting that he has no respect for his pack, as they are "all for Lucas."

As this sunk in, two angry pack members immediately stood and challenged him. They were out of line; this was still the middle of the first and official challenge. The Master bade them sit, and turned her eyes to Lucas, who had just been asked, almost mockingly, if he was sure he was Garou. His reply? No. He had no idea whether he should be here. Not when doing so seemed to deny the morality he had believed in up until this point.

The common consensus was that neither Lucas nor Whitman was a correct choice for the alphaship. One had drive, but no respect, either for his pack or life around him. One had respect, but no drive. The Master of the Challenge looked at them both blandly, turned to the beta of the pack, and nominated him alpha.

Whitman left the room in silence. Lucas acknowledged the wisdom of the decision. Neither won, but both had been given a lot to think about. The game shifted focus quite dramatically at that point; from "Rargh! Kill the Wyrn!" to "Are we so certain we're doing the right thing?"

And the raising of that question brought far more depth to the players, and the game, than I could have hoped for.

The moral of this particular story? Never forget the role of humanity in your games. Human morality and Garou morality are often at war, and the fact that neither is clearly right all of the time — perhaps even most of the time — can inspire some truly wonderful stories. There are repercussions to sociopathic acts of violence; whether from the surviving victims, law enforcement agencies or the perpetrator's own conscience. Don't be hesitant to act on them.

## *A Storytelling Game of Savage Horror*

By Ethan Skemp

It's right there on the splash page of the rulebook. We cite it as the thing that differentiates **Werewolf** from the other World of Darkness roleplaying games — not "Personal Horror," not "Reality on the Brink," not "Passion and Horror," not "Modern Fantasy," not "Righteous Fury."

Of course, all those other themes, distilled down to their bare-bones mission statements, actually fit very nicely within **Werewolf's** confines, **Werewolf** being the sprawling, versatile monstrosity of a game that it is. Personal horror? Of course; show me the werewolf that comes to his senses after going into the Thrall of the Wyrn that isn't undergoing personal horror, and I'll show you a player who's no good at roleplaying (or is choosing to play an utter psychopath very, very well). Reality on the Brink? Sure; the cosmic struggle of the

Triar and the Garou's war to keep the Wyrn from being the one to rewrite the universe's rules would seem to fit that bill rather nicely. Passion and Horror? Naturally; the churning forces of Rage and Gnosis within a werewolf tend to imply that he'll feel passions on a scale that would frighten us humans. Modern Fantasy? Yes, if somewhat more obliquely; the techno-shamans of the Glass Walkers and the spirits of the urban Umbrascapes qualify. And Righteous Fury? Well, there's no need for an example, is there?

So yes, **Werewolf** is versatile; and it can handle a wide variety of moods and themes. We knew that. (It's one of the reasons this book is a hardcover; if **Werewolf** were a simplistic hack-and-slasher, you'd be reading the **Werewolf Storytellers Pamphlet**.) But when trying to distill the essence of **Werewolf** down into a thimbleful of lycanthropic elixir, we come back to "A Storytelling Game of Savage Horror."

Why is that? The Garou are heroes, right? You get to crack jokes if you play a Ragabash or a Corax or a Nuwisha, or dress all sexy and provocative if you're a Bastet, yes? Tribes are driven by ideals like peace between peoples, honorable leadership, wisdom and enlightenment; where does the "savage horror" come in?

It's an easy answer. It comes in as soon as you say the word "werewolf."

The Garou are a fairly unique breed of werewolves, overall; they aren't "infected" by werewolf attacks, they aren't mindless animals when they change, they're not really at the mercy of the moon, and so on. Not only can they assume the werewolf form at will, they can even hold a rational dialogue when doing so (although admittedly, it's difficult) — something you never see in any werewolf movie except the comedies. In learning their vocabulary, their customs, their traditions, it's easy to start thinking of them exclusively as "Garou," and to stop using the word "werewolf" almost entirely.

If I may be so bold, this is a horrible mistake.

"Garou" is the werewolves' name for themselves. As your players learn to empathize with them more and more, they'll become more and more comfortable with that term — but by forgetting the "werewolf," they lose track of the fact that they're essentially playing monsters. Yes, monsters that are generally more humane and sympathetic than those you find in the average horror novel, but monsters nonetheless. But there is one person who needs to be willing to inject the "werewolf" back into the Garou, to play on the players' human sensibilities to show them the horrific side of the Garou's world. And yes, that person is you.

Step back outside the game and think back to before you ever picked up a White Wolf book. What

did the word "werewolf" conjure up when you were younger? Why did you ever get interested in the concept in the first place? Odds are, the images that struck the deepest chord were of the near-immortal savage beast, the monster with the intelligence of the human and the morals of an animal. Yes, the concept had grown more harmless over the years by things like *Fangface* and *Drac Packard Teen Wolf*, to say nothing of horrible SFX that wouldn't scare your cat, but there was still something deeper under all that, something frightening. The concept was still strong. You probably still respond well to it on an instinctive level, and so do your players—even if they've all but forgotten. But with a game of *Werewolf*, you can remember that visceral thrill—better, you can recreate it. And really, why wouldn't you want to?

And that brings us back around to "Savage Horror." Although this isn't the only theme that could be used to describe the Garou accurately, it is the underlying theme that, more than any other, describes the myth of the werewolf. The werewolf is the savage beast that wears human clothing—the unrelenting predator that is immune to pleas for mercy, an animal's fear of humans and even to bullets. It is a part of the wilderness that does not fear us humans, that can easily kill us—and that hates us. Not only does it knock us from our seat at the top of the food chain, it tears us into bloody chunks and cracks our bones for the marrow. Everything we've built, a werewolf can destroy, and it won't even care.

Use that. Use the savagery and horror of the werewolf myth to your benefit. When a character kills a human (for very good reasons, we're sure), work in a bit of description that likens the crunch of the victim's spine to a dog splintering a chicken bone. Play with slaughter-house imagery—the way that corpses are littered on the ground like hunks of meat, the warm wash of blood that sinks into the earth. Emphasize that a werewolf's enemy is no more to it than a mouse is to a cat, or a cow is to a butcher. When a character frenzies, that's an ideal time to bring the savagery of the werewolf to center stage.

And by all means, don't restrict all this carnage to the player characters' doing! One of the cardinal rules of horror is that "anyone can die at any time"; the extrapolation is that in a game of savage horror, "anyone can die horribly at any time." If you want to have a respected elder or Kin slain by Black Spiral Dancers as a plot point, don't just let the players find a corpse with a Baneklarve wound in the back. Strongly consider having the corpse torn apart and littering the area, so blood-soaked and mangled that the characters are forced to carefully gather the remains just so they

can identify who's dead. Not everyone horribly slain by a werewolf deserves it; that keeps them frightening.

It's the same principle in combat, particularly against "caveat" opponents such as many demoni. Bones and certainly Black Spiral Dancers. Never describe a wound in terms of health levels alone—that totally undercuts the mood. Even a claw wound that does a mere health level of damage should soak the recipient's arm in blood and throb with pain. More severe wounds can tear muscle away from bone, splinter ribs, tear a fingernail or claw loose, rip loose a large patch of skin—the possibilities are limited only by your imagination. Yes, the idea is to make the players wince every now and again. That's what savage horror is all about.

(Although try to avoid making your descriptions of violence too florid. When you start describing skull smashing as "like exploding hairy watermelons full of spongy gray pulp," your players will indeed wince. But not in a good way.)

And don't forget to be egalitarian. If some of your players are playing less bloodthirsty Fera of other sorts, such as wisecracking Corax or courtly Kitsune, don't ease up on their behalf. Even if a Nowisha doesn't have Rage, he's still a killing machine with the instincts of an animal—and coyotes aren't vegetarians. The Fera are part of the *Werewolf* world, and although the theme of an all-Fera game might vary somewhat from a traditional Garou chronicle, no shapeshifter is outside the war for Gaia. There are no civilians in the Apocalypse. This goes double for characters in crossover games such as mages or vampires—anyone who willingly enters the werewolves' world takes their lives in their own hands. No, you don't want to ruin your players' enjoyment of the game, and you shouldn't baptize every character in a rain of blood. But most people who sign up to play a *World of Darkness* game expect a little horror, and it can be very satisfying and cathartic for them to get it.

Used properly, the carnage and bloodshed of a werewolf story goes far beyond a violent vigilante story. The violence becomes not just a way of blowing off steam, but a way of reaching deep inside and playing on your players'—and your own—deep-seated emotions. A little horror keeps your players on the edges of their seats, and makes the games all the more memorable. Ultimately, the next time one of your player's characters makes a gruesome kill, tearing apart a foe with the ferocity of a rabid predator, that player might pause a bit, thinking "If I were in the *World of Darkness*, I'd be no more than meat to a werewolf."

And isn't that a good thing?

# Index

Abominations	197	Historical Settings	163, 187	Recommended Source	140, 156, 214
Ajapa	188, 192	Human Culture	97	Religion, Garou	36
Ananasi	188, 193	Hunters	202	Renown	51, 53
	see also Kumo	Imbued	202	Rites	59
Animals	101	Intrigue	40	of the Ferish	63
Apocalypse	129, 174	Kami	205	of Passage	66
Bastet	188, 193	Powers	207	Seasonal	67
	see also Khan	Khan	72	of Spirit Awakening	61
Beast Courts	68	Kitsune	72, 188	of Summoning	61
Black Spiral Dancers	149	Kumo	74	of the Torrent	65
Population	34	Kin Rearing	27	Rokea	188, 195
Camp of Shiva	75				see also Same-Bito
Changelings	201	Litany	46	Same-Bito	73
Character Creation	111	Mages	199	Savage Horror	218
Character Death	126	Metaplot	123	Senses	29
Cities	79	Mokofé	188, 193	Sense Wym	85
Corax	188, 193		see also Zhong Lung	Shrines	37
	see also Tengu	Morality	216	Spirits	60, 104
Crossover	195	Myths	97, 117	Spirituality	29, 36
Daily Devotions	37	Nagah	72, 188, 194	Stargazers	75
Demographics	32	Nezumi	73	Tengu	74
DNA	155	Nuwisha	188, 194	Themes	16, 116
Enhancing the Game	19	Pentex	138	Triat	131
FAQ	20	Plants, Awakened	62	Vampires	196
Fera	187	Player Issues	125	Variant Settings	174
Cross-breeding	191	Politics	41	Veteran Characters	52
Population	35	Population Figures	32	Weaver	135
Fetishes	65	Probes, anal	183	Week of Nightmares	74
First Change	25	Problem Players	113	Wilderness	87
Forms	26	Rank	51	Survival	92
Gifts, learning	55, 191	Rank Challenges	57	Wrath	200
Gurahl	188, 193	Rank Six	54	Wyld	136
Hakken	71	Ratkin	188, 194	Wym	133
Hengeyokai	68		see also Nezumi	Zhong Lung	74

# WEREWOLF

## STORYTELLERS HANDBOOK

### *Songs of the End Times*

From the secrets of the highest-ranking elders to the cryptic lore of the Triat; from the blasphemous libraries of the Black Spiral Dancers to the hidden wisdom of animals — the world of Werewolf is full of concealed lore. Now this lore is about to be revealed — but only to the one person with the responsibility to use it wisely.

### *Tales of the Last Generation*

There are a lot of things for a Werewolf Storyteller to keep track of; the denizens of the material world and the spirit world alike, the politics of the tribes, the plots of antagonists and much more. The **Werewolf Storytellers Handbook** makes the Storyteller's job that much easier. The information inside is designed to help the Storyteller create chronicles from the very beginning, devise new stories that keep the players entertained and introduce plot twists and world secrets to keep the players guessing.

### *Werewolf Storytellers Handbook contains:*

- Expanded systems for Renown, Rank, rites, senses and other facets of Garou life
- Expanded information on Garou society, culture, intrigue, spirit allies, antagonists, physiology and even an FAQ
- Detailed advice on chronicle creation, alternate history chronicles, crossovers with other World of Darkness games and more

WWW.BITE-X.COM

ISBN 1-58846-304-4

WW3804 \$25.95 U.S.



9 781588 463043

PRINTED IN CANADA

